

282d  
7  
A  
N E W S E T  
O F  
E X E R C I S E S

Upon the VARIOUS PARTS of  
FRENCH SPEECH,

Calculated for the Use of such

As are desirous of making FRENCH without the  
Help of any Grammar or Dictionary whatever.

---

By THOMAS DELETANVILLE, *1*  
Teacher of the French and Latin Languages.

---

L O N D O N,  
Printed for J. NOURSE, at the *Lamb*, against  
*Katherine Street* in the Strand.

---

M D C C L V I I I .

*17*





As the definition of the word Person without the  
aid of any Grammar is Dictionary whatever.

BY THOMAS DEE TAVILLER  
Teacher of the French and Latin Languages.

LONDON:  
Printed for J. Baskett, at the Foot of St. Dunstons Church, in Fleet Street.  
MDCCLXXII.

# PREFACE.

**T**HIS book may be considered as a Practical Grammar, comprehending the Principles of the French Language, and a new set of Exercises adapted to them. Each part of speech being separately treated of therein, its formation is first shewn; then it's use and the order in which it is to be ranged are pointed out; afterwards the whole is exemplified in short sentences; and lastly English exercises are printed in one column, in order to be translated into French according to the rules that are before laid down, with a Dictionary in the other, containing the French for those Exercises and explaining the nature of every word.

The Noun claiming the first place in speech is treated of first ; and Rules are laid down to shew in what instances it is preceded by our first article, and in what by any of the other three.

Throughout, the Learner's understanding is never anticipated, nor is he supposed to be acquainted with any part of speech, till it has been explained to him.

Adjectives in English being placed before their nouns are attended with no difficulty in that language. But not so in the French, where some precede their nouns; some follow them; and some may indifferently be placed either before or after them. Were children to learn French, where no other language is spoken, they would soon know by practice in what order each adjective should be placed. But in an English school, where they have seldom an opportunity of conversing with their French teachers, and are left to speak only among themselves, it is impossible they should know the proper arrangement of adjectives without some rules to guide them. Such they will here find, which, with the exercises adapted to them,



## P R E F A C E.

them, will make them surmount that difficulty.

The tables of the French Pronouns, shew how those parts of speech are to be formed; and with what particles they are to be declined. As to the difficulties which foreigners find in placing them, they will soon vanish before any one that will take the trouble to read the rules that are laid down, and make the exercises joined to those rules.

Next follow the French verbs, the compounds of which are shewn to be easily formed with the two auxiliary verbs, and the single tenses are conjugated, according to the scheme of the celebrated *Abbé Girard*; which is so short that it may be learned in two or three hours; so plain, that it is not above the capacity of children; and so complete, that any one by the help of it may conjugate any French verb whatever.

Learners having been hitherto misled in relation to the order in which the French Adverbs are to be placed, it has been thought necessary to be very particular on that head. And no less so, on the French Prepositions and Conjunctions, which answering sometimes to one, sometimes to

vi P R E F A C E.

two or more English prepositions and conjunctions, and being sometimes englished otherwise than by prepositions and conjunctions, might puzzle the learner, if they were not fully explained.

Interjections, as they express a sudden passion common to all men, are much the same in all languages, and require little to be said of them.

Throughout, no Rule is laid down without being accompanied with some Exercises upon it, consisting generally of Moral Sentences; by which means children, at the same time that they learn the Rudiments of the French Language, imbibe the principles of virtue, and the properest maxims for the conduct of life.

The Exercises at the end of the book the reader will see are taken out of the Old and New Testament, and are designed for the use of those who have gone through the former part of the book.

Every exercise or set of exercises has a Dictionary peculiar to it, in which a repetition of the same word, being needless, seldom occurs. The dic-

## P R E F A C E: vii

Dictionaries do not often contain the Pronouns, because these parts of speech may be found in the tables.

When Verbs Passive or Participles Passive make part of a sentence, instead of setting them down in the Dictionary, the Verbs Active, to which they belong, are only inserted therein, as being sufficient to make them known.



*An*



*An explanation of the chief abbreviations made use of in this work.*

Article.	Article.
n. m.	noun masculine.
n. f.	noun feminine.
n. m. plur.	noun masculine plural.
n. f. plur.	noun feminine plural.
adj.	adjective.
adj. und.	adjective undeclined.
adj. plur.	adjective plural.
pron.	pronoun.
pron. nom.	pronoun nominal.
pron. adj.	pronoun adjective.
pron. plur.	pronoun plural.
pron. conj.	pronoun conjunctive.
v. aux.	verb auxiliary.
v. 1.	verb of the first conjugation.
v. 2.	verb of the second conjugation.
v. 3.	verb of the third conjugation.
v. 4.	verb of the fourth conjugation.
v. 5.	verb of the fifth conjugation.
v. 6.	verb of the sixth conjugation.
v. 1. 2. &c.	verbs of the first and second conjugation, &c.
v. 1. 1. &c.	verbs of the first conjugation, &c.
v. p.	verb passive.
p. p.	participle passive.
adv.	adverb.
prep.	preposition.
conj.	conjunction.
v. 1. prep. & n. m. &c.	verb of the first conjugation, preposition and noun masculine, &c.

To form an Adjective excepted from the general rules, you need only add the letter or letters placed after the comma to those that come before it; for instance, when you find *bon*, *me* good, in the Dictionary, or any where else, add *ne* to *bon*, and you will have *bonne* the feminine of *bon*.

But if the last letter of the Adjective is to be changed into another, add what is placed after the comma to what comes before the last consonant of the Adjective masculine; for instance, when you find *gracieux*, *ieuse*, gracious, add *ieuse* to *grac*, and you will have *gracieuse* for the feminine of *gracieux*.

A NEW

A New Set of  
**EXERCISES**

Upon the various Parts of  
**FRENCH SPEECH.**

**T**HERE are nine Parts of Speech in *French*, viz.  
Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Ad-  
verb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

To speak and write *French* well, we should know how to  
form these parts of Speech, in what order to place them, and  
make them agree with one another. When in treating of  
any one of them, I mention another without giving any rule  
concerning it, the learner ought to suppose that it answers in  
every respect to its *English*.

**OF NOUNS.**

**F**RENCH Nouns are either Masculine or Feminine, and  
commonly have a singular and a plural. Such as end in  
*s*, *x*, and *z*, have their singular and plural alike; and most of  
the others form their plural, by adding *an* to their singular.

Our Grammarians don't agree about the words *de* and *à*,  
when joined to Nouns. Those who admit only one article,  
which they look upon to be undeclined, rank these words  
amongst the Prepositions; and the others decline our Nouns  
with them. I shall here follow the opinion of the last, not  
because it is the best, but because it renders our principles  
more easy to beginners. When I come to the Prepositions, I  
shall not scruple to place *de* and *à* amongst them; and in the  
course of these Exercises, I shall call them indifferently Ar-  
ticles or Prepositions; for it matters very little whether I say,

for instance, that such a Verb governs the genitive or dative, or that it requires the Preposition *de* or the Preposition *à*, before the Noun, provided I don't deviate from the principles of our language, and am understood.

We have then, according to the scheme of several Grammarians, four different articles, which, for distinction sake, may be called the first, second, third, and fourth Article.

### FIRST ARTICLE.

This article is *le* for the Masculine, and *la* for the Feminine in the singular, and *les* for both genders in the plural.

Nouns Masculine and Feminine beginning with a consonant, are thus declined with it in the singular.

#### Masculine.

N. *Le bras*, the arm.  
G. *du bras*, of the arm.  
D. *au bras*, to the arm.  
Ac. *le bras*, the arm.  
V. *ô bras*, o arm.  
Ab. *du bras*, from the arm.

#### Feminine.

N. *La main*, the hand.  
G. *de la main*, of the hand.  
D. *à la main*, to the hand.  
Ac. *la main*, the hand.  
V. *ô main*, o hand.  
Abl. *de la main*, from the hand.

But when these Nouns begin with a vowel, or an *b* not founded, they are declined alike, thus :

N. <i>L'âme</i> , the soul.	Ac. <i>l'âme</i> , the soul.
G. <i>de l'âme</i> , of the soul.	V. <i>ô âme</i> , o soul.
D. <i>à l'âme</i> , to the soul.	Abl. <i>de l'âme</i> , from the soul.

All French Nouns, whether they be masculine or feminine, or they begin with a vowel, a consonant, or an *b* not founded, are thus declined alike in the plural.

N. <i>Les bras</i> , the arms.	Ac. <i>les bras</i> , the arms.
G. <i>des bras</i> , of the arms.	V. <i>ô bras</i> , o arms.
D. <i>aux bras</i> , to the arms.	Ab. <i>des bras</i> , from the arms.

Observe, 1<sup>st</sup>, That *du*, *des*, *au*, and *aux*, are formed by contraction, from *de le*, *de les*, *à le* and *à les*.

2<sup>dly</sup>. The



2dly, That the genitive, which in *English* is placed sometimes before, and sometimes after its nominative, always comes after it in *French*.

### *Use of this Article.*

#### R U L E I.

This article is joined to such Nouns and Adjectives, as take or may take the Article *the* before them in *English*, as *le livre*, the book; *du dixieme*, of the tenth.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

The king's 1 palace 2.	1 <i>Roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>palais</i> , n. m.
the queen's 1 picture 2.	1 <i>reine</i> , n. f. 2 <i>portrait</i> , n. m.
the ring 1 of the princess 2.	1 <i>bague</i> , n. f. 2 <i>princesse</i> , n. f.
the country 1 of the Amazons 2.	1 <i>pays</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Amazone</i> , n. f.
the fable 1 of the frogs 2.	1 <i>fable</i> , n. f. 2 <i>grenouille</i> , n. f.
the complements 1 of the season 2.	1 <i>compliment</i> , plur. mens, n. m. 2 <i>saison</i> , n. f.
the virtues 1 of the Romans 2.	1 <i>vertu</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Romain</i> , n. m.
the looks 1 of the assembly 2.	1 <i>regard</i> , n. m. 2 <i>assemblée</i> , n. f.
to go 1 to the park 2.	1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>parc</i> , n. m.
to speak 1 to the prince 2.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>prince</i> , n. m.
to send 1 to the town 2.	1 <i>envoyer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ville</i> , n. f.
to see 1 the battle 2.	1 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>bataille</i> , n. f.
to speak 1 to the ladies 2.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>dame</i> , n. f.
to imitate 1 the ancients 2.	1 <i>imiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ancien</i> , plur. ciens, n. m.
the first 1 of the book 2.	1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>livre</i> , n. m.
the third 1 of the page 2.	1 <i>troisieme</i> , adj. 2 <i>page</i> , n. f.
the last 1 of the year 2.	1 <i>dernier</i> , adj. 2 <i>annee</i> , n. f.

#### R U L E II.

It is joined to Nouns taken in a general and indefinite sense, though they have not the article *the* before them in *English*, as *le poivre*, pepper.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

To study 1 Geography 2.	1 <i>Etudier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Géographie</i> , n. f.
to apply one's self 1 to Astro- nomy 2.	1 <i>s'appliquer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Astro- nomie</i> , n. f.
to read 1 History 2.	1 <i>lire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>Histoire</i> , n. f.
to neglect 1 Painting 2.	1 <i>négliger</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Peinture</i> , n. f.
to imitate 1 Nature 2.	1 <i>imiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Nature</i> , n. f.
to avoid 1 idleness 2.	1 <i>éviter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i> paresse</i> , n. f.
to love 1 virtue 2.	1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>vertu</i> , n. f.
to hate 1 vice 2.	1 <i>hair</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>vice</i> , n. m.
to depreciate 1 merit 2.	1 <i>avilir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>mérite</i> , n. m.
to admire 1 beauty 2.	1 <i>admirer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>beauté</i> , n. f.
to kill 1 time 2.	1 <i>tuer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>temps</i> , n. m.
to work 1 for 2 glory 3.	1 <i>travailler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pour</i> , prep. 3 <i>gloire</i> , n. f.
to live 1 in 2 plenty 3.	1 <i>vivre</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>abondance</i> , n. f.
to preach 1 temperance 2.	1 <i>prêcher</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>tempérance</i> , n. f.
to judge 1 mankind 2.	1 <i>juger</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>le genre hu- main</i> .
to declare 1 war 2.	1 <i>déclarer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>guerre</i> , n. f.
to proclaim 1 peace 2.	1 <i>publier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>paix</i> , n. f.
gold 1, silver 2, iron 3.	1 <i>or</i> , n. m. 2 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 3 <i>fer</i> , n. m.
corn 1, wheat 2, barley 3.	1 <i>bled</i> , n. m. 2 <i>froment</i> , n. m. 3 <i>orge</i> , n. f.
salt 1, vinegar 2, oil 3.	1 <i>sel</i> , n. m. 2 <i> vinaigre</i> , n. m. 3 <i>huile</i> , n. f.

## RULE III.

It is placed before Nouns of dignity, declined with the second or no article in *English*, as *le roi Guillaume*, king William; *à la reine Jeanne*, to queen Joan.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

King 1 George 2.	1 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>George</i> , n. m.
of queen 1 Mary 2.	1 <i>reine</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Marie</i> , n. f.

to

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

55

to prince 1 Henry 2.	1 prince, n. m. 2 Henri, n. m.
count 1 Saxe 2.	1 comte, n. m. 2 de Saxe.
duke 1 William 2.	1 duc, n. m. 2 Guillaume, n. m.
marshal 1 d'Estrees 2.	1 maréchal, n. m. 2 d'Estres.
general 1 Ligonier 2.	1 général, n. m.
captain 1 Gardiner 2.	1 capitaine, n. m.
of lieutenant 1 Gordon 2.	1 lieutenant, n. m.
to justice Fielding 1.	1 juge, n. m.

### R U L E I V.

It is used in the genitive after the word *bien*, much, a great deal, many; as *bien du monde*, many people.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Much 1 time 2.	1 Bien, adv. 2 tems, n. m.
much trouble 1.	1 peine, n. f.
much noise 1.	1 bruit, n. m.
a great deal 1 of rain 2.	1 bien. 2 pluie, n. f.
a great deal of snow 1.	1 neige, n. f.
a great deal of hail 1.	1 grêle, n. f.
many 1 people 2.	1 bien. 2 gens, n. m. plur.
many learned men 1.	1 savant, plur. vans, n. m.
many women 1.	1 femme, n. f.

### R U L E V.

It comes before the absolute numbers taken for the ordinal, as *le sept du mois*, the seventh of the month.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The second 1 of last month 2.	1 Deux, adj. 2 du mois dernier.
the third 1 of the month 2.	1 trois, adj. 2 du mois.
the fourth 1 of this instant 2.	1 quatre, adj. 2 de ce mois.
the sixth 1 of next month 2.	1 six, adj. 2 du mois prochain.
the seven 1 of diamonds 2.	1 sept. n. m. 2 de carreau.
the eighth 1 of hearts 2.	1 huit, n. m. 2 de cœur.
the ten 1 of clubs 2.	1 dix, n. m. 2 de trefle.
the nine 1 of spades 2.	1 neuf, n. m. 2 de pique.

B 3

R U L E -



## R U L E VI.

It is placed before such Nouns of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. as are in the nominative and dative, and in the accusative, without a preposition, as *la Terre ferme*, *Terra firma*.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Europe 1, Asia 2.	1 <i>Europe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Asie</i> , n. f.
Africa 1, America 2.	1 <i>Afrique</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Amérique</i> , n. f.
England 1, Scotland 2.	1 <i>Angleterre</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Ecosse</i> , n. f.
Ireland 1, France 2.	1 <i>Irlande</i> , n. f. 2 <i>France</i> , n. f.
Germany 1, Italy 2.	1 <i>Allemagne</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Italie</i> , n. f.
to Sweden 1, to Denmark 2.	1 <i>Suede</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Danmark</i> , n. m.
to Spain 1, to Poland 2.	1 <i>Espagne</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Pologne</i> , n. f.
to Turkey 1, to Hungary 2.	1 <i>Turquie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Hongrie</i> , n. f.
to discover 1 Peru 2, Chili	1 <i>découvrir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>Pérou</i> , n. m.
3, and 4 Japan 5.	3 <i>Chili</i> , n. m. 4 & conj. 5 <i>Japon</i> , n. m.

## R U L E VII.

It is placed before the Noun of a country, kingdom, province, &c. in the genitive, whenever this Noun does not denote the country of a Noun coming before it, as *le sort de la France*, the fate of France.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The fate 1 of Portugal 2.	1 <i>Sort</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Portugal</i> , n. m.
Politeness 1 of France 2.	1 <i>politesse</i> , n. f. 2 <i>France</i> , n. f.
the friends 1 of Holland 2.	1 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Hollande</i> , n. f.
the enemies 1 of Russia 2.	1 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Russie</i> , n. f.

R U L E V I I I.

When speaking of or to a person, we use the words *Monseigneur*, Mylord; *Monsieur*, Master; *Madame*, Mrs. and *Mademoiselle*, Miss, before a Noun denoting his or he title, office, trade, profession, and temper; we must place the first article before that Noun; as,

*Monsieur le prince.*  
*monsieur le docteur.*  
*madame la Coureuse.*

The prince.  
doctor.  
Mrs. Gad-about.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The dauphin 1.  
the dauphiness 1.  
the physician 1.  
the ambassador 1.  
the ambassadress 1.  
the duke 1.  
the dutchess 1.  
the marquess 1.  
the marchioness 1.  
the count 1.  
the countess 1.  
the baron 1.  
Mr. Prattler 1.

1 *Dauphin*, n. m.  
1 *dauphine*, n. f.  
1 *médecin*, n. m.  
1 *ambassadeur*, n. m.  
1 *ambassadrice*, n. f.  
1 *duc*, n. m.  
1 *duchesse*, n. f.  
1 *marquis*, n. m.  
1 *marquise*, n. f.  
1 *comte*, n. m.  
1 *comtesse*, n. f.  
1 *baron*, n. m.  
1 *Babillard*, n. m.

R U L E I X.

The first article is sometimes used in calling people, or speaking of a woman with a sort of freedom; as,

*La Mingotti chante bien.*  
*la Duprez est morte.*  
*la femme aux pommes.*  
*parlez, l'homme, la femme.*

Signora Mingotti sings well.  
Mrs. Duprez is dead.  
apple-woman.  
speak, man, woman.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Milk 2 woman.  
butter 2 man.  
oyster 2 woman.  
green 2 woman.

2 *Au lait.*  
2 *au beurre.*  
2 *aux huîtres.*  
2 *aux herbes.*

# 8 EXERCISES upon the

fish 2 woman.

2 au poisson.

do you hear me 1, man.

1 m'entendez vous.

come here 1, pretty girl 2.

1 venez ici. 2 belle fille.

## SECOND ARTICLE.

This article being *de* and *à* for the singular and plural, French Nouns are thus declined with it.

### In the Singular.

#### Masculine.

N. *Pierre*, Peter.

G. *de Pierre*, of Peter.

D. *à Pierre*, to Peter.

Ac. *Pierre*, Peter.

V. *ô Pierre*, o Peter.

Ab. *de Pierre*, from Peter.

#### Feminine.

N. *Marie*, Mary.

G. *de Marie*, of Mary.

D. *à Marie*, to Mary.

Ac. *Marie*, Mary.

V. *ô Marie*, o Mary.

Ab. *de Marie*, from Mary.

### In the Plural.

N. *gens*, people.

G. *de gens*, of people.

D. *à gens*, to people.

Ac. *gens*, people.

V. *ô gens*, o people.

Ab. *de gens*, from people.

In such of the French Nouns, as begin with a vowel, or an *b*, not sounded, the *e* of the Article is dropt, and supplied by an Apostrophe, as *d'André*, of Andrew.

### Use of this Article.

#### RULE I.

This Article must be joined to proper Names, as *le doigt de Marie*, Mary's finger.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

Thomas's 1 hat 2.

1 Thomas, n. m. 2 chapeau n. m.

John's 1 coat 2.

1 Jean, n. m. 2 habit, n. m.

Anthony's 1 waistcoat 2.

1 Antoine, n. m. 2 veste, n. f.

Charles's 1 shoes 2.

1 Charles, n. m. 2 soulier n. m.

3

James's

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

619

James's 1 stockings 2.	1 Jacques, n. m. 2 bas, n. m.
Grace's 1 cap 2.	1 Grace, n. f. 2 coiffure, n. f.
Martha's 1 petticoat 2.	1 Marthe, n. f. 2 juppe, n. f.
Priscilla's 1 gown 2.	1 Priscille, n. f. 2 robe, n. f.
Sarah's 1 handkerchief 2.	1 Sara, n. f. 2 mouchoir, n. m.
to Stephen 1.	1 Etienne, n. m.
to Gregory 1.	1 Grégoire, n. m.
to Margaret 1.	1 Marguerite, n. f.
to Lucy 1.	1 Lucie, n. f.

### R U L E II.

It must come before the Words, *Monseigneur*, *Mylord*; *Monsieur*, *Master*; *Madame*, *Lady*, *Mistress*; *Mademoiselle*, *Miss*; *Maitre*, *Master*; *Saint*, *Sainte*, *Saint*; as *les titres de Milord*, *My lord's titles*.

#### *Exercis upon this Rule.*

My lord's equipage 1.	1 Equipage, n. m.
Mr. Smith's garden 1.	1 jardin, n. m.
Mr. Grove's sword 1.	1 épée, n. f.
Mr. Nelson's house 1.	1 maison, n. f.
Mrs. Garon's promise 1.	1 promesse, n. f.
Mrs. Tired's books 1.	1 livre, n. m.
Mrs. Smart's necklace 1.	1 collier, n. m.
lady Preston's jewel's 1.	1 joyau, plur. aux, n. m.
lady Nichol's laces 1.	1 dentelle, n. f.
miss Parson's apron 1.	1 tablier, n. m.
miss Fair's ruffles 1.	1 manchette, n. f.
the statue 1 of St. George 2.	1 statue, n. f. 2 George, n. m.
the life 1 of St. Ann. 2.	1 vie, n. f. 2 Anne, n. f.

### R U L E III.

It must always be placed after the following words, *viz.*

<i>Abondance</i> , plenty.	<i>disette</i> , want.
<i>assez</i> , enough.	<i>grand nombre</i> , great number.
<i>autant</i> , as much, as many.	<i>gueres</i> , little.
<i>beaucoup</i> , much, many.	<i>jamais</i> , never.
<i>combien</i> , how much, how many.	<i>moins</i> , less.
<i>ny</i> .	<i>peu</i> .



*peu*, little, few.  
*plus*, more.  
*point, pas*, no.  
*quantité*, a deal.  
*que*, what.

*quelque chose*, something.  
*rien*, nothing.  
*tant*, so much, so many.  
*trop*, too much, too many.

As *assez de fruit*, fruit enough; *trop de pain*, too much bread.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Plenty of grapes 1.  
 plenty of corn 1.  
 wheat 1 enough.  
 oats 1 enough.  
 as much sugar 1.  
 as many soldiers 1.  
 much oil 1.  
 many pease 1.  
 how much money 1.  
 how many songs 1.  
 want of hay 1.  
 want of men 1.  
 great number of goats.  
 great number of turkeys.  
 little trouble 1.  
 little wit 1.  
 never of him 1.  
 never of me 1.  
 less credit 1.  
 less courage 1.  
 few people 1.  
 little prudence 1.  
 more esteem 1.  
 more love 1.  
 no gold 1.  
 no boys 1.  
 a deal of straw 1.  
 what wealth 1.  
 something scarce 1.  
 something good 1.  
 nothing true 1.

1 *Raisin*, n. m.  
 1 *bled*, n. m.  
 1 *froment*, n. m.  
 1 *avoine*, n. f.  
 1 *sucre*, n. m.  
 1 *soldat*, n. m.  
 1 *huile*, n. f.  
 1 *pois*, n. m.  
 1 *argent*, n. m.  
 1 *chanson*, n. f.  
 1 *foin*, n. m.  
 1 *homme*, n. m.  
 1 *bouc*, n. m.  
 1 *poulet d'Inde*, n. m.  
 1 *peine*, n. f.  
 1 *esprit*, n. m.  
 1 *lui*, pron. nom.  
 1 *moi*, pron. nom.  
 1 *crédit*, n. m.  
 1 *courage*, n. m.  
 1 *gens*, n. m.  
 1 *prudence*, n. f.  
 1 *estime*, n. f.  
 1 *amour*, n. m.  
 1 *or*, n. m.  
 1 *garçon*, n. m.  
 1 *paille*, n. f.  
 1 *bien*, n. m.  
 1 *rare*, adj.  
 1 *bon*, adj.  
 1 *vrai*, adj.

nothing

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

II

nothing too much 1.	1 <i>trop</i> , n. m.
so much cloth 1.	1 <i>drap</i> , n. m.
so much linnen 1.	1 <i>toile</i> , n. f.
too much water 1.	1 <i>eau</i> , n. f.
too many failors 1.	1 <i>matelot</i> , n. m.

### RULE IV.

It must come before names of cities, towns, villages, &c as *de Naples*, from Naples.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

From London 1.	1 <i>Londres</i> , n. m.
of Bristol 1.	1 <i>Bristol</i> , n. m.
to Edinburg 1.	1 <i>Edinbourg</i> , n. m.
from Dublin 1.	1 <i>Dublin</i> , n. m.
of Paris 1.	1 <i>Paris</i> , n. m.
to Roan 1.	1 <i>Rouen</i> , n. m.
from Brentford 1.	1 <i>Brentford</i> , n. m.
of Hampstead 1.	1 <i>Hampstead</i> , n. m.
to Putney 1.	1 <i>Putney</i> , n. m.
to Islington 1.	1 <i>Islington</i> , n. m.

### RULE V.

It must be joined to the absolute Numbers, which are undeclined adjectives ; as *à dix*, to ten.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Of ten 1. To eleven 2.	1 <i>dix</i> . 2 <i>onze</i> .
of twelve 1. To thirteen 2.	1 <i>douze</i> . 2 <i>treize</i> .
of fourteen 1. To fifteen 2.	1 <i>quatorze</i> . 2 <i>quinze</i> .
of sixteen 1. To seventeen 2.	1 <i>seize</i> . 2 <i>dix sept</i> .
of eighteen 1. To nineteen 2.	1 <i>dix huit</i> . 2 <i>dix neuf</i> .

### RULE VI.

It must be placed after adjectives of number followed by a participle passive ; as *vingt de brulés*, twenty burnt.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Twenty 1. finished 2.	1 <i>Vingt</i> . 2 <i>finis</i> .
thirty 1. begun 2.	1 <i>trente</i> . 2 <i>achévés</i> .

B 6

*commence* forty

forty 1 done 2.

1 quarante. 2 faits.

fifty 1 lost 2.

1 cinquante. 2 perdus.

sixty 1 found 2.

1 soixante. 2 trouvés.

## R U L E VII.

It is commonly placed before names of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. joined to words signifying coming to, going from, or living in them; as *Je viens d'Irlande*, I come from Ireland.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Do you come 1 from France 2,  
from Italy 3, from Spain 4,  
from Portugal 5 ?

1 Venez vous. 2 France, n. f.  
3 Italie, n. f. 4 Espagne,  
n. f. 5 Portugal, n. m.

Do you go 1 to 2 Holland 3,  
to Germany 4, to Po-  
land 5 ?

1 Allez vous. 2 en prep. 3 Hol-  
lande, n. f. 4 Allemagne,  
n. f. 5 Pologne ?

I live 1 in 2 England 3, in  
Scotland 4, in Ireland 5.

1 je vis. 2 en, prep. 3 Angle-  
terre, n. f. 4 Ecosse, n. f.  
5 Irlande, n. f.

## R U L E VIII.

It must be used before such Nouns as express the cause, character, kind, matter, nature, quality or country of a Noun coming before them; as,

*Etoffe de laine.*

Wollen stuff.

*vin de France.*

French wine.

*une montre d'or.*

a gold watch.

*l'Empereur de Maroc.*

the Emperor of Morocco.

*une femme de bon sens.*

a woman of sense.

*un homme d'esprit.*

a man of wit.

The three last examples shew that the *English* Idiom, answers sometimes to the *French* one; and the three first proves that an *English* Noun or Adjective ought sometimes to be translated into a *French* Genitive.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Champain 1 wine 2.

1 Champagne, n. f. 2 vin, n. m.

Burgundy

Burgundy 1 wine.	1 <i>Bourgogne</i> , n. f.
Florence 1 wine.	1 <i>Florence</i> , n. f.
a 1 wine merchant 1.	1 <i>un marchand</i>
a 1 gold 2 box 1.	1 <i>une boîte</i> , n. f. 2 <i>or</i> , n. m.
a 1 silver 2 spoon 1.	1 <i>une cuillère</i> , n. f. 2 <i>argent</i> , n. m.
a 1 copper 2 pot 1.	1 <i>un pot</i> , n. m. 2 <i>cuivre</i> , n. m.
a 1 house 2 roof 1.	1 <i>toit</i> , n. m. 2 <i>maison</i> , n. f.
a 1 thunder 2 clap 1.	1 <i>coup</i> , n. m. 2 <i>tonnere</i> , n. m.
a 1 marble 2 statue 1.	1 <i>statue</i> , n. f. 2 <i>marbre</i> , n. m.
a 2 silk waistcoat 1.	1 <i>veste</i> , n. f. 2 <i>soie</i> , n. f.
a 1 diamond 2 buckle 1.	1 <i>boucle</i> , n. f. 2 <i>diamant</i> , n. m.
a 1 country 2 house 1.	1 <i>maison</i> , n. f. 2 <i>campagne</i> , n. f.
a law-suit 1 of consequence 2.	1 <i>un procès</i> , n. m. 2 <i>conséquence</i> , n. f.
a jewel 1 of worth 2.	1 <i>un joyau</i> , n. m. 2 <i>prix</i> , n. m.

### THIRD ARTICLE.

This article being *du*, *de la*, *de l'* in the singular, and *des* in the plural, *French Nouns* beginning with a consonant are thus declined with it in

#### The Singular.

##### Masculine.

N. *Du vin*, wine.  
D. *à du vin*, to wine.  
Ac. *du vin*, wine.

##### Feminine.

N. *De la bière*, beer.  
D. *à de la bière*, to beer.  
Ac. *de la bière*, beer.

But when they begin with a Vowel, or an *h* not sounded, they must be thus declined.

##### Masculine.

N. *De l'or*, gold.  
D. *à de l'or*, to gold.  
Ac. *de l'or*, gold.

##### Feminine.

N. *De l'huile*, oil.  
D. *à de l'huile*, to oil.  
Ac. *de l'huile*, oil.

In the plural all kinds of *French Nouns* are declined alike, with this article, thus,

N. *Des savans*, learned men.  
D. *à des savans*, to learned men.  
Ac. *des savans*, learned men.



## 14 EXERCISES upon the

If an Adjective is placed between the Article and the Noun, instead of *du, de la, de l'* and *des*, we use *de*, thus

### Singular.

N. *De bon vin*, good wine.

D. *à de bon vin*, to good wine.

Ac. *de bon vin*, good wine.

### Plural.

N. *De grands hommes*, great men.

D. *à de grands hommes*, to great men.

Ac. *de grands hommes*, great men.

When the Adjective begins with a Vowel, or an *h* not founded, *e* must be dropt in *de*, and supplied by an Apostrophe, as *d'excellent vin*, excellent wine.

### Use of this Article.

This Article answering to the *English* word *some*, either expressed or understood, the learner will not find much difficulty in making the following Exercises.

Give me 1 some bread 2.	1 <i>Donnez moi. 2 pain</i> , n. m.
some butter 1.	1 <i>beurre</i> , n. m.
some cheese 1.	1 <i>fromage</i> , n. m.
some eggs 1.	1 <i>œuf</i> , n. m.
some veal 1.	1 <i>veau</i> , n. m.
some pork 1.	1 <i>porc</i> , n. m.
some mustard 1.	1 <i>moutarde</i> , n. f.
some beans 1.	1 <i>seve</i> , n. f.
gooseberries 1.	1 <i>groseille</i> , n. f.
apricocks 1.	1 <i>abricot</i> , n. m.
bad 1 tea 2.	1 <i>mauvais</i> , adj. 2 <i>thé</i> , n. m.
good 1 leather 2.	1 <i>bon</i> , adj. 2 <i>cuir</i> , n. m.
large 1 melons 2.	1 <i>gros</i> , adj. 2 <i>melon</i> , n. m.
small 1 fishes 2.	1 <i>petit</i> , 2 <i>poisson</i> , n. m.
unworthy 1 friends 2.	1 <i>indigne</i> , adj. 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.

### Fourth Article.

This Article being *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine in the singular, and having no plural, *French* Nouns are thus declined with it.

*Masculine.*

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

15

### *Masculine.*

N. *Un duc*, a duke.  
G. *d'un duc*, of a duke.  
D. *à un duc*, to a duke.  
Ac. *un duc*, a duke.  
Ab. *d'un duc*, from a duke.

### *Feminine.*

N. *Une âme*, a soul.  
G. *d'une âme*, of a soul.  
D. *à une âme*, to a soul.  
Ac. *une âme*, a soul.  
Ab. *d'une âme*, from a soul.

### *Use of this Article.*

This article answering to the *English* article *a* and *an*, the following Exercises must appear very easy to the Learner.

A button hole 1.

1 *Boutonniere*, n. f.

an angel 1.

1 *ange*, n. m.

a prophet 1.

1 *prophete*, n. m.

a planet 1.

1 *planete*, n. f.

a week 1.

1 *semaine*, n. f.

a moment 1.

1 *moment*, n. m.

a beginning 1.

1 *commencement*, n. m.

a minute 1.

1 *minute*, n. f.

### *A general Remark upon the French Articles.*

*French* articles must be repeated in *French* before all the Nouns in a sentence, altho' they are often omitted in *English*; as *le pere*, *la mere*, & *la fille*; the father, mother, and daughter.

### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

The husband 1, wife 2 and 3  
children 4.

1 *Mari*, n. m. 2 *femme*,  
n. f. 3 & conj. 4 *enfant*,  
plur. *sans*, n. m.

the master 1, mistress 2 and  
servants 3.

1 *maître*, n. m. 2 *maîtresse*,  
n. f. 3 *domestique*, n. m.

the officers 1 and soldiers 2.

1 *officier*, n. m. 2 *soldat*, n. m.

the pilot 1 and sailors 2.

1 *pilote*, n. m. 2 *matelot*, n. m.

the brewer 1, butcher 2 and  
baker 3.

1 *brasseur*, n. m. 2 *boucher*,  
n. m. 3 *boulangier*, n. m.

a great deal 1 of rain 2 and  
snow 3.

1 *beaucoup*, adv. 2 *pluie*, n. f.  
3 *neige*, n. f.

I writ 1 to Mr. Sharp and  
Miss Drum.

1 *J'ai écrit*.

speak 1 to Thomas and Paul.

1 *parlez*.

wishes

## 16 EXERCISES upon the

wishes 1 and suspicions 2.	1 <i>souhait</i> , n. m. 2 <i>soupçon</i> n. m.
gloves 1 and muffs 2.	1 <i>gant</i> , n. m. 2 <i>manchon</i> , n. m.
milk 1 and cream 2.	1 <i>lait</i> , n. m. 2 <i>crème</i> , n. f.
fritters 1 and cakes 2.	1 <i>beignet</i> , n. m. 2 <i>gâteau</i> , n. m.
knives 1 and forks 2.	1 <i>couteau</i> , plur. <i>aux</i> , n. m. 2 <i>fourchette</i> , n. m.
a man 1 and a woman 2.	1 <i>homme</i> , n. m. 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.
a girl 1 and a boy 2.	1 <i>filles</i> , n. f. 2 <i>garçon</i> , n. m.
a dog 1 and a cat 2.	1 <i>chien</i> , n. m. 2 <i>chat</i> , n. m.

## OF ADJECTIVES.

**F**RENCH Adjectives must agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Such of them as end with an *e* not founded, have their masculine and feminine alike; and the others commonly add an *e* not founded to their feminine, as *grand*, *grande*, great.

Such of the *French* Adjectives as end in *s* or *x* have their singular and plural alike; and the others, whether they be masculine or feminine, commonly form their plural by adding an *s* to their singular, as *bon*, *bons*, good; *bonne*, *bonnes*, good.

When in my Exercises I use an Adjective excepted from the above rules, I take care to mark either its feminine or plural.

### Places of French Adjectives.

Of *French* Adjectives, some are placed before, and some after their Nouns; and some come either before or after them.

### Of Adjectives placed before their Nouns.

These Adjectives not being very numerous, may easily be reduced under the three following heads, *viz.*

1. The absolute numbers, as *un*, one; *deux*, two, &c.
2. The ordinal numbers, as *le premier*, the first, &c.
3. The following Adjectives, *viz.*

*Beau*, *belle*, handsome.  
*bel*, handsome.

*Bon*, *ne*, good.  
*grand*, great.

*grand*



*gros, se, large.*

*jeune, young.*

*vieux, vieille, old.*

*vieil, old.*

*saint, holy.*

*petit, small, little.*

*Note, that bel and vieil are used only before Nouns masculine, beginning with a vowel or an h not sounded, as un bel homme, a handsome man.*

*Exercises upon the absolute Numbers.*

Twelve 1 sparrows 2.

1 Douze. 2 moineau, plur. eaux, n. m.

twenty 1 partridges 2.

1 vingt. 2 perdrix, n. f.

thirty 1 bottles 2.

1 trente. 2 bouteille, n. f.

thirty three 1 candles 2.

1 trente trois. 2 chandelle, n. f.

of forty 1 stones 2.

1 quarante. 2 pierre, n. f.

of fifty 1 glasses 2.

1 cinquante. 2 verre, n. m.

of sixty 1 chairs 2.

1 soixante. 2 chaise, n. f.

of seventy 1 dishes 2.

1 soixante & dix, 2 plat, n. m.

to eighty 1 napkins 2.

1 quatre vingts. 2 serviette, n. f.

to hundred 1 pistoles 2.

1 cent. 2 pistole, n. f.

to two hundred 1 corks 2.

1 deux cens. 2 bouchon, n. m.

to three hundred 1 bricks 2.

1 trois cens. 2 brique, n. f.

*Exercises upon the ordinal Numbers.*

The first 1 picture 2.

1 Premier. 2 tableau, n. m.

the second 1 street 2.

1 second. 2 rue, n. f.

the third 1 book 2.

1 troisieme. 2 livre, n. m.

the fourth 1 lady 2.

1 quatrieme. 2 dame, n. f.

the fifth 1 pen 2.

1 cinquieme. 2 plume, n. f.

the sixth 1 room 2.

1 sixieme. 2 chambre, n. f.

the seventh 1 table 2.

1 septieme. 2 table, n. f.

the eighth 1 victory 2.

1 huitieme. 2 victoire, n. f.

the ninth 1 defeat 2.

1 neuvieme. 2 defaite, n. f.

the tenth 1 battle 2.

1 dixieme. 2 bataille, n. f.

the eleventh 1 skirmish 2.

1 onzieme. 2 escarmouche, n. f.

the twelfth 1 general 2.

1 douzieme. 2 general, n. m.

Observe that the ordinal number must be placed after its Noun, first, when it is used instead of a surname, as *George second*, George the second. Secondly, when a book, chapter, &c. is quoted, as *chapitre premier*, chapter the first.

*Exercises upon the ten foregoing Adjectives.*

A handsome palace 1.

1 Palais, n. m.

a handsome woman 1.

1 femme, n. f.

a hand-



## 118. EXERCISES upon the

a handsome animal 1.	1 animal, n. m.
a good lock 1.	1 serrure, n. f.
a good opera 1.	1 opera, n. m.
a great captain 1.	1 capitaine, n. m.
a great action 1.	1 action, n. f.
a large tree 1.	1 arbre, n. m.
a large pear 1.	1 poire, n. f.
a young child 1.	1 enfant, n. m.
a young girl 1.	1 fille, n. f.
an old hat 1.	1 chapeau, n. m.
an old officer 1.	1 officier, n. m.
an old mare 1.	1 jument, n. f.
saint Peter 1.	1 Pierre, n. m.
a holy man 1.	1 personnage, n. m.
a small bird 1.	1 oiseau, n. m.
a small watch 1.	1 montre, n. f.

Observe that when a small particle, or any other dependency is added to the foregoing Adjectives, they may be placed either before or after their Nouns, as *un très beau jour*, or *un jour très beau*, a very fine day.

*Of Adjectives placed both before and after their Nouns.*

These Adjectives are, first, such as express the moral qualities either good or bad, as *aimable*, *amiable*; for we say *un homme aimable*, and *un aimable homme*, an amiable man.

### Exercises.

An excellent 1 work 2.	1 Admirable. 2 ouvrage, n. m.
a detestable 1 pamphlet 2.	1 abominable. 2 brochure, n. f.
a learned 1 divine 2.	1 savant. 2 théologien, n. m.
a prudent 1 Swede 2.	1 prudent. 2 Suédois, n. m.
an impertinent 1 girl 2.	1 impertinent. 2 fille, n. f.
an impudent 1 servant 2.	1 impudent. 2 valet, n. m.
an august 1 ceremony 2.	1 auguste. 2 cérémonie, n. f.
cruel 1 dispositions 2.	1 cruel, le. 2 inclination, n. f.
a faithful 1 friend 2.	1 fidele. 2 ami, n. m.
a fearful 1 animal 2.	1 timide. 2 animal, n. m.
bad 1 verses 2.	1 mauvais. 2 vers, n. m.
an unworthy 1 deed 2.	1 indigne. 2 action, n. f.

Each

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH. 19

Each of the foregoing Exercises must make two *French* sentences, in the first whereof the Adjective ought to be placed before, and in the last after its Noun ; as,

A faithful friend. { *Un fidele ami.*  
*un ami fidele.*

Secondly, the Adjective *cher*, dear, denoting price, is placed after, and denoting affection, before its Noun ; as, *un livre cher*, a dear book ; *mon cher oncle*, my dear uncle.

### E X E R C I S E S.

*Cher denoting Price.*

A dear repast 1.	1 <i>Repas</i> , n. m.
a dear coat 1.	1 <i>habit</i> , n. m.
a dear knife 1.	1 <i>couteau</i> , n. m.
dear lands 1.	1 <i>terre</i> , n. f.

*Cher denoting Affection.*

My 1 dear father 2.	1 <i>Mon</i> . 2 <i>pere</i> , n. m.
my 1 dear mother 2.	1 <i>ma</i> . 2 <i>mere</i> , n. f.
my 1 dear wife 2.	1 <i>ma</i> . 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.
my 1 dear children 2.	1 <i>mes</i> . 2 <i>enfant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m.

Thirdly, The Adjective *juste* and *bas*, *se*, are placed before some Nouns, and after others ; as *la Basse Hongrie*, Lower Hungary ; *une maison basse*, a lower house.

### E X E R C I S E S.

The Adjectives *juste* and *bas*, placed before Nouns.

At 1 a reasonable 2 rate 3.	1 <i>à</i> , prep. 2 <i>juste</i> . 3 <i>prix</i> , n. m.
reasonable anger 1.	1. <i>colere</i> , n. f.
just 1 defence 2.	1 <i>juste</i> . 2 <i>defense</i> , n. f.
at a low 1 rate 2.	1 <i>bas</i> . 2 <i>prix</i> , n. m.
Low Languedoc 1.	1 <i>Languedoc</i> , n. m.
Low Normandy 1.	1 <i>Normandie</i> , n. f.

*The same Adjectives coming after Nouns.*

A just action 1.	1 <i>Action</i> , n. f.
a just man 1.	1 <i>homme</i> , n. m.
a mean 1 action 2.	1 <i>bas</i> .
a low floor 1.	1 <i>plancher</i> , n. m.

Fourthly;

Fourthly, The Adjectives *maigre*, *mûr*, *vif*, *vive*, and *pauvre* taken in their proper sense, are placed after; and taken figuratively, before the Nouns; as, *un chien maigre*, a lean dog; *un pauvre diner*, a poor dinner.

## EXERCISES.

## Proper Sense.

A lean 1 child 2.	1 <i>Maigre.</i> 2 <i>enfant</i> , n. m.
ripe 1 apples 2.	1 <i>mûr.</i> 2 <i>pomme</i> , n. f.
a ripe melon 1.	1 <i>melon.</i> n. m.
a sharp 1 man 2.	1 <i>vif.</i> 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.
a poor 1 woman 2.	1 <i>pauvre.</i> 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.

## Figurative Sense.

Bad 1 cheer 2.	1 <i>Maigre.</i> 2 <i>chere</i> , n. f.
imature 1 deliberation 2.	1 <i>mûr.</i> 2 <i>délibération</i> , n. f.
sharp 1 pains 2.	1 <i>vif.</i> 2 <i>douleur</i> , n. f.
a sorry 1 fellow 2.	1 <i>pauvre.</i> 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.

Fifthly, the Adjectives *sage*, *bonnête*, *galant*, *gros*, *se*, *certain*, *furieux*, *ieuse*, and *grand*, have a different meaning, according as they are placed before or after their Nouns, as *une honnête femme*, an honest woman; *une femme bonnête*, a well bred woman.

## EXERCISES.

## The foregoing Adjectives before Nouns.

A midwife 1.	1 <i>Sage femme</i> , n. f.
an honest 1 man 2.	1 <i>bonnête.</i> 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.
a well bred 1 man.	1 <i>galant.</i>
a big 1 woman 2.	1 <i>gros.</i> 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.
a sort of news 1.	<i>une certaine nouvelle.</i>
a huge 1 creature 2.	1 <i>furieux.</i> 2 <i>animal</i> , n. m.
the ways of the great 1.	<i>le grand air.</i>

## The same Adjectives after Nouns.

A wise 1 woman 2.	1 <i>Sage.</i> 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.
a civil 1 man 2.	1 <i>bonnête.</i> 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.
a woman with 1 child.	1 <i>gros.</i>
a sure 1 news 2.	1 <i>certain.</i> 2 <i>nouvelle</i> , n. f.
a fierce 1 animal 2.	1 <i>furieux.</i> 2 <i>animal</i> , n. m.
a noble 1 aspect 2.	1 <i>grand.</i> 2 <i>air</i> , n. m.
a man complaisant 1 to the ladies 1.	1 <i>galant.</i>



*Of Adjectives placed after their Nouns.*

The Adjectives which come before, and those which are placed either before or after the French Nouns being known, it is easy to distinguish those which ought to be placed after them. The chief of these Adjectives are those of nation, colour, figure, taste, hearing, and touching, the verbal Adjectives, those that denote physical and elementary qualities, and those ending in *ique*.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Adjectives.*

*Adjectives of Nations.*

English 1 politicks 2.	1 Anglois. 2 politique, n. f.
French 1 fashions 2.	1 François. 2 mode, n. f.
Italian 1 musick 2.	1 Italien, ne. 2 musique, n. f.
the Chinese 1 language 2.	1 Chinois. 2 langue, n. f.
a Roman 1 beauty 2.	1 Romain. 2 beauté, n. f.

*Adjectives of Colour.*

A red 1 cap 2.	1 Rouge. 2 bonnet, n. m.
a black 1 hat 2.	1 noir. 2 chapeau, n. m.
a white 1 coat 2.	1 blanc. 2 habit, n. m.
blue 1 stockings 2.	1 bleu. 2 bas, n. m.
a yellow 1 flower 2.	1 jaune. 2 fleur, n. f.

*Adjectives of Figure.*

A square 1 table 2.	1 Quarré. 2 table, n. f.
a round 1 ball 2.	1 rond. 2 balle, n. f.
an oval 1 picture 2.	1 ovale. 2 tableau, n. m.
a triangular 1 plan 2.	1 triangulaire. 2 plan, n. m.

*Adjectives of Taste.*

Bitter 1 herbs 2.	1 Amer. 2 herbe, n. f.
tart 1 fruit 2.	1 acre. 2 fruit, n. m.
sweet 1 wine 2.	1 doux. 2 vin, n. m.

*Adjectives of hearing and touching.*

A sonorous 1 instrument 2.	1 Sonore. 2 instrument, n. m.
an harmonious 1 voice 2.	1 harmonieux, ieuse. 2 voix, n. f.
tough 1 meat 2.	1 dur. 2 viande, n. f.
a liquid 1 mess 2.	1 liquide. 2 mets, n. m.
an uneven 1 road 2.	1 raboteux. 2 chemin, n. m.
dry 1 grapes 2.	1 sec. 2 raisin, n. m.

*Verbal*



*Verbal Adjectives.*

Burnt 1 wine 2.	1 <i>Brulé.</i> 2 <i>vin, n. m.</i>
a rounded 1 figure 2.	1 <i>arrondi.</i> 2 <i>figure, n. f.</i>
a diverting 1 sight 2.	1 <i>divertissant.</i> 2 <i>spectacle, n. m.</i>
an over-ruling 1 passion 2.	1 <i>dominant.</i> 2 <i>passion, n. f.</i>

*Adjectives denoting physical and elementary qualities.*

Cold 1 weather 2.	1 <i>Froid.</i> 2 <i>temps, n. m.</i>
wholesome 1 weather 2.	1 <i>sain.</i>
a warm 1 wind 2.	1 <i>chaud.</i> 2 <i>vent, n. m.</i>
a bad 1 air 2.	1 <i>méchant.</i> 2 <i>air, n. m.</i>
a lame 1 girl 2.	1 <i>boiteux, euse.</i> 2 <i>filles, n. f.</i>
a maimed 1 soldier 2.	1 <i>manché.</i> 2 <i>soldat, n. m.</i>
a moist 1 brain 2.	1 <i>humide.</i> 2 <i>cerveau, n. m.</i>
a wholesome 1 food 2.	1 <i>sain.</i> 2 <i>nourriture, n. f.</i>
an ugly 1 fellow 2.	1 <i>laide.</i> 2 <i>homme, n. m.</i>

*Adjectives ending in ique.*

A peaceable 1 man 2.	1 <i>Pacifique.</i> 2 <i>homme, n. m.</i>
a magnificent 1 building 2.	1 <i>magnifique.</i> 2 <i>bâtiment, n. m.</i>
a lyric 1 poet 2.	1 <i>lyrique.</i> 2 <i>poète, n. m.</i>
a soporiferous 1 drink 2.	1 <i>soporifique.</i> 2 <i>potion, n. f.</i>

*Of Nouns accompanied by two or more Adjectives.*

## R U L E I.

When a Noun is accompanied by two Adjectives, the surest way is to place these Adjectives after it, with the Conjunction *Et* before the last; as, *un prince sage Et prudent*, a wise and prudent king.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

A beautiful 1 and 2 modest 3 woman 4.	1 <i>Beau, belle.</i> 2 <i>Et conj.</i> 3 <i>modeste.</i> 4 <i>femme, n. f.</i>
a just 1 and bountiful 2 God 3.	1 <i>juste.</i> 2 <i>bienfaisant.</i> 3 <i>Dieu, n. m.</i>
a sincere 1 and disinterested 2 friend 3.	1 <i>sincere.</i> 2 <i>désintéressé.</i> 3 <i>ami, n. m.</i>
a solid 1 and bright 2 genius 3.	1 <i>solide.</i> 2 <i>brillant.</i> 3 <i>génie, n. m.</i>

private

private 1 and base 2 designs 3.	1 particulier. 2 bontoux. 3 dessein, n. m.
a cruel 1 and revengeful 2 enemy 3.	1 cruel. 2 vindicatif. 3 ennemi, n. m.
a monarchical 1 and despotic 2 government 3.	1 monarchique. 2 despotique. 3 gouvernement, n. m.
a gross 1 and brutish 2 ignorance 3.	1 grossier. 2 brutal. 3 ignorance, n. f.
useful 1 and easy 2 discoveries 3.	1 utile. 2 facile. 3 découverte, n. f.
a mean 1 and despicable 2 expression 3.	1 bas, se. 2 méprisable. 3 expression, n. f.

## RULE II.

When a Noun is accompanied by three or more adjectives, these adjectives must be placed after it, with the conjunction & before the last; as, *un historien éloquent, judicieux & désintéressé*, an eloquent, judicious and impartial historian.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

A long 1 innocent 2 and happy 3 life 4.	1 Long, ue. 2 innocent. 3 heureux, euse. 4 vie, n. f.
a short 1 wicked 2 and unhappy 3 life.	1 court. 2 criminel, le. 3 malheureux, euse.
a covetous 1 cruel 2 and bloody 3 prince 4.	1 avare. 2 cruel, le. 3 sangulaire. 4 prince, n. m.
a sober 1 virtuous 2 and complaisant 3 wife 4.	1 sobre. 2 vertueux, euse. 3 complaisant. 4 femme, n. f.
a sober, faithful 1 and industrious 2 servant 3.	1 fidele. 2 industrieux, euse. 3 domestique, n. m.

### Comparison of Adjectives.

We have but three comparatives, viz. *meilleur*, best; *pire*, worse; *moindre*, less; and three superlatives, viz. *le meilleur*, the best; *le pire*, the worst; and *le moindre*, the least.

When we have a mind to compare persons or things with each other, we place before our adjectives the following words, viz.

*Plus*

*Plus*, more.

*le plus*, and *la plus*, the most.

*aussi*, as.

*moins*, less.

*le moins*, and *la moins*, the least.

*si*, so.

*Très*, very.

*bien*, very.

*fort*, very.

*extremement*, extremely.

*prodigieusement*, vastly.

*infiniment*, infinitely.

As *plus beau*, handsomer, or more handsome; *le plus beau*, the handsomest, or the most handsome, &c.

You must observe that *than* and *as* immediately placed after the comparing Adjective, must always be rendered into French by *que*; as,

Smaller than I.

as tall as you.

*Plus petit que moi.*

*aussi grand que vous.*

*Exercises upon the comparison of adjectives.*

Julia 1 is

more handsome 2

than

as handsome as

less handsome than

I am 1 taller 2 than

as tall as

less tall than

she is 1 wiser 2 than

as wise as

less wise than

she is the most agreeable 1.

the most ugly 1.

the least proud 1

the least witty 1.

the most innocent 1.

the most polite 1.

the most complaisant 1.

the most ridiculous 1.

we are not 1

so good 2

so bad 3

so diligent 4

so lazy 5

as they 6.

1 *Julie est*

2 *beau, belle.* 3 *sa.*

4 *sœur, n. f.*

1 *Je suis.* 2 *grand.* 3 *vous.*

1 *elle est.* 2 *sage.* 3 *lui.*

1 *agréable.*

1 *laid.*

1 *orgueilleux, euse.*

1 *spirituel, le.*

1 *innocent.*

1 *poli.*

1 *complaisant.*

1 *ridicule.*

1 *nous ne sommes pas.*

2 *bon, bonne.*

3 *méchant.*

4 *diligent.*

5  *paresseux, euse.* 6 *eux.*

they



they are 1	very difficult 2.	1 <i>ils sont.</i> 2- <i>difficile.</i>
very neat 1.		1 <i>propre.</i>
very bald 1.		1 <i>chauve.</i>
very deaf 1.		1 <i>sourd.</i>
very unhappy 1.		1 <i>malheureux.</i>
very humourfome 1.		1 <i>fantafque.</i>
very troublesome 1.		1 <i>incommode.</i>
very vicious 1.		1 <i>vicieux.</i>
extreamly civil 1.		1 <i>civil.</i>
extreamly revengeful 1.		1 <i>vindictif.</i>
vastly prodigal 1.		1 <i>prodigue.</i>
vastly covetous 1.		1 <i>avare.</i>
God is 1	infinitely juſt 2.	1 <i>Dieu eſt.</i> 2 <i>juſte.</i>
infinitely wiſe 1.		1 <i>fage.</i>
infinitely great 1.		1 <i>grand.</i>
infinitely powerful.		1 <i>puiffant.</i>

## OF PRONOUNS.

*French Pronouns* are either conjunctive or disjunctive. The first are ſuch as take no article, and are always joined to the verbs, as will be ſeen hereafter.

The others are declined with the firſt or ſecond article, and are either nominal or adjectives.

*A liſt of the Nominal Pronouns declined with the Firſt Article.*

Sing. <i>Le mien, la mienne</i> ; plur. <i>les miens, les miennes</i> , mine.	ſing. <i>le leur, la leur</i> ; plur. <i>les leurs</i> , theirs.
ſing. <i>le tien, la tienne</i> ; plur. <i>les tiens, les tiennes</i> , thine.	ſing. <i>lequel, laquelle</i> ; plur. <i>lesquels</i> , which.
ſing. <i>le ſien, la ſienne</i> ; plur. <i>les ſiens, les ſiennes</i> , his, her, its.	ſing. <i>l'un, l'une</i> ; plur. <i>les uns, les unes</i> , the one.
ſing. <i>le nôtre, la nôtre</i> ; plur. <i>les nôtres</i> , ours.	ſing. <i>l'autre</i> , the other.
ſing. <i>le vôtre, la vôtre</i> ; plur. <i>les vôtres</i> , yours.	ſing. <i>le même, la même</i> ; plur. <i>les mêmes</i> , the ſame.

The foregoing, and the other nominal pronouns being often joined to verbs in the diſcourſe, I ſhall not give any Exerciſes upon them, before I have ſhewed the formation of



the last. I must however observe here, that the best way to learn the nominal pronouns, is to decline each of them with its respective article.

*A list of the Nominal Pronouns declined with the Second Article.*

Sing. <i>Moi</i> , me; plur. <i>nous</i> , us.	sing. plur. <i>ce</i> , he, she, it, they.
sing. <i>moi même</i> , myself; plur. <i>nous-mêmes</i> , ourselves.	sing. <i>ceci</i> , this.
sing. <i>toi-même</i> , thyself; plur. <i>vous-mêmes</i> , yourselves.	sing. <i>cela</i> , that.
sing. <i>lui</i> , he, him; plur. <i>eux</i> , they, them.	sing. plur. <i>qui</i> , who, which.
sing. <i>lui-même</i> , himself; plur. <i>eux-mêmes</i> , themselves.	sing. <i>ce qui</i> , what.
sing. <i>elle même</i> , herself; plur. <i>elles-mêmes</i> , themselves.	sing. <i>ce que</i> , what:
sing. plur. <i>soi</i> , one's self, himself, herself, themselves.	sing. <i>quelqu'un</i> , somebody;
sing. plur. <i>soi-même</i> , one's self, himself, herself, themselves.	plur. <i>quelques uns</i> , some.
sing. <i>celui</i> , he, him, that; plur. <i>ceux</i> , they, those.	sing. <i>aucun</i> , none.
sing. <i>celui-ci</i> , this; plur. <i>ceux-ci</i> , these.	sing. <i>quoi</i> , what.
sing. <i>celui-là</i> , that; plur. <i>ceux-là</i> , those.	<i>chacun</i> , every body.
sing. <i>celle</i> , she, her, that; plur. <i>celles</i> , they, those.	sing. <i>pas un</i> , not one.
sing. <i>celle-ci</i> , this; plur. <i>celles-ci</i> , these.	<i>quiconque</i> , whosoever.
sing. <i>celle-là</i> that; plur. <i>celles-là</i> , those.	<i>nul</i> , none.
	<i>autrui</i> , others.
	<i>personne</i> , no body.
	<i>rien</i> , nothing.
	<i>tel</i> , such.
	<i>qui que ce soit</i> , whosoever it is.
	<i>quoi que ce soit</i> , whatsoever.
	<i>qui que ce fut</i> , whosoever it was.
	<i>quoi que ce fut</i> , whatsoever it was.
	<i>plusieurs</i> , many.
	<i>que</i> , what, used without an article.

*qui* and *quoi* have *de qui*, *de quoi*, and *dont*, in their genitives.

*A list of the Pronouns Adjective declined with the First Article.*

sing. <i>Le même</i> , <i>la même</i> , the same; plur. <i>les mêmes</i> , the same.	whom, which; plur. <i>lesquels</i> , <i>lesquelles</i> , who, whom, which.
sing. <i>lequel</i> , <i>laquelle</i> , who,	

*Exerciser*

*Exercises upon the foregoing Pronouns.*

## R U L E I.

*Le même, la même, les mêmes*, must always be placed before the nouns and adjectives, as *le même toit*, the same roof.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The same sun 1.	1 <i>soleil</i> , n. m.
of the same stars 1.	1 <i>étoile</i> , n. f.
to the same churches 1.	1 <i>église</i> , n. f.
the same person 1.	1 <i>personne</i> , n. f.
the same little 1 boy 2.	1 <i>petit</i> , adj. 2 <i>garçon</i> , n. m.
of the same square 2 tables 1.	1 <i>table</i> , n. f. 2 <i>quarré</i> , adj.
to the same green 2 pease 1.	1 <i>pois</i> , n. m. 2 <i>verd</i> , adj.

## R U L E II.

*Même*, himself, herself, itself, very; and *mêmes*, themselves, very, are often placed immediately after nouns and most pronouns, to encrease their energy, as *le Roi même*, the king himself.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Innocence itself.	<i>Innocence</i> , n. f.
virtue 1 itself.	1 <i>vertu</i> , n. f.
the English 1 themselves.	1 <i>Anglois</i> , n. m.
his very friends 1.	1 <i>ami</i> , n. m.
the laws 1 themselves.	1 <i>loi</i> , plur. <i>loix</i> , n. f.

## R U L E III.

*Lequel, laquelle, lesquels* and *lesquelles*, must be placed alone after their nouns, as *Les moutons à la dépouille desquels les hommes doivent leurs vêtements*, the sheep to whose wool men owe their cloathing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The Thames 1 in 2 the chan- nel 3 of which, &c.	1 <i>Tamise</i> , n. f. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>sur</i> , n. m.
the Lord 1 to whose protecti- on 2, &c.	1 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>protection</i> , n. f.
the sciences 1 to which, &c.	1 <i>science</i> , n. f.

*A list of the Pronouns Adjective declined with the Second Article,*

Sing. <i>Mon, ma</i> , my; plur. <i>mes</i> , my.	Sing. <i>leur</i> , their; plur. <i>leurs</i> , their.
Sing. <i>ton, ta</i> , thy; plur. <i>tes</i> , thy.	Sing. <i>quel, quelle</i> , what, which;
Sing. <i>son, sa</i> , his, her, its; plur. <i>ses</i> , his, her, its.	plur. <i>quels, quelles</i> , what, which.
Sing. <i>notre</i> , our; plur. <i>nos</i> , our.	Sing. <i>certain, certaine</i> , certain;
Sing. <i>votre</i> , your; plur. <i>vos</i> , your.	plur. <i>certain, certaines</i> , certain.
Sing. <i>ce, cet, cette</i> , this, that; plur. <i>ces</i> , these, those.	Sing. <i>autre</i> , other; plur. <i>autres</i> , other.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Pronouns.*

RULE I.

These pronouns must always be placed before their nouns, as *ma tabatiere*, my snuff-box.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

My grandfather 1.	1 <i>grand pere</i> , n. m.
to my uncle 1.	1 <i>oncle</i> , n. m.
thy brothers 1.	1 <i>frere</i> , n. m.
her sisters 1.	1 <i>soeur</i> , n. f.
to our house 1.	1 <i>maison</i> , n. f.
of your street 1.	1 <i>rue</i> , n. f.
this nobleman 1.	1 <i>seigneur</i> , n. m.
to this city 1.	1 <i>ville</i> , n. f.
of these reasons 1.	1 <i>raison</i> , n. f.
their relations 1.	1 <i>parent</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , n. m.
what discourse 1.	1 <i>discours</i> , n. m.
a certain man 1.	1 <i>quidam</i> , n. m.

RULE II.

*Mon, ton*, and *son* must always be used before such of the nouns feminine as begin with a vowel, or an *b* not founded, as *mon ame*, my soul; *mon bonheur*, my honour.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

My plate 1.	1 <i>Assiette</i> , n. f.
thy ewer 1.	1 <i>aiguiere</i> , n. f.
her almond 1.	1 <i>amande</i> , n. f.
of my spouse 1.	1 <i>épouse</i> , n. f.



of thy heirefs 1.	1 <i>héritière</i> , n. f.
of her alliance 1.	1 <i>alliance</i> , n. f.
to thy needle 1.	1 <i>éguille</i> , n. f.
to her emerald 1.	1 <i>émeraude</i> , n. f.

### R U L E III.

*Cet* must always be placed before nouns masculine beginning with a vowel, or an *h* not sounded, as *cet animal*, this animal; *cet homme là*, that man.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

This summer 1.	1 <i>Été</i> , n. m.
this work 1.	1 <i>ouvrage</i> , n. m.
this bishop 1.	1 <i>évêque</i> , n. m.
that archbishop 1.	1 <i>archevêque</i> , n. m.

### R U L E IV.

The pronouns, declined with the second Article, must always be placed before the other adjectives, as *mon bel ange*, my pretty angel.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

My dear 1 friend 2.	1 <i>Cher</i> . 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.
your good 1 neighbours 2.	1 <i>bon</i> . 2 <i>voisin</i> , n. m.
his bad 1 wine 2.	1 <i>méchant</i> . 2 <i>vin</i> , n. m.
our lovely 1 companion 2.	1 <i>aimable</i> . 2 <i>compagne</i> , n. f.
this fine 1 palace 2.	1 <i>beau</i> . 2 <i>palais</i> , n. m.
these long 1 walks.	1 <i>long</i> , ue. 2 <i>promenade</i> , n. f.
their little 1 bitch 2.	1 <i>petit</i> . 2 <i>chienne</i> , n. f.
what ugly 1 creature 2 ?	1 <i>vilain</i> . 2 <i>créature</i> , n. f.

## OF V E R B S.

There are six sorts of *French* verbs, viz. the Auxiliary, Active, Neuter, Passive, Impersonal and Reflexed.

Four things may be distinguished in a *French* Verb, viz. its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

There are four moods, viz. the infinitive, indicative, imperative, and conjunctive.

The infinitive has two tenses, viz. the present, and its compound.

The indicative has ten, viz. the present, imperfect, preterite, future, conditional, and their compounds.

The imperative has one only, viz. the present.



The conjunctive has four, viz. the present, the preterite, and their compounds.

There are in most of the *French* tenses two numbers, viz. the singular, which speaks of one; and the plural, which speaks of more than one.

Each of these numbers commonly has three persons, called the first, second, and third person.

The *French* verbs are conjugated with the conjunctive pronouns *je*, I; *tu*, thou; *il*, he; *elle*, she; *on*, one; *nous*, we; *vous*, ye; *ils*, they; *elles*, they; *on*, they.

The first person of the singular is *je*, I; the second *tu*, thou; and the third *il*, he; *elle*, she; and *on*, one.

The first person of the plural is *nous*, we; the second *vous*, you; and the third *ils*, they; *elles*, they; and *on*, they.

All the *French* nouns belong to the third persons of the verbs.

*The auxiliary verb Avoir, to have, conjugated in its single tenses.*

Infinitive. *Avoir*, to have.

Participle active. *Ayant*, having.

Participle passive. *Eû*, had.

*Indicative.*

Present. *J'ai*, I have.

*tu as*, thou hast.

*il a*, he has.

*e'le a*, she has.

*on a*, one has.

*nous avons*, we have.

*vous avez*, ye have.

*ils ont*, they have.

*elles ont*, they have.

*on a*, they have.

Imp. *J'avois*, I had.

*tu avois*, thou had'st.

*il avoit*, he had.

*nous avions*, we had.

*vous aviez*, ye had.

*ils avoient*, they had.

Preter. *J'eus*, I had.

*tu eus*, thou had'st.

*il eut*, he had.

*nous eumes*, we had.

*vous eutes*, ye had.

*ils eurent*, they had.

Fut. *J'aurai*, I shall, or will have.

*tu auras*, thou shalt have.

*il aura*, he shall have.

*nous aurons*, we shall have.

*vous aurez*, ye shall have.

*ils auront*, they shall have.

Conditional. *J'aurais*, I should, would, could, or might have; *tu aurais*, thou shouldest have; *il aurait*, he should have;

have ; *nous aurions*, we should have ; *vous auriez*, ye should have ; *ils auroient*, they should have.

*Imperative.*

Pref. *Aie*, have. *ayez*, have.  
*qu'il aie*, let him have. *qu'ils aient*, let them have.  
*ayons*, let us have.

*Conjunctive.*

Pref. *Que j'aie*, that I may have. Pret. *Que j'eusse*, that I might have.  
*que tu aies*, that thou mayest have. *que tu eusses*, that thou mightest have.  
*qu'il ait*, that he may have. *qu'il eût*, that he might have.  
*que nous ayons*, that we may have. *que nous eussions*, that we might have.  
*que vous ayez*, that ye may have. *que vous eussiez*, that ye might have.  
*qu'ils aient*, that they may have. *qu'ils eussent*, that they might have.

*Use of this Verb.*

This Verb serves to form the compounds of the auxiliary Verbs *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, those of all the Verbs active and impersonal, and those of most Verbs neuter.

*Formation of the compounds of the Verb Avoir.*

*Rule.* To form these compounds, you need only add the participle passive *eu* after the foregoing parts of the infinitive, participle active, indicative, and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*, as

Inf. *Avoir eu*, to have had.

Part. act. *Ayant eu*, having had.

*Indicative.*

Pref. *J'ai eu*, I have had ; *tu as eu*, *il a eu*, *nous avons eu*, *vous avez eu*, *ils ont eu*.

Imp. *J'avais eu*, I had had ; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive.

*Formation of the compounds of the other foregoing Verbs.*

These compounds are formed like those of the Verb *avoir*, viz. by adding the participle passive of the Verb you have a mind to conjugate after the single parts of the infinitive, participle active, indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*, as

*Avoir été*, to have been ; *ayant été*, having been ; *j'ai été*, I have been ; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*.

*Avoir porté*, to have carried ; *ayant porté*, having carried ; *j'ai porté*, I have carried ; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*.

*Exercises upon the verb Avoir, to have, and the compounds of the foregoing verbs.*

Before the learner sets about these and other Exercises upon the French Verbs, he must observe, first, that the conjunctive Pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, and *on*, are nominative cases to the French Verbs.

Secondly, that when we affirm or deny, the nominative commonly comes before the Verb, as *la loi commande*, the law commands ; *les écoliers n'étudient pas*, the scholars don't study.

Thirdly, that in the same cases the accusative commonly follows the Verb, as *il aime la vertu*, he loves virtue ; *il n'aime pas le mensonge*, he does not love lying.

Fourthly, That the participles passive are declined like Adjectives ; for we say, *donné, donnée, donnés, données*, given.

I have some money 1.	1 argent, n. m.
he has prudence 1.	1 prudence, n. f.
Peter 1 has discretion 2.	1 Pierre, n. m. 2 discrétion, n. f.
we have bibles 1.	1 bible, n. f.
ye have grammars 1.	1 grammaire, n. f.
they have trees 1.	1 arbre, n. m.
John 1 and Andrew 2 have	1 Jean, n. m. 2 André, n. m.
courage 3.	3 courage, n. m.
I had fine tulips 1.	1 tulipe, n. f.
he had large 1 plumbs 2.	1 gros, se, adj. 2 prune, n. f.
Mr. Dune had learning 1.	1 savoir, n. m.
we had several 1 foes 2.	1 plusieurs, adj. plur. 2 ennemi,
	n. m.
ye had wealth 1.	1 bien, n. m.
they had modesty 1.	1 modestie, n. f.
I shall have a companion 1.	1 companion, n. m.
my master 1 will have a fine 2	1 maître, n. m. 2 beau, adj.
garden 3.	3 jardin, n. m.



we shall have a holyday 1.	1 <i>congé</i> , n. m.
ye shall have your reward 1.	1 <i>recompense</i> , n. f.
they shall have the bastinado 1.	1 <i>bastonnade</i> , n. f.
I have proposed 1 my design 2.	1 <i>proposé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>dessein</i> , n. m.
thou hast sung 1 a song 2.	1 <i>chanté</i> , p. p. 2 <i>chanson</i> , n. f.
he has comforted 1 the afflicted 2.	1 <i>consolé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>affligé</i> , n. m.
we have protected 1 the widow 2 and orphan 3.	1 <i>protégé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>veuve</i> , n. f. 3 <i>orphelin</i> , n. m.
ye have accused 1 the guilty 2.	1 <i>accusé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>coupable</i> , n. m.
the English 1 have beat 2 the French 3.	1 <i>Anglois</i> , n. m. 2 <i>battu</i> , p. p. 3 <i>François</i> , n. m.
I had begun 1 my exercise 2.	1 <i>commencé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>thème</i> , n. m.
thou had done 1 your work 2.	1 <i>fait</i> , p. p. 2 <i>ouvrage</i> , n. m.
the king 1 of Prussia 2 had defeated 3 the Austrians 4.	1 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Prusse</i> , n. f. 3 <i>défait</i> , p. p. 4 <i>Autrichien</i> .
we had obtained 1 leave 2.	1 <i>obtenu</i> , p. p. 2 <i>permission</i> , n. f.
ye had followed 1 good 2 examples 3.	1 <i>sui-vi</i> , p. p. 2 <i>bon</i> , adj. 3 <i>exemple</i> , n. m.
ye had committed 1 great 2 faults 3.	1 <i>commis</i> , p. p. 2 <i>grand</i> , adj. 3 <i>faute</i> , n. f.
they had visited 1 several countries 3.	1 <i>visité</i> , p. p. 2 <i>plusieurs</i> , adj. plur. 3 <i>pays</i> , n. m.
I shall have dined 1.	1 <i>diné</i> , p. p.
thou wilt have built 1 thy house 2.	1 <i>bâti</i> , p. p. 2 <i>maison</i> , n. f.
Mr. 1 Duval will have ended 2 his journey 3.	1 <i>Monsieur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>achevé</i> , p. p. 3 <i>voyage</i> , n. m.
we shall have conquered 1 our enemies 2.	1 <i>conquis</i> , p. p. 2 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m.
ye will have buried 1 your mother 2.	1 <i>enterré</i> , p. p. 2 <i>mere</i> , n. f.
they will have explained 1 their meaning 2.	1 <i>expliqué</i> , p. p. 2 <i>pensée</i> , n. f.
I should have discovered 1 his shame 2.	1 <i>découvert</i> , p. p. 2 <i>honte</i> , n. f.
ye would have asked 1 pardon 2.	1 <i>demandé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>pardon</i> .
we should have thought 1 otherwise 2.	1 <i>pensé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>autrement</i> .



# 34 EXERCISES upon the

they should have spelled 1 this word 2.	1 <i>épellé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>mot</i> , n. m.
I might have refreshed 1 my memory 2.	1 <i>rafraichi</i> , p. p. 2 <i>mémoire</i> , n. f.
you might have consulted 1 the bishop 2.	1 <i>consulté</i> , p. p. 2 <i>évêque</i> , n. m.
we might have avoided 1 his snares 2.	1 <i>évité</i> , p. p. 2 <i>piège</i> , n. m.
they might have breakfasted 1.	1 <i>déjeuné</i> , p. p.
they would have listened 1.	1 <i>écouté</i> , p. p.
they would have paid 1 their debts 2.	1 <i>payé</i> , p. p. 2 <i>dette</i> , n. f.

*The auxiliary verb Etre, conjugated in its single tenses.*

Infinitive. *Etre*, to be.

Part. act. *Etant*, being.

Part. pas. *Été*, been.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je suis*, I am.

*tu es*, thou art.

*il est*, he is.

*nous sommes*, we are.

*vous êtes*, ye are.

*ils sont*, they are.

Imp. *J'étois*, I was.

*tu étois*, thou wast.

*il étoit*, he was.

*nous étions*, we were.

*vous étiez*, ye were.

*ils étoient*, they were.

Pret. *Je fus*, I was,

*tu fus*, thou wast.

*il fut*, he was.

*nous fumes*, we were.

*vous fûtes*, ye were.

*ils furent*, they were.

Fut. *Je serai*, I shall be.

*tu seras*, thou shalt be.

*il sera*, he shall be.

*nous serons*, we shall be.

*vous serez*, ye shall be.

*ils seront*, they shall be.

Cond. *Je serois*, I should be ; *tu serois*, thou shouldest be ;  
*il seroit*, he should be ; *nous serions*, we should be ; *vous se-*  
*riez*, ye should be ; *ils seroient*, they should be.

*Imperative.*

Pres *Sois*, be.

*qu'il soit*, let him be.

*soyons*, let us be.

*soyez*, be.

*qu'ils soient*, let them be.

*Conjunctive.*

Pres. *Que je sois*, that I may be.

*que tu sois*, that thou mayest be.

*qu'il soit*, that he may be.

*que nous soyons*, that we may be.

*que vous soyez*, that ye may be.

*qu'ils soient*, that they may be.

Pret.

Pret. <i>Que je fusse</i> , that I might be.	<i>que nous fussions</i> , that we might be.
<i>que tu fusses</i> , that thou mightest be.	<i>que vous fussiez</i> , that ye might be.
<i>qu'il fût</i> , that he might be.	<i>qu'il fussent</i> , that they might be.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Tenses.*

To make the following Exercises, it is necessary to know, that the Noun or Adjective, denoting what the nominative of the Verb *être* is, must also be put in the nominative, as *vous êtes sage*, you are wise.

I am the Lord 1 your God 2.	1 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.
wisdom 1 is more precious 2 than rubies 3.	1 <i>sagesse</i> , n. f. 2 <i>précieux</i> , euse, adj. 3 <i>rubis</i> , n. m.
the fear 1 of the Lord is the beginning 2 of knowledge 3.	1 <i>crainte</i> , n. f. 2 <i>commencement</i> , n. m. 3 <i>sagesse</i> , n. f.
we are the children 1 of God.	1 <i>enfant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m.
you are good 1 and wise 2.	1 <i>bon</i> , adj. 2 <i>sage</i> , adj.
the brave 1 are not cruel 2.	1 <i>les hommes courageux</i> . 2 <i>cruel</i> , adj.
William 1 the Conqueror 2 was king 3 of England 4.	1 <i>Guillaume</i> , n. m. 2 <i>conquérant</i> , n. m. 3 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 4 <i>Angleterre</i> , n. f.
Adam was the first 1 man 2.	1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.
Solomon 1 was the wisest 2 of men.	1 <i>Salomon</i> , n. m. 2 <i>sage</i> , adj.
we were present 1 at the ceremony 2.	1 <i>présent</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , adj. 2 <i>à la cérémonie</i> .
Cain and Abel were brothers 1.	1 <i>frere</i> , n. m.
the good 1 shall be rewarded 2.	1 <i>bon</i> , n. m. 2 <i>recompensé</i> , p. p.
the wicked 1 shall be punished 2.	1 <i>méchant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 2 <i>puni</i> , p. p.
the poor 1 in spirit 2 shall be blessed 3.	1 <i>pauvre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>d'esprit</i> . 3 <i>glorifié</i> , p. p.
you should be more generous 1.	1 <i>généreux</i> , euse, adj.

Observe that the compounds of the Verb *être*, are liable to the same rules as its single tenses.

*Use of the verb Etre.*

With the Verbs *avoir* and *être*, we form the compounds of all the *French Verbs*. The first, as I have already shewed, serves to form its own compounds, those of the Verb *être*, those of all the active Verbs, and those of most Verbs neuter. The last, as I shall shew by and by, serves to form the compounds of the reflected Verbs, and those of few Verbs neuter.

*Of VERBS PASSIVE.*

To form a Verb passive, you need only add the participle passive of any Verb active after every single and compounded part of the Verb *être*, as

Inf. *Etre aimé*, to be loved. Comp. *avoir été aimé*, to have been loved.

Part. act. *Etant aimé*, being loved. Comp. *ayant été aimé*, having been loved.

*Indicative.**Single Tenses.*

Pres. *Je suis aimé*, I am loved; *tu es aimé*, *il est aimé*, *nous sommes aimés*, *vous êtes aimés*, *ils sont aimés*.

Imp. *J'étois aimé*, I was loved; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive\*.

*Compounds.*

Pres. *J'ai été aimé*, I have been loved; *tu as été aimé*, *il a été aimé*, *nous avons été aimés*, *vous avez été aimés*, *ils ont été aimés*. *J'avois été aimé*, I had been loved; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *être* †.

*Exercises upon the Verbs Passive.*

I am forsaken 1.	1 <i>Abandonné</i> , p. p.
thou art humbled 1.	1 <i>humilié</i> , p. p.
the tree 1 is pulled down 2.	1 <i>arbre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>abbattu</i> , p. p.
we are detested 1.	1 <i>détesté</i> , p. p.
you are hated 1.	1 <i>hâï</i> , p. p.
they are killed 1.	1 <i>tué</i> , p. p.
the victims 1 were sacrificed 2.	1 <i>victime</i> , n. f. 2 <i>sacrifié</i> , p. p.
the prophecies 1 were fulfilled 2.	1 <i>prophétie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>accompli</i> , p. p.

\* See page 34, 35.

† See page 30, 31.

your

your advice I shall be fol- lowed 2.	<i>conseil</i> , n. m. 2 <i>suiwi</i> , p. p.
you shall be admonished 1.	1 <i>admonesté</i> , p. p.
these laws I should be re- peated 2.	1 <i>loi</i> , plur. <i>loix</i> , n. f. 2 <i>re- voqué</i> , p. p.
I have been esteemed 1.	1 <i>estimé</i> , p. p.
thou hast been believed 1.	1 <i>cru</i> , p. p.
our trespasses I have been forgiven 2.	1 <i>offense</i> , n. f. 2 <i>pardonné</i> , p. p.
we have been forgotten 1.	1 <i>oublié</i> , p. p.
you have been condemned 1.	1 <i>condamné</i> , p. p.
the towns I have been demo- lished 2.	1 <i>ville</i> , n. f. 2 <i>démoli</i> , p. p.
we had been sent 1.	1 <i>envoyé</i> , p. p.
they had been burnt 1.	1 <i>brulé</i> , p. p.
we shall have been imitated 1.	1 <i>imité</i> , p. p.
we should have been purged 1.	1 <i>purgé</i> , p. p.

### *Conjugation of the French Verbs.*

The Conjugation of a Verb consists in its various endings, denoting its moods, single tenses, numbers and persons.

We have six different Conjugations, all known by the ending of their respective infinitive.

The infinitive of the first ends in *er*, like *porter*, to carry.

That of the second ends in *ir*, like *finir*, to finish.

That of the third ends in *oir*, like *recevoir*, to receive.

The three others, ending in *e* not sounded, can only be distinguished from one another by the vowels and diphthongs coming immediately before the consonants of their respective ending.

The vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, help to form the ending of the fourth, as

*Battre*, to beat.

*mordre*, to bite,

*permettre*, to permit.

*conclure*, to conclude.

*construire*, to build.

The diphthongs *ai*, *oi*, and *ou*, help to form the ending of the fourth, as,

*Plaire*, to please.

*coude*, to sow.

*boire*, to drink.

The nasal vowels *an*, *en*, *em*, *on*, *ain*, *ein*, and *oin*, help to form the ending of the last, as

*Répandre*,



*Répandre*, to spill.

*défendre*, to defend.

*répondre*, to answer.

*craindre*, to fear.

*peindre*, to paint.

*joindre*, to join.

The infinitive is the root of the participles, and first persons singular of the single tenses; for from *aimer*, to love, come

*Aimant*, loving.

*aimé*, loved.

*j'aime*, I love.

*j'aimois*, I did love.

*j'aimai*, I loved.

*j'aimerai*, I shall love.

*j'aimerois*, I should love.

*que j'aime*, that I may love.

*que j'aimasse*, that I might love.

As to the other five persons of every single tense, they are commonly derived, even in the irregular Verbs, from the first person of the tense they belong to. Therefore from *j'aime*, I love, are formed,

*Tu aimes*, thou lovest.

*il aime*, he loves.

*nous aimons*, we love.

*vous aimez*, ye love.

*ils aiment*, they love.

The imperative of a Verb of the first conjugation is formed, as will be shewn afterwards, of the present of the indicative. As to those of the other conjugations, they are formed of the presents of the indicative and conjunctive, as

*Finis*, finish.

*qu'il finisse*, let him finish.

*finissons*, let us finish.

*finissez*, finish.

*qu'ils finissent*, let them finish.

### First Conjugation.

Inf. *Porter*, to carry.

Part. act. *Portant*, carrying.

Part. pas. *Porté*, carried.

#### Indicative.

Pres. *Je porte*, I carry; *tu*

*portes*, *il porte*, *nous portons*,

*vous portez*, *ils portent*,

Pret. *Je portai*, I carried; *tu*

*portas*, *il porta*, *nous por-*

*tames*, *vous portates*, *ils por-*

*terent*.

Imp. *Je portois*, I did carry; *tu*

*portois*, *il portoit*, *nous por-*

*tions*, *vous portiez*, *ils por-*

*toient*.

Fut. *Je porterai*, I shall or

will carry; *tu porteras*, *il*

*portera*, *nous porterons*, *vous*

*porterez*, *ils porteront*.

Cond. *Je porterois*, I should, would, could, or might carry; *tu*

*porterais*, *il porteroit*, *nous porterions*, *vous porteriez*, *ils*

*porteroient*.

Imperative.

*Imperative.*

*Porte*, carry. *portez*, carry.  
*qu'il porte*, let him carry. *qu'ils portent*, let them carry.  
*portons*, let us carry.

*Conjunctive.*

*Pres. Que je porte*, that I may carry; *que tu portes*, *qu'il porte*, *que nous portions*, *que vous portiez*, *qu'ils portent*.  
*Pret. Que je portasse*, that I might carry; *tu portasses*, *il portât*, *nous portassions*, *vous portassiez*, *ils portassent*.

*Exercises upon this Conjugation.*

You keep 1 the commandments 2 of God 3.	1 <i>Garder</i> . 2 <i>commandement</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , n. m. 3 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.
we avoid 1 the company 2 of the wicked 3.	1 <i>éviter</i> . 2 <i>compagnie</i> , n. f. 3 <i>mechant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , adj.
ye honour 1 the king 2.	1 <i>respecter</i> . 2 <i>roi</i> , n. m.
they change 1 their course of life 2.	1 <i>changer</i> . 2 <i>maniere de vivre</i> .
we examined 1 their features 2.	1 <i>examiner</i> . 2 <i>trait</i> , n. m.
Adam eat 1 the forbidden 3 fruit 2.	1 <i>manger</i> . 2 <i>fruit</i> , n. m. 3 <i>defendu</i> , p. p.
ye sung 1 the praises 2 of the Lord 3.	1 <i>chanier</i> . 2 <i>louange</i> , n. f. 3 <i>seigneur</i> .
David reigned 1 forty seven 2 years 3.	1 <i>regner</i> . 2 <i>quarante sept</i> , adj. und. 3 <i>an</i> , n. m.
I shall praise 1 the Almighty 2.	1 <i>louer</i> . 2 <i>tout puissant</i> , n. m.
God will judge 1 the living 2 and the dead 3.	1 <i>juger</i> . 2 <i>vivant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 3 <i>mort</i> , n. m.
let him meditate 1 the precepts 2 of the gospel 3.	1 <i>mediter</i> . 2 <i>precepte</i> , n. m. 3 <i>evangile</i> , n. m.
let us hear 1 the voice 2 of truth 3.	1 <i>écouter</i> . 2 <i>voix</i> , n. f. 3 <i>vérité</i> , n. f.

*Irregularities of the first Conjugation.*

This Conjugation has only two irregular Verbs, viz. *aller*, to go; and *puer*, to stink. This last is only irregular in the present indicative, where we say, *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*, instead of *je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*. As to the first, it is thus conjugated.

*Aller*,

*Aller*, to go. *Allant*, going. *Allé*, gone.

*Je vais*, or *je vas*, I go; *tu vas*, *il va*, *nous allons*, *vous allez*, *ils vont*.

*J'allois*, I did go. *J'allai*, I went. *J'irai*, I shall go. *J'irois*, I should go.

*Va*, go; *qu'il aille*, *allons*, *allez*, *qu'ils aillent*.

*Que j'aie*, that I may go.

*Que j'aille*, that I might go.

What parts of the foregoing Verb I have designedly omitted may easily be formed by any one who can conjugate the Verb *porter*.

*Exercises upon some of the Irregularities of the Verb Aller.*

Thou shalt go, we shall go, they shall go, he should go, ye would go, they should go, that he may go, that ye may go, that they may go.

### Second Conjugation.

Inf. *Finir*, to finish.

Part. act. *Finissant*, finishing.

Part. pas. *Finis*, finished.

#### Indicative.

Pres. *Je finis*, I finish; *tu finis*, *il finit*, *nous finissons*, *vous finissez*, *ils finissent*.

Imp. *Je finissois*, I did finish; *tu finissois*, *il finissoit*, *nous finissions*, *vous finissiez*, *ils finissaient*.

Pret. *Je finis*, I finished; *tu finis*, *il finit*, *nous finîmes*, *vous finîtes*, *ils finirent*.

Fut. *Je finirai*, I shall finish; *tu finiras*, *il finira*, *nous finirons*, *vous finirez*, *ils finiront*.

Cond. *Je finirois*, I should finish; *tu finirois*, *il finiroit*, *nous finirions*, *vous finiriez*, *ils finiraient*.

#### Imperative.

Pres. *Finis*, finish; *qu'il finisse*, *finissons*, *finissez*, *qu'ils finissent*.

#### Conjunctive.

Pres. *Que je finisse*, that I may finish; *que tu finisses*, *qu'il finisse*, *que nous finissions*, *que vous finissiez*, *qu'ils finissent*.

Pret. *Que je finisse*, that I might finish; *que tu finisses*, *qu'il finit*, *que nous finissions*, *que vous finissiez*, *qu'il finissent*.

The

The Exercises, which I might give upon this, and the four following Conjugations, being grounded upon the same principles with those I have given upon the first, I shall only exercise the learner upon some of the irregularities which are found in those conjugations; and since, as I have already observed, the five last persons of a tense are, even in the irregular Verbs, regularly derived from the first, it will be sufficient, in the four last Conjugations, to set down the first persons of such of the tenses as are not excepted from the general rule.

*Irregularities of this Conjugation.*

The irregular Verbs of this Conjugation are,

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Bouillir</i> , to boil.              | 10. <i>couvrir</i> , to cover.            |
| 2. <i>sortir</i> , to go out, to come out. | 11. <i>cueillir</i> , to gather.          |
| 3. <i>dormir</i> , to sleep.               | 12. <i>tenir</i> , to hold, to keep.      |
| 4. <i>mentir</i> , to lie.                 | 13. <i>venir</i> , to come.               |
| 5. <i>sentir</i> , to feel.                | 14. <i>courir</i> , to run.               |
| 6. <i>mourir</i> , to die.                 | 15. <i>vêtir</i> , to cloath.             |
| 7. <i>offrir</i> , to offer.               | 16. <i>acquérir</i> , to acquire, to get. |
| 8. <i>souffrir</i> , to suffer.            | 17. <i>fuir</i> , to run away, to avoid.  |
| 9. <i>ouvrir</i> , to open.                |   |

and their compounds and derivatives, the irregular parts of which are thus conjugated:

1. *Bouillir*, to boil.

*Bouillant*, boiling. *Je bous*, I boil; *tu bous*, *il bout*, *nous bouillons*, *vous bouillez*, *ils bouillent*. *Je bouillois*, I did boil. *Que je bouille*, that I may boil.

2. *Sortir*, to go out, to come out.

*Sortant*, going out. *Je sors*, I go out; *tu sors*, *il sort*, *nous sortons*, *vous sortez*, *ils sortent*. *Je sortis*, I did go out. *Que je sorte*, that I may go out.

3. *Dormir*, to sleep.

*Dormant*, sleeping. *Je dors*, I sleep; *tu dors*, *il dort*, *nous dormons*, *vous dormez*, *ils dorment*. *Je dormois*, I did sleep. *Que je dorme*, that I may sleep.

4. *Mentir*, to lie.

*Mentant*, lying. *Je mens*, I lie; *tu mens*, *il ment*, *nous mentons*,



*mens, vous mentez, ils mentent. Je mentois, I did lie. Que je mente, that I may lie.*

5. *Sentir*, to feel.

*Sentant, feeling. Je sens, I feel; tu sens, il sent, nous sentons, vous sentez, ils sentent. Je sentois, I did feel. Que je sente, that I may feel.*

6. *Mourir*, to die.

*Mourant, dying. Mort, dead. Je meurs, I die; tu meurs, il meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils meurent. Je mourais, I did die. Je mourrai, I shall die. Je mourrois, I should die. Que je meure, that I may die.*

7. *Offrir*, to offer.

*Offrant, offering. Offert, offered. J'offre, I offer. Que j'offre, that I may offer.*

8. *Souffrir*, to suffer.

*Souffrant, suffering. Souffert, suffered. Je souffre, I suffer. Que je souffre, that I may suffer.*

9. *Ouvrir*, to open.

*Ouvrant, opening. Ouvert, opened. J'ouvre, I open. Que j'ouvre, that I may open.*

10. *Couvrir*, to cover.

*Couvrant, covering. Couvert, covered. Je couvre, I cover. Que je couvre, that I may cover.*

11. *Cueillir*, to gather.

*Cueillant, gathering. Je cueille, I gather. Que je cueille, that I may gather.*

12. *Tenir*, to hold.

*Tenant, holding. Tenu, held. Je tiens, I hold; tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent. Je tenais, I did hold. Je tins, I held. Je tiendrai, I shall hold. Je tiendrois, I should hold. Que je tiens, that I may hold. Que je tinsse, that I might hold.*

13. *Venir*, to come.

*Venant, coming. Venu, come. Je viens, I come, tu viens, il*

*il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent. Je venois, I did come. Je vins, I came. Je viendrai, I shall come. Je viendrois, I should come. Que je vienne, that I may come. Que je vinssse, that I might come.*

14. *Courir, to run.*

*Courant, running. Couru, run. Je cours, I run; tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent. Je courrois, I did run. Je courus, I ran. Je courrai, I shall run. Je courrois, I should run. Que je coure, that I may run. Que je courusse, that I might run.*

15. *Vêtir, to cloath.*

*Vêtant, cloathing. Vêtu, cloathed. Je vêts, I cloath. Je vêtis, I cloathed.*

16. *Acquérir, to acquire.*

*Acquérant, acquiring. Acquis, acquired. J'acquiers, I acquire; tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquierent. J'acquérois, I did acquire. J'acquis, I acquired. J'acquerrai, I shall acquire. J'acquerois, I should acquire. Que j'acquiere, that I may acquire. Que j'acquisse, that I might acquire.*

17. *Fuir, to run away.*

*Fuyant, running away. Nous fuyons, we run away, vous fuyez, ils fuyent. Je fuyois, I did run away. Que je fuye, that I may run away.*

*Exercises upon the foregoing Irregularities.*

The pot 1 boils very fast.	1 Pot, n. m. 2 à gros bouillons.
I go out, come out with 1 me.	1 avec. 2 moi, pron. nom.
he sleeps like 1 a top 2.	1 comme. 2 sabot, n. m.
punish 1 your children 2, when 3 they lie.	1 punir, v. 2. 2 enfant, plur. ans, n. m. 3 quand.
she feels great 1 pains 2.	1 grand, adj. 2 douleur, n. f.
my uncle 1 is dead.	1 oncle, n. m.
I die with grief 1.	1 de douleur.

he will die to morrow 1.	1 <i>demain</i> .
I offer my services 1 to your friend 2.	1 <i>service</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.
he suffers the extravagant 1 expences 2 of his son 3.	1 <i>fou</i> , <i>folle</i> , adj. 2 <i>dépense</i> , n. f. 3 <i>fil</i> , n. m.
Christ 1 has suffered the death 2 of the cross 3.	1 <i>Jésus Christ</i> , n. m. 2 <i>mort</i> , n. f. 3 <i>croix</i> , n. f.
the way 1 is open.	1 <i>chemin</i> , n. m.
she opens the door 1 of her chamber 2.	1 <i>porte</i> , n. f. 2 <i>chambre</i> , n. f.
darkness 1 covers the face 2 of the earth 3.	1 <i>les ténèbres</i> , n. f. plur. 2 <i>face</i> , n. f. 3 <i>terre</i> , n. f.
I gather beautiful 1 flowers 2.	1 <i>beau</i> , <i>belle</i> , adj. 2 <i>fleur</i> , n. f.
I hold the first rank 1.	1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>rang</i> , n. m.
I shall keep my word 1.	1 <i>parole</i> , n. f.
she shall come immediately 1.	1 <i>sur le champ</i> .
he has got a great 1 name 2.	1 <i>grand</i> , adj. 2 <i>réputation</i> , n. f.
they avoid the company 1 of the wicked 2.	1 <i>compagnie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>méchant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m.

### Third Conjugation.

<i>Recevoir</i> , to receive.	<i>je recevrois</i> , I should receive.
<i>recevant</i> , receiving.	<i>que je reçoive</i> , that I may receive ;
<i>reçu</i> , received.	<i>que tu reçoives</i> , qu'il reçoive, <i>que nous recevions</i> , <i>que vous receviez</i> , qu'ils reçoivent.
<i>je reçois</i> , I receive ; <i>tu reçois</i> , il reçoit, <i>nous recevons</i> , <i>vous recevez</i> , <i>ils reçoivent</i> .	
<i>je recevois</i> , I did receive.	<i>que je reçusse</i> , that I might receive.
<i>je reçus</i> , I received.	
<i>je recevrai</i> , I shall receive.	

### Irregularities of this Conjugation.

The irregular verbs of this conjugation are,

<i>Cboir</i> , to fall.	<i>vouloir</i> , to be willing.
<i>déchoir</i> , to decay.	<i>pouvoir</i> , to be able.
<i>échoir</i> , to expire.	<i>mouvoir</i> , to move.
<i>voir</i> , to see.	<i>savoir</i> , to know.
<i>s'asseoir</i> , to sit down.	<i>ravoir</i> , to get again.
<i>valoir</i> , to be worth.	<i>pleuvoir</i> , to rain.

*Ravoir* is used only in the infinitive. *Cboir*, *déchoir*, and *échoir* want several tenses, and have in their participle passive

passive *chu*, fallen; *déchu*, decayed; *échu*, expired; and in the preterite of the indicative, *je chus*, I fell; *je déchus*, I decayed; *j'échus*, I expired. The other foregoing verbs are thus conjugated.

1. *Voir*, to see.

*Voir*, to see.

*voyant*, seeing.

*vu*, seen.

*je vois*, I see; *tu vois*, *il voit*,  
*nous voyons*, *vous voyez*, *ils*  
*voient*.

*je voyois*, I did see.

*je vis*, I saw.

*je verrai*, I shall see.

*je verrois*, I should see.

*que je voie*, that I may see.

*que je visse*, that I might see.

2. *S'asseoir*, to sit down.

*S'asseoir*, to sit down.

*s'asseoyant*, sitting down.

*je m'asseois*, I sit down, *tu*  
*t'asseois*, *il s'asseoit*, *nous*  
*nous asseoyons*, *vous vous*  
*asseoyez*, *ils s'asseoyent*.

*je m'asseoyois*, I did sit down.

*je m'assis*, I sat down.

*je m'asseoirai*, I shall sit  
down.

*je m'asseoirois*, I should sit  
down.

*que je m'asseoye*, that I may  
sit down.

*que je m'assisse*, that I might  
sit down.

This Verb being reflected, must not be learned before one is acquainted with the reflected Verbs. It is otherwise conjugated by some.

3. *Valoir*, to be worth.

*Valoir*, to be worth.

*valant*, being worth.

*valu*, been worth.

*je vauds*, I am worth; *tu vauds*,  
*il vaut*, *nous valons*, *vous*  
*valez*, *ils valent*.

*je valois*, I was worth.

*je valus*, I was worth.

*je vaudrai*, I shall be worth.

*je vaudrois*, I should be worth.

*je vaille*, I may be worth.

*je valusse*, I might be worth.

4. *Vouloir*, to be willing.

*Vouloir*, to be willing.

*voulant*, being willing.

*voulu*, been willing.

*je veux*, I am willing; *tu veux*,  
*il veut*, *nous voulons*, *vous*  
*woulez*, *ils veulent*.

*je voulois*, I was willing.

*je voulus*, I was willing.

*je voudrai*, I shall be willing.

*je voudrois*, I should be willing.

*je veuille*, I may be willing.

*ie voulusse*, I might be willing.

5. *Pouvoir*,



5. *Pouvoir*, to be able.

<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able.	<i>je pouvois</i> , I was able.
<i>pouvant</i> , being able.	<i>je pus</i> , I was able.
<i>pu</i> , been able.	<i>je pourrai</i> , I shall be able.
<i>je peux</i> , or <i>je puis</i> , I am able;	<i>je pourrais</i> , I should be able.
<i>tu peux</i> , <i>il peut</i> , <i>nous pouvons</i> ,	<i>je puisse</i> , I may be able.
<i>vous pouvez</i> , <i>ils peuvent</i> .	<i>je pusse</i> , I might be able.

6. *Mouvoir*, to move.

<i>Mouvoir</i> , to move.	<i>je meus</i> , I move; <i>tu meus</i> , <i>il</i>
<i>mouvant</i> , moving.	<i>ment</i> , <i>nous mouvons</i> , <i>vous</i>
<i>mû</i> , moved.	<i>mouvez</i> , <i>ils meuvent</i> .
	<i>je mouvois</i> , I did move.

7. *Savoir*, to know.

<i>Savoir</i> , to know.	<i>je sa-vois</i> , I did know.
<i>sachant</i> , knowing.	<i>je sus</i> , I knew.
<i>sû</i> , known.	<i>je saurai</i> , I shall know.
<i>je sais</i> , I know; <i>tu sais</i> , <i>il</i>	<i>je saurois</i> , I should know.
<i>sait</i> , <i>nous savons</i> , <i>vous</i>	<i>je sache</i> , I may know.
<i>savez</i> , <i>ils savent</i> .	<i>je fusse</i> , I might know.

8. *Pleuvoir*, to rain, a verb impersonal.

<i>Pleuvoir</i> , to rain.	<i>il pleuvra</i> , it will rain.
<i>il pleut</i> , it rains.	<i>il pleuvrait</i> , it would rain.
<i>il pleuvoit</i> , it did rain.	<i>il pleuve</i> , it may rain.
<i>il plut</i> , it rained.	<i>il plût</i> , it might rain.

*Prévaloir*, to prevail; and *émouvoir*, to stir up, are conjugated like their single verbs.

## Fourth Conjugation.

The verbs of this conjugation must be formed after the following patterns.

The vowel A in the ending.

<i>Battre</i> , to beat.	<i>je bats</i> , I beat; <i>tu bas</i> , <i>il bat</i> ,
<i>battant</i> , beating.	<i>nous battons</i> , <i>vous battez</i> ,
<i>battu</i> , beaten.	<i>ils battent</i> .

*je battois*, I did beat.  
*je battis*, I beat.  
*je battrai*, I shall beat.

*je battrois*, I should beat.  
*je batte*, I may beat.  
*je battisse*, I might beat.

E in the ending.

*Mettre*, to put.  
*mettant*, putting.  
*mis*, put.  
*je mets*, I put; *tu mets*, il  
*met*, nous *mettons*, vous  
*mettez*, ils *mettent*.

*je mettois*, I did put.  
*je mis*, I put.  
*je mettrai*, I shall put.  
*je mettrois*, I should put.  
*je mette*, I may put.  
*je misse*, I might put.

I in the ending.

*Construire*, to build.  
*construisant*, building.  
*construit*, built.  
*je construis*, I build; *tu construis*, il *construit*, nous *construisons*, vous *construisez*, ils *construisent*.

*je construisois*, I did build.  
*je construisis*, I built.  
*je construirai*, I shall build.  
*je construirais*, I should build.  
*je construisse*, I may build.  
*je construisisse*, I might build.

O in the ending.

*Mordre*, to bite.  
*mordant*, biting.  
*mordu*, bit.  
*je mords*, I bite; *tu mords*, il *mord*, nous *mordons*, vous *mordez*, ils *mordent*.

*je mordais*, I did bite.  
*je mordis*, I bit.  
*je mordrai*, I shall bite.  
*je mordrais*, I should bite.  
*je morde*, I may bite.  
*je mordisse*, I might bite.

U in the ending.

*Conclure*, to conclude.  
*concluant*, concluding.  
*conclu*, concluded.  
*je conclus*, I conclude; *tu conclus*, il *conclut*, nous *concluons*, vous *concluez*, ils *concluent*.

*je conclusois*, I did conclude.  
*je conclus*, I concluded.  
*je conclurai*, I shall conclude.  
*je conclurais*, I should conclude.  
*je conclue*, I may conclude.  
*je conclusse*, I might conclude.

Irregularities of this Conjugation.

The irregular verbs of this conjugation are

*Perdre*, to lose.

*Suivre*, to follow.

*viure*,

*vivre*, to live.  
*lire*, to read.  
*clorre*, to shut.

*éclore*, to come to light.  
*dire*, to say.  
*écrire*, to write.

1st, *Perdre*, *suiivre*, *vivre*, and *lire*, have in their participle passive, *perdu*, *suiivi*, *vécu*, and *lu*.

2dly, *Clorre* and *éclore* are not used in their single tenses, and have in their participle passive *clos* and *éclos*.

3dly, *Dire* has *vous dites*, in the second person plural of the present indicative, and *je dis*, I told, *que je disse*,—that I might tell, in the two preterites.

4thly, *Ecrire* is thus conjugated,

<i>Ecrire</i> , to write.	<i>j'écrivois</i> , I did write.
<i>écrivait</i> , writing.	<i>j'écrivais</i> , I writ.
<i>écrivit</i> , wrote.	<i>j'écrirai</i> , I shall write.
<i>j'écris</i> , I write; <i>tu écris</i> , il	<i>j'écrirais</i> , I should write.
<i>écrivit</i> , <i>nous écrivons</i> , <i>vous</i>	<i>j'écrirais</i> , I may write.
<i>écriviez</i> , <i>ils écrivent</i> .	<i>j'écrivisse</i> , I might write.

### Fifth Conjugation.

The verbs of this conjugation must be formed after the following examples.

*The diphthong ai in the ending.*

<i>Pleire</i> , to please.	<i>je plaisais</i> , I did please.
<i>plaisant</i> , pleasing.	<i>je plus</i> , I pleased.
<i>plu</i> , pleased.	<i>je plairai</i> , I shall please.
<i>je plais</i> , I please; <i>tu plais</i> , il	<i>je plairais</i> , I should please.
<i>plait</i> , <i>nous plaisons</i> , <i>vous</i>	<i>je plaise</i> , I may please.
<i>plaisez</i> , <i>ils plaisent</i> .	<i>je plusse</i> , I might please.

<i>Faire</i> , to do.	<i>je faisais</i> , I did do.
<i>faisant</i> , doing.	<i>je fis</i> , I did.
<i>fait</i> , done.	<i>je ferai</i> , I shall do.
<i>je fais</i> , I do; <i>tu fais</i> , il <i>fait</i> ,	<i>je ferois</i> , I should do.
<i>nous faisons</i> , <i>vous faites</i> , <i>ils</i>	<i>je fasse</i> , I may do.
<i>sont</i> .	<i>je fisse</i> , I might do.

3.

<i>Naître</i> , to be born.	<i>je naissois</i> , I was born.
<i>naissant</i> , being born.	<i>je, naquis</i> , I was born.
<i>né</i> , born.	<i>je naîtrai</i> , I shall be born.
<i>je nais</i> , I am born; <i>tu nais</i> ,	<i>je naîtrois</i> , I should be born.
<i>il naît</i> ; <i>nous naissons</i> , <i>vous</i>	<i>je naîsse</i> , I may be born.
<i>naîssiez</i> , <i>ils naissent</i> .	<i>je naquisse</i> , I might be born.

The diphthong *oi* in the ending.

1.

<i>Boire</i> , to drink.	<i>je buvois</i> , I did drink.
<i>buvant</i> , drinking.	<i>je bus</i> , I drank.
<i>bu</i> , drunk.	<i>je boirai</i> , I shall drink.
<i>je bois</i> , I drink; <i>tu bois</i> , <i>il</i>	<i>je boirois</i> , I should drink.
<i>boit</i> ; <i>nous buvons</i> , <i>vous bu-</i>	<i>je boive</i> , I may drink.
<i>vez</i> , <i>ils boivent</i> .	<i>je busse</i> , I might drink.

2.

<i>Croire</i> , to believe.	<i>je croyois</i> , I did believe.
<i>croyant</i> , believing.	<i>je crus</i> , I believed.
<i>cru</i> , believed.	<i>je croirai</i> , I shall believe.
<i>je crois</i> , I believe; <i>tu crois</i> , <i>il</i>	<i>je croirois</i> , I should believe.
<i>croit</i> ; <i>nous croyons</i> , <i>vous</i>	<i>je croye</i> , I may believe.
<i>croyez</i> , <i>ils croient</i> .	<i>je crusse</i> , I might believe.

3.

<i>Connoître</i> , to know.	<i>je connoissois</i> , I did know.
<i>connoissant</i> , knowing.	<i>je connus</i> , I knew.
<i>connu</i> , known.	<i>je connoîtrai</i> , I shall know.
<i>je connois</i> , I know; <i>tu connois</i> ,	<i>je connoîtrois</i> , I should know.
<i>il connoît</i> ; <i>nous connoissons</i> ,	<i>je connoisse</i> , I may know.
<i>vous connoissez</i> , <i>ils connoissent</i> .	<i>je connusse</i> , I might know.

The diphthong *ou* in the ending.

1.

<i>Coudre</i> , to sew.	<i>je couds</i> , I sew; <i>tu couds</i> , <i>il</i>
<i>cousant</i> , sewing.	<i>coud</i> ; <i>nous cousons</i> , <i>vous</i>
<i>cousu</i> , sewed.	<i>cousez</i> , <i>ils cousent</i> .

D

je



*je cousois*, I did sew.

*je cousus*, I sewed.

*je coudrai*, I shall sew.

*je coudrois*, I should sew.

*je couse*, I may sew.

*je coususse*, I might sew.

*Moudre*, to grind.

*moulant*, grinding.

*moulu*, ground.

*j'mouls*, I grind, *tu mouds*,

*il moud* : *nous moulons*, *vous*

*moulez*, *ils moulent*.

*je moulois*, I did grind.

*je moulus*, I ground.

*je moudrai*, I shall grind.

*je moudrois*, I should grind.

*je moule*, I may grind.

*je moulusse*, I might grind.

### Sixth conjugation.

This conjugation is divided into two branches; the first of which is made up of such verbs as take a vowel before the letter *n* in their ending, as *défendre*, to defend; and the other comprehends such verbs as have a diphthong before the same letter *n*, as *craindre*, to fear.

#### First branch.

*Défendre*, to forbid.

*défendant*, forbidding.

*défendu*, forbidden.

*je défens*, I forbid; *tu défens*,

*il défend* : *nous défendons*,

*vous défendez*, *ils défendent*.

*je défendais*, I did forbid.

*je défendis*, I forbade.

*je défendrai*, I shall forbid.

*je défendrais*, I should forbid.

*je défende*, I may forbid.

*je défendisse*, I might forbid.

*Répondre*, to answer.

*répondant*, answering.

*répondu*, answered.

*je répons*, I answer; *tu répons*,

*il répond*, *nous répondons*,

*vous répondez*, *ils répondent*.

*je répondais*, I did answer.

*je répondis*, I answered.

*je répondrai*, I shall answer.

*je répondrais*, I should answer.

*je réponde*, I may answer.

*je répondisse*, I might answer.

#### Irregularities of this branch.

The Verb *prendre*, to take, and its compounds, are thus conjugated.

I

*Prendre*,

<i>Prendre</i> , to take.	<i>je prenois</i> , I did take.
<i>prenant</i> , taking.	<i>je pris</i> , I took.
<i>pris</i> , taken.	<i>je prendrai</i> , I shall take.
<i>je prens</i> , I take; <i>tu prens</i> ; <i>il prend</i> ; <i>nous prenons</i> , <i>vous prenez</i> , <i>ils prennent</i> .	<i>je prendrais</i> , I should take.
	<i>je prenne</i> , I may take.
	<i>je prisse</i> , I might take.

Second Branch.

1.

<i>Craindre</i> , to fear.	<i>je craignois</i> , I did fear.
<i>craignant</i> , fearing.	<i>je craignis</i> , I feared.
<i>craint</i> , feared.	<i>je craindrai</i> , I shall fear.
<i>je crains</i> , I fear; <i>tu crains</i> ; <i>il craint</i> ; <i>nous craignons</i> , <i>vous craignez</i> , <i>ils craignent</i> .	<i>je craindrais</i> , I should fear.
	<i>je craigne</i> , I may fear.
	<i>je craignisse</i> , I might fear.

2.

<i>Peindre</i> , to paint.	<i>je peignois</i> , I did paint.
<i>peignant</i> , painting.	<i>je peignis</i> , I painted.
<i>peint</i> , painted.	<i>je peindrai</i> , I shall paint.
<i>je peins</i> , I paint; <i>tu peins</i> ; <i>il peint</i> ; <i>nous peignons</i> , <i>vous peignez</i> , <i>ils peignent</i> .	<i>je peindrais</i> , I should paint.
	<i>je peigne</i> , I may paint.
	<i>je peignisse</i> , I might paint.

3.

<i>Joindre</i> , to join.	<i>je joignois</i> , I did join.
<i>joignant</i> , joining.	<i>je joignis</i> , I joined.
<i>joint</i> , joined.	<i>je joindrai</i> , I shall join.
<i>je joins</i> , I join; <i>tu joins</i> ; <i>il joint</i> ; <i>nous joignons</i> , <i>vous joignez</i> , <i>ils joignent</i> .	<i>je joindrais</i> , I should join.
	<i>je joigne</i> , I may join.
	<i>je joignisse</i> , I might join.

Exercises upon the Irregularities of the four last conjugations.

They have lost their credit 2	<i>Ils sont déçus de 2 crédit</i> , n. m.
the time 1 of payment 2 is	<i>1 sems</i> , n. m. 2 <i>payment</i> ,
expired 3.	n. m 3. <i>échu</i> , p. p.
I see men 1, women 2, and	<i>1 homme</i> , n. m. 2 <i>femme</i> , n. f.
children 3.	3 <i>enfant</i> , plur. m. m.
you will see wonderful 1	<i>1 merveilleux</i> , <i>enfo</i> , adj. 2 <i>chose</i> ,
things 2.	n. f.

this sword 1 is worth a hundred 2 guineas 3.	1 <i>épée</i> , n. f. 2 <i>cent</i> , adj. und. 3 <i>guinée</i> , n. f.
he is willing to pay 1 his debts 2.	1 <i>payer</i> , v. 1. <i>dette</i> , n. f.
I do 1 what I can 2.	1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>pouvoir</i> , v. 3.
I know my lesson 1 by heart 2.	1 <i>leçon</i> , n. f. 2 <i>par cœur</i> .
it rains very hard 1.	1 <i>à verse</i> .
he has lost his money 1 and his reputation 2.	1 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 2 <i>réputation</i> , n. f.
he has followed the army 1.	1 <i>armée</i> , n. f.
I have read the works 1 of doctor 2 Swift.	1 <i>œuvre</i> , n. f. 2 <i>docteur</i> , n. m.
I write many 1 pages 2 every day 3.	1 <i>plusieurs</i> , adj. plur. 2 <i>page</i> , n. f. 3 <i>par jour</i> .
I have wrote all 1 my letters 2.	1 <i>tout</i> , adj. 2 <i>lettre</i> , n. f.
I approve 1 what you say.	1 <i>approuver</i> , v. 1.
I drink 1 tea 2 every morning 3.	1 <i>prendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>thé</i> , n. m. 3 <i>tous les matins</i> .

### Of Verbs Neuter.

The Verbs neuter and reflected belong to the above conjugations, as well as the active.

The reflected Verbs are distinguished from the verbs active, by their being joined to, and conjugated with the conjunctive pronouns *me*, *te*, &c.

The best way to know whether a Verb is active or neuter, is to try whether *quelqu'un*, somebody; or *quelque chose*, something, may be placed after it. If one of these words may be placed after a Verb, it is a verb active; if not, it is a verb neuter. For instance, *donner*, to give, is a verb active, because I may say, *donner quelque chose*; and *dormir*, to sleep, is a verb neuter, because I cannot say, *dormir quelqu'un* or *quelque chose*.

The compounds of most Verbs neuter, are formed with the verb *avoir*; but the following, viz.

*Accourir*, to run to.

*aller*, to go.

*choir*, to fall.

*décéder*, to die.

*mourir*, to die.

*naître*, to be born.

*partir*, to set out.

*sortir*,

*sortir*, to go out. *arriver*, to arrive ;  
*tomber*, to fall ; *venir*, to come ;

and the compounds, of these Verbs, are conjugated with the Verb *être*, as *je suis accouru*, I have run to, &c.

*Croître*, to grow, &c. *monter*, to come up ;  
*descendre*, to come down ;

may be conjugated with both the auxiliary, as *je suis cru*, *j'ai cru*, I am grown.

A Verb impersonal is only a verb active conjugated in the third person singular only, as *il éclaire*, it lightens.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Verbs.*

He is fallen, they are dead, he is born, they are set out,  
 she is fallen, you are arrived, we are come, he is grown, she  
 is come down, they are come up.

*Remarks upon the undeclined parts of Speech.*

I have hitherto avoided, as much as I could, to introduce into my Exercises, such of the *French* parts of speech as I had not explained ; but as on the one hand, the learner, by this time, may be supposed to have made some improvements, and on the other, it is very difficult to treat of our pronouns and verbs, without meddling with our adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions ; I must here say of these last parts of speech, what is necessary for the understanding of the following Exercises.

An Adverb is a word denoting some circumstances of a verb, an adjective, or a participle, as

*Marcher lentement.* to walk slowly.  
*un très long voyage.* a very long journey.  
*un habit bien fait.* a well made suit of cloaths,

*French* Adverbs are placed in speech, 1st, before adjectives, as *toujours mauvais*, always bad.

2dly, After the single parts of a verb, as *il lit souvent*, he reads often.



3dly, In the compounds it is commonly placed between the auxiliary verb and participle, as *j'ai bien mangé*, I have eat well.

Two adverbs meet sometimes together in a sentence, as *vous allez bien vite*, you go very fast.

A Preposition is a word placed before other words, to shew the relation one thing has with another; as, when I say, *je suis dans ma chambre*, I am in my room, *dans* shews a kind of relation between me and my room.

A Conjunction is a word serving to join the parts of a sentence together, as when I say, *mes freres, mes sœurs, & tous mes parents m'ont abandonné*, my brothers, sisters, and all my relations, have forsaken me, *and* is a Conjunction, because it joins the parts of the sentence together.

To enable the learners to make the remaining part of my Exercises upon the Pronouns and Verbs, I shall give them here some Exercises upon the undeclined parts of speech.

### Exercises upon the undeclined parts of Speech.

#### Adverbs.

A good 1 servant 2 serves 3 1 *Bon*, adj. 2 *domestique*,  
his master 5 faithfully 4 1 *m. m.* 3 *servir*, v. 2. 4 *fidèle-*  
*ment*, adv. 5 *maître*, n. m.  
The rain 1 sometimes 3 1 *pluie*, n. f. 2 *gâter*, v. 2.  
spoils 2 the corn 4 3 *quelquefois*, adv. 4 *bled*,  
n. m.  
we often 2 forget 1 the 1 *oublier*, 2 *souvent*, adv. v.  
laws 3 of God 4 1 3 *loi*, plur. *loix*, n. f.  
4 *Dieu*, n. m.  
the favours 1 of the wicked 2 1 *faveur*, n. f. 2 *méchant*,  
are often hurtful 3 plur. *ans*, n. m. 3 *nuisible*,  
adj.  
good books 1 are very 2 1 *livre*, n. m. 2 *très*, adv.  
useful 3 to mankind 4 3 *utile*, adj. 4 *au genre hu-*  
*main*.  
he has served 1 his prince 3 1 *servir*, v. 2. 2 *bien*, adv.  
well 2. 3 *prince*, n. m.

#### Prepositions.

Politeness 1 reigns 2 in 3 1 *Politesse*, n. f. *regner*, v. 1.  
France 4 3 *en*, prep. 4 *France*, n. f.

we live 1 under 2 a good 1 *vivre*, v. 4. 2 *sous*, prep.  
 prince 3. 3 *prince*, n. m.  
 we are between 1 fear 2 and 1 *entre*, prep. 2 *crainte*, n. f.  
 hope 3. 3 *espérance*, n. f.  
 the Christian 1 lives accord- 1 *Chrétien*, n. m. 2 *suiuant*,  
 ing to 2 the maxims 3 of prep. 3 *maxime*, n. f. 4 *é-*  
 the gospel 4. *wangile*, n. m.

*Conjunctions.*

He has neither 1 friends 2 1 *ni*, conj. 2 *ami*, n. m. 3 *ni*,  
 nor 3 foes 4. conj. 4 *ennemi*, n. m.  
 they will fight 1, provided 2 1 *se battre*, v. 4. 2 *pourvu*,  
 they are paid 3. conj. 3 *qu'on les paye*.  
 the lady 1 speaks 2 much 3, 1 *madame*, n. f. 2 *parler*, v. 1.  
 but 4 she speaks well. 3 *beaucoup*, adv. 4 *mais*,  
 conj.

*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal,  
 conjugated with the negative particles ne, pas or  
 point.*

**R U L E I.**

In the single parts of these Verbs *ne* must be placed im-  
 mediately before, and *pas* or *point* after the Verb, as

Inf. *N'avoir pas*, or *n'avoir point*, not to have.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas*, not having.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je n'ai pas*, I have not; *tu n'as pas*, *il n'a pas*; *nous*  
*n'avons pas*, *vous n'avez pas*, *ils n'ont pas*.

Imp. *Je n'avois pas*, I had not; and so on to the end of  
 the single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunc-  
 tive of the Verb *avoir*.

Inf. *N'être pas*, not to be.

*N'étant pas*, not being.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je ne suis pas*, I am not; and so on to the end of the  
 single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive  
 of this Verb.

Part. act. *Ne portant pas*, not carrying.

## Indicative.

*Je ne porte pas*, I don't carry; and so on to the end of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of this Verb.

Observe, that in the infinitive of the Verbs active, neuter, and impersonal, we place *ne* and *pas*, or *point* before the Verb, as *ne pas porter*, not to carry.

## Exercises upon the foregoing rule.

- You have not the fear 1 of 1 *crainte*, n. f. 2 *Dieu*, n. m.  
 God 2 before 3 your 3 *devant*, conj. 4 *les yeux*,  
 eyes 4.  
 a good 1 Christian 2 is not 1 *bon*, adj. 2 *Chrétien*, n. m.  
 revengeful 3. 3 *vindicatif*, adj.  
 the eclipse 1 of the sun 2 1 *éclipse*, n. f. 2 *soleil*, n. m.  
 will not be visible 3. 3 *visible*, adj.  
 we shall not be your ene- 1 *ennemi*, n. m.  
 mies 1.  
 be not unjust 1 towards 2 1 *injuste*, adj. 2 *envers*, prep.  
 your neighbour 3. 3 *prochain*, n. m.  
 the sun does not shine 1 1 *luire*, v. 4. 2 *à présent*  
 now 2.  
 we did not lay 1 at Paris 2. 1 *conquer*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep.  
 the ungodly 1 shall not in- 1 *malin*, n. m. 2 *hériter*,  
 herit 2 the kingdom 3 of v. 1. 3 *royaume*, n. m.  
 heaven 4. 4 *des cieux*.  
 you shall not steal 1. 1 *dérober*, v. 1.  
 you shall not commit 1 a- 1 *commettre*, v. 4. 2 *adultère*,  
 dultery 2. n. m.  
 do not despise 1 the poor 2. 1 *mépriser*, v. 1. 2 *pauvre*, n. m.  
 give 1 not what 2 is holy 3. 1 *donner*, v. 1. 2 *ce qui*, 3 *saint*,  
 to the dogs 4. adj. 4 *chien*, n. m.  
 cast 1 not your pearls 2 be- 1 *jeter*, v. 1. 2 *perle*, n. f.  
 fore 3 swine 4. 3 *devant*, prep. 4 *porceau*,  
 plur *eaux*, n. m.

## RULE II.

To form the compounds of the foregoing Verbs, you must place their participles passive after the *pas* or *point* of the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively, as

Inf.

Inf. *N'avoir pas eu*, not to have had.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas eu*, not having had.

*Indicative.*

*Je n'ai pas eu*, I have not had ; *tu n'as pas eu*, *il n'a pas eu* :  
*nous n'avons pas eu*, *vous n'avez pas eu*, *ils n'ont pas eu*.

*Je n'avois pas eu*, I had not had ; and so on to the end of  
the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the  
Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

Inf. *N'avoir pas été*, not to have been.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas été*, not having been.

*Indicative.*

*Je n'ai pas été*, I have not been ; and so on to the end of  
the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the  
Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

Inf. *N'avoir pas porté*, not to have carried.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas porté*, not having carried.

*Indicative.*

*Je n'ai pas porté*, I have not carried ; and so on to the  
end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of  
the Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I had not time 1.

1 *Temps*, n. m.

I have not been at : his house.

1 *chez lui*.

the Jews 1 have not ac-  
knowledged 2 Christ 3 as 4  
the true 5 Messiah 6.

1 *Juif*, n. m. 2 *reconnoître*,  
v. 5. 3 *Jésus Christ*, n. m.  
4 *comme*, prep. 5 *vrai*, adj.  
6 *Messie*, n. m.

you have not done 1 your  
duty 2.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *devoir*, n. m.

you have not called upon 1  
the Lord 2.

1 *invoyer*, v. 1. 2 *Seigneur*,  
n. m.

they have not learned 1 their  
lesson 2.

1 *apprendre*, v. 6. 2 *leçon*,  
n. f.

we have not waited for 1  
your brother 2.

1 *attendre*, v. 6. 2 *frère*,  
n. m.

I have not yet 1 wrote 2 my  
letters 3.

1 *encore*, adv. 2 *écrire*, v. 4.  
3 *lettre*, n. f.



# 58 EXERCISES upon the

I have not seen 1 my son 2. 1 voir, v. 3. 2 fils, n. m.  
I have not yet married 1 my 1 marier, v. 1. 2 fille, n. f.  
daughters 2.

*Of Verbs passive conjugated with the negative particles, ne, pas, or point.*

## RULE I.

To conjugate a Verb passive with the particles *ne, pas, or point*, you must add the participle passive of any verb active, after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être* conjugated negatively, as

Inf. *N'être pas porté*, not to be carried. *N'avoir pas été porté*, not having been carried.

Part. act. *N'étant pas porté*, not being carried.

Comp. *N'ayant pas été porté*, not having been carried.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je ne suis pas porté*, I am not carried; and so on to the end of the Verb.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Bad 1 deeds 2 are not always 3 concealed 4. 1 mauvais, adj. 2 action, n. f. 3 toujours, adv. 4 cacher, v. 1.

virtue 1 is not always rewarded 2. 1 vertu, n. f. 2 récompenser, v. 1.

vice 1 is not always punished 2. 1 vice, n. m. 2 punir, v. 2.

wealth 1, gotten 2 by 3 vanity 4 shall be diminished 5. 1 richesses, n. f. 2 acquérir, v. 2. 3 par, prep. 4 vanité, n. f. 5 diminuer, v. 1.

I have not been conquered 1. 1 vaincre, v. 6.

America 1 has not been discovered 2 by 3 the ancients 4. 1 Amérique, n. f. 2 découvrir, v. 2. 3 par, prep. 4 anciens, n. m.

*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

## RULE II.

In the single tenses the pronouns must be placed after the Verb, as

*Indi-*

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Ai-je ?* have I? *as-tu ? a-t-il ? avons-nous ? avez-vous ? ont-ils ?*

Imp. *Avais-je ?* had I? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Suis-je ?* am I? *es-tu ? est-il ? sommes-nous ? êtes-vous ? sont-ils ?*

Imp. *Etois-je ?* was I? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Porte-je ?* do I carry? *portes-tu ? porte-t-il ? portons-nous ? portez-vous ? portent-ils ?*

*Portois-je ?* did I carry? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Note, that when the Verb ends in *a* or *e*, *z* between two hyphens must be inserted, as above, between the Verb and pronoun, in order to soften the pronunciation.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Have you a dictionary 1 and	1 <i>Dictionnaire</i> , n. m. 2 <i>gram-</i>
a grammar 2?	1 <i>maître</i> , n. f. 2 <i>gram-</i>
have they a fine 1 house 2?	1 <i>beau, belle</i> , adj. 2 <i>maison</i> , n. f.
are we your slaves 1?	1 <i>esclave</i> , n. m.
are you the first 1 of your	1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>classe</i> , n. f.
form 2?	
does he speak 1 the truth 2?	1 <i>dire</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>vérité</i> , n. f.
does she love 1 study 2?	1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>étude</i> , n. f.
do you speak 1 correctly 2?	1 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>correcte-</i>
	<i>ment</i> , adv.
do they wish for 1 peace 2?	1 <i>souhaiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>paix</i> , n. f.
shall we have a holiday 1?	1 <i>congé</i> , n. m.
shall we be in 1 your coun-	1 <i>dans</i> , prep. 2 <i>maison de</i>
try house 2?	<i>campagne</i> , n. f.
shall you go 1 to 2 Vaux-	1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à</i> , prep.
hall?	
would you forgive 1 the re-	1 <i>pardonner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>aux re-</i>
bels 2?	<i>belles</i> .

**RULE II.**

In the compounds of the foregoing Verbs, the participle must

must be placed after the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, as

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Ai-je eu ?* have I had ? *ai-je été ?* have I been ? *ai-je porté ?* have I carried ? and so on to the end of the indicative of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Have you been at 1 Ranelagh ? 1 à, prep.  
 has he spent 1 his money 2 ? 1 *dépenser*, v. 1. 2 *argent*, n. m.  
 has she married 1 her cousin 2 ? 1 *épouser*, v. 1. 2 *cousin*, n. m.  
 have we despised 1 your 2 counsels ? 1 *mépriser*, v. 1. 2 *conseil*, n. m.  
 have you relieved 1 the 2 needy 3 ? 1 *soulager*, v. 1. 2 *indigent*, n. m.  
 have they inherited 1 their 2 father's 3 estate 4 ? 1 *hériter*, v. 1. 2 *bien*, n. m.  
 have they shed 1 innocent 2 blood 3 ? 1 *verser*, v. 1. 2 *innocent*, adj. 3 *sang*, n. m.

R U L E III.

When in asking a question, either affirmatively or negatively, a Noun is the nominative case to the Verb, that Noun must be placed at the head of the phrase, and the pronoun kept, as *le roi vient-il ?* does the king come ?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Has your brother 1 any 2 children 3 ? 1 *Frère*, n. m. 2 *des enfants*, n. pl.  
 has this lady 1 a daughter 2 ? 1 *dame*, n. f. 2 *fille*, n. f.  
 is Mr. Long here 1 ? 1 *ici*, adv.  
 are the English 1 at 2 war 3 with 4 the French 5 ? 1 *Anglois*, n. m. 2 *en*, prep. 3 *guerre*, n. f. 4 *avec*, prep. 5 *François*, n. m.  
 will the duke 1 dine 2 with 3 us to day 4 ? 1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *diner*, v. 1. 3 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 4 *aujourd'hui*, adv.  
 has the princess 1 break- 2 fasted 3 this 4 morning 5 ? 1 *princesse*, n. f. 2 *déjeuner*, v. 1. 3 *ce matin*, adv. 4 *ce matin*, adv. 5 *ce matin*, adv.

have

have your scholars 1 seen 2 1 *écolier*, n. m. 2 *voir*, v. 3.  
your library 3 ? 3 *bibliothèque*, n. f.

*Of verbs passive conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

R U L E.

To conjugate these Verbs, you must add the participles passive of the Verbs active, after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être* conjugated affirmatively, as

*Indicative*

Pref. *Suis-je porté ?* am I carried ? and so on to the end of the single and compounded parts of the indicative of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Are you converted 1 ? 1 *Convertir*, v. 2.  
is poverty 1 despised 2 ? 1 *pauvreté*, n. f. 2 *mépriser*,  
v. 1.  
is this gentleman 1 well 2 1 *moniteur*, n. m. 2 *bien*, adv.  
known 3 ? 3 *connoître*, v. 5.  
is the prisoner 1 acquitted 2 ? 1 *prisonnier*, n. m. 2. *ren-*  
*voyer absous*, v. 1.  
are they rewarded 1 ? 1 *recompenser*, v. 1.  
have you been instructed 1 ? 1 *instruire*, v. 4.  
have the murderers 1 been 1 *meurtrier*, n. m. 2 *punir*,  
punished 2 ? v. 2.

*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal, conjugated with an interrogation negative.*

R U L E I.

In the single tenses you must place the negative *ne* before any one of these Verbs conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, and *pas* or *point* after the pronouns, as

*Indicative.*

Pref. *N'ai-je pas ?* have I not ? *n'as-tu pas ? n'a-t-il pas ?*  
*n'avons-nous pas ? n'avez-vous pas ? n'ont-ils pas ?*

Imp. *N'avois-je pas ?* had I not ? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pref.



Pres. *Ne suis-je pas ?* I am not ? *n'es-tu pas ? n'est-il pas ?*  
*ne sommes-nous pas ? n'êtes-vous pas ? ne sont-ils pas ?*

Imp. *N'étais je pas ?* was I not ? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres. *Ne porte-je pas ?* don't I carry ? *ne portes-tu pas ? ne porte-t-il pas ? ne portons-nous pas ? ne portez-vous pas ? ne portent-ils pas ?*

Imp. *Ne portois-je pas ?* did I not carry ? and so on to the end of the indicative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Have I not your consent ? 1 *Consentement*, n. m.

have you not your dis- 1 *chargé*, n. m.

charge ? 1 *charge*, n. f.

am I not your brother ? 1 *frère*, n. m.

are we not the children of 1 *enfant*, plur. ans, n. m.

God ? 2 *Dieu*, n. m.

does it not rain ? 1 *il*, pron. conj. 2 *pleuvoir*, v. 3.

does it not snow ? 1 *neiger*, v. 1.

don't they expect the 1 *attendre*, v. 6. 2 *juge*, n. m.

judges ?

shan't you ask my leave ? 1 *demande*, v. 1. 2 *permissi-*  
*on*, n. f.

shan't we receive our wa- 1 *recevoir*, v. 3. 2 *gage*, n. m.

ges ?

RULE II.

In the compounds you must place the participles passive of the foregoing Verbs after the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation negative, as

*Indicative.*

Pres. *N'ai-je pas eu ?* have I not had ? *N'ai-je pas été ?*  
 have I not been ? *N'ai-je pas porté ?* have I not carried ?  
 and so on to the end of the single parts of the indicative of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Have I not given my 1 *donner*, v. 1. 2 *voix*, n. f.

vote ?

have I not sung well ? 1 *chanter*, v. 1. 2 *bien*, adv.

has not David reigned in 1 *regner*, v. 1. 2 *dans*, prep.

Judea ? 3 *Judée*, n. f.

has not Elisha anointed 1 *Elise*, n. m. 2 *oindre*, v. 6.

Jehu ?

has

- has he not diverted 1 the 1 *divertir*, v. 2. 2 *villa*, n. f.  
town 2 ?  
have we not kept 1 our 2 1 *tenir*, v. 2. 2 *parole*.  
word 2 ?  
have we not washed 1 your 1 *laver*, v. 1. 2 *pié*, n. m.  
feet 2 ?  
have you not said 1 your 1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *prière*, n. f.  
prayers 2 ?  
have they not confessed 1 the 1 *avouer*, v. 3. 2 *vérité*, n. f.  
truth 2 ?  
have they not received 1 their 1 *recevoir*, v. 2. 2 *gagé*, n. m.  
wages 2 ?

*Of verbs passive conjugated with an interrogation negative.*

**R U L E**

To conjugate these Verbs, you must add the participles passive of the verbs active, after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation negative, as

*Ne suis-je pas porté ?* am I not carried ? and so on to the end of the single and compounded parts of the indicative of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Am I not cheated 1 ? 1 *Tromper*, v. 1.  
is not the son 1 of man 2 1 *fil*, n. m. 2 *homme*, n. m.  
glorified 3 ? 3 *glorifier*, v. 1.  
are we not hated 1 ? 1 *hâir*, v. 2.  
are you not forsaken 1 ? 1 *abandonner*, v. 1.  
are not your companions 1 1 *compagnon*, n. m. 2 *con-*  
known 2 ? *noître*, v. 5.  
have I not been admitted 1 ? 1 *admettre*, v. 4.  
has he not been turned out 1 ? 1 *chasser*, v. 1.  
have his services 1 not been 1 *service*, n. m. 2 *recompenser*,  
rewarded 2 ? v. 1.

*Of reflected Verbs.*

The reflected Verbs differ from the active, only in their being joined to and conjugated with the conjunctive Pronouns *me*, myself ; *te*, thyself ; *se*, one's self, himself, herself, themselves ; *nous*, ourselves ; and *vous*, yourselves ; which Pronouns are not sometimes translated into *English* ; for we say, *je me repens*, I repent, &c.

*Of*

## Of reflected Verbs conjugated affirmatively.

## RULE I.

To form the single tenses of these Verbs, we must place the conjunctive pronouns immediately before the Verb, as

Inf. *S'aimer*, to love one's self.

Part. act. *S'aimant*, loving one's self.

## Indicative.

Pres. *Je m'aime*, I love myself; *tu t'aimes*, thou lovest thyself; *il s'aime*, he loves himself; *nous nous aimons*, we love ourselves; *vous vous aimez*, ye love yourselves; *ils s'aiment*, they love themselves.

Imp. *Je m'aimois*, I did love myself; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I forget myself 1.                                  | 1 <i>s'oublier</i> , v. 1.   |
| he comes 1 near 2 the door 3.                       | 1 <i>s'approcher</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de</i> prep. 3 <i>porte</i> , n. f.                      |
| He sits 1 upon 2 a bench 3.                         | 1 <i>s'asseoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>sur</i> , prep. 3 <i>banc</i> , n. m.                      |
| we love ourselves too much 1.                       | 1 <i>trop</i> , adv.   |
| you flatter yourselves 1 some-times 2.              | 1 <i>se flatter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>quelque fois</i> , adv.                                   |
| they forsake 1 their ill 2 ha-bits 3.               | 1 <i>se corriger de</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>mauvais</i> , adj. 3 <i>habitude</i> , n. f.          |
| he explained himself 1 in 2 two 3 words 4.          | 1 <i>s'expliquer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>en</i> , prep. 3 <i>deux</i> , adj. 4 <i>mot</i> , n. m. |
| we went 1 to 2 his apart-ment 3.                    | 1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>à</i> prep. 3 <i>appartement</i> , n. m.                   |
| they seized upon 1 his most 2 valuable 2 effects 3. | 1 <i>se saisir de</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>meilleur</i> adj. 3 <i>effet</i> , n. m.                |
| my mother 1 will marry a-gain 2 in a fortnight 3.   | 1 <i>mere</i> , n. f. 2 <i>se remarier</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>dans quinze jours</i> .            |

## RULE II.

The imperative must be formed thus: *Aime toi*, love thyself. *Qu'il s'aime*, let him love himself. *Aimons nous*, let us love ourselves. *Aimez vous*, love yourselves. *Qu'ils s'aiment*, let them love themselves.

## Exercises

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Let us rise 1 quickly 2.	1 <i>Se lever</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>promptement</i> , adv.
present yourselves 1 before 2 my eyes 3.	1 <i>se présenter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à</i> , prep. 3 <i>œil</i> , plur. <i>yeux</i> , n. m.
retire 1 from hence 2.	1 <i>se retirer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>d'ici</i> .
amuse yourselves 1 in 2 my room 3.	1 <i>s'amuser</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>chambre</i> , n. f.
let them appear 1 immediately 2.	1 <i>se montrer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>sur le champ</i> .

R U L E III.

To form the compounds of the reflected Verbs conjugated affirmatively, you must place the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous*, immediately before the Verb *être*, with which these compounds ought to be formed, as

Inf. *S'être aimé*, to have loved one's self.

Part. act. *S'étant aimé*, having loved one's self.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je me suis aimé*, I have loved myself; *tu t'es aimé*, thou hast loved thyself; *il s'est aimé*, he has loved himself; *nous nous sommes aimés*, we have loved ourselves; *vous vous êtes aimés*, ye have loved yourselves; *ils se sont aimés*, they have loved themselves.

Imp. *Je m'étois aimé*, I had loved myself; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the reflected Verb *s'aimer*, to love one's self.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have got rid 1 of my mule 2.	1 <i>Se défaire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>mule</i> , n. f.
I have walked 1 in 2 the park 3.	1 <i>se promener</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>parc</i> , n. m.
I have yielded 1 to their promises 2.	1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>promesse</i> , n. f.
he has washed himself 1 in 2 the Thames 3.	1 <i>se baigner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>Tamise</i> , n. f.
he has defended himself 1 well 2.	1 <i>se défendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv.

he



- he has talked 1 with 2 him 1 *s'entretenir*, v. 2. 2 *avec*,  
for 3 three hours 3. prep. 3 *durant trois heures*.  
he has retired 1 into 2 the 1 *se retirer*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep.  
country 3. 3 *campagne*.  
we have stopped 1 in the 1 *s'arrêter*, v. 1. 2 *en chemin*.  
way 2.  
we have been merry 1. 1 *se réjouir*, v. 2.  
they have waked 1 suddenly 2. 1 *se réveiller*, v. 1. 2 *en sur-  
saut*.

*Of the same Verbs conjugated negatively.*

RULE I.

To conjugate the single tenses of these Verbs negatively, you must place *pas* or *point* after the Verb, and *ne* between the two pronouns, or before the pronouns *je*, *nous*, *vous*, and *se*, when the pronouns in the nominative are omitted, as

Part. act. *Ne s'aimant pas*, not loving one's self.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je ne m'aime pas*, I don't love myself; *tu ne t'aimes pas*, thou dost not love thyself; *il ne s'aime pas*, he does not love himself; *nous ne nous aimons pas*, we do not love ourselves; *vous ne vous aimez pas*, ye do not love yourselves; *ils ne s'aiment pas*, they do not love themselves.

Imp. *Je ne m'aimois pas*, I did not love myself; and so on to the end of the single tenses of this Verb.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I don't complain 1. 1 *Se plaindre*, v. 6.  
I don't repent 1. 1 *se repentir*, v. 2.  
he does not get drunk 1. 1 *s'enivrer*, v. 1.  
she does not rise 1. 1 *se lever*, v. 1.  
we do not lose patience 1. 1 *s'impacienter*, v. 1.  
we do not recant 1. 1 *se retracter*, v. 1.  
you do not take too much li- 1 *s'émanciper*, v. 1.  
berty 1;  
you don't take offence 1 ea- 1 *se scandaliser*, v. 1. 2 *aïst-  
sily 2. ment*, adv.  
they do not make haste 1. 1 *se dépêcher*, v. 1.

I shall

I shall not make myself un- *je chagriner*, v. 1. 1. 1.  
easy 1.  
she will not vex herself 1. *je s'affliger*, v. 1. 1. 1.  
we shall not expose our- *je s'exposer*, v. 1. 1. 1.  
selves. 1. 1. 1.  
they will not be obstinate v. *je s'obstiner*, v. 1. 1. 1.

Observe, that in the infinitive we say, *ne pas s'aimer*, not to love one's self.

R U L E II.

To conjugate the compounds of the reflected Verbs negatively, we must place the negative particle *ne*, before the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous*, and the particles *pas* and *point*, between the auxiliary verb and the participle passive,

Inf. *Ne s'être pas aimé*, not to have loved one's self.

Part. act. *Ne s'étant pas aimé*, not having loved one's self.

Indicative.

Pres. *Je ne me suis pas aimé*, I have not loved myself;  
*tu ne t'es pas aimé*, thou hast not loved thyself;  
*il ne s'est pas aimé*, he has not loved himself;  
*nous ne nous sommes pas aimés*, we have not loved ourselves;  
*vous ne vous êtes pas aimés*, ye have not loved yourselves;  
*ils ne se sont pas aimés*, they have not loved themselves.

Imp. *Je ne m'étois pas aimé*, I had not loved myself; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the verb *s'aimer*, to love one's self, conjugated negatively.

Exercises upon this Rule.

I have not engaged myself 1. *je s'engager*, v. 1. 1.  
thou hast not presented thy- *je se présenter*, v. 1. 1.  
self 1.  
he has not employed him- *je s'occuper*, v. 1. 1.  
self 1.  
she has not been obstinate 1. *je s'opiniâtrer*, v. 1. 1.  
we have not refreshed our- *je se rafraîchir*, v. 2. 1.  
selves 1.  
you have not flattered your- *je se flatter*, v. 1. 1. 1.  
selves 1. you

## 68 EXERCISES upon the

you have not been surprised 1.	1 <i>s'étonner</i> , v. 1.
they have not boasted 1.	1 <i>se vanter</i> , v. 1.
they have not grown proud 1.	1 <i>s'enorgueillir</i> , v. 2.
they have not been disheartened 1.	1 <i>se rebuter</i> , v. 1.

*Of the same Verbs conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

### RULE I.

To form the single tenses of these Verbs, we must place the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous* before the verbs active, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, as

#### *Indicative.*

Pres. *M'aime-je?* do I love myself? *s'aime-tu?* dost thou love thyself? *s'aime-t-il?* does he love himself? *nous aimons-nous?* do we love ourselves? *vous aimez-vous?* do you love yourselves? *s'aiment-ils?* do they love themselves?

Imp. *M'aimois-je?* did I love myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

Dost thou take shipping 1?	1 <i>s'embarquer</i> , v. 1.
does he move forward 1?	1 <i>s'avancer</i> , v. 1.
does he stop 1?	1 <i>s'arrêter</i> , v. 1.
does he mistake 1?	1 <i>se tromper</i> , v. 1.
does he sit down 1?	1 <i>s'asseoir</i> , v. 3.
do you defend yourselves 1?	1 <i>se défendre</i> , v. 6.
do you surrender 1?	1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6.
do they grow tired 1?	1 <i>se lasser</i> , v. 1.
do these swords 1 lose their rust 2?	1 <i>épée</i> , n. f. 2 <i>se déroniller</i> , v. 1.
shall you be undeceived 1?	1 <i>se désabuser</i> , v. 1.
will you allay your passion 1?	1 <i>s'appaiser</i> , v. 1.
will these birds 1 grow tame 2?	1 <i>oiseau</i> , plur. <i>oaux</i> , n. m. 2 <i>s'appriivoiser</i> , v. 1.
will these balls 1 become round 2?	1 <i>balle</i> , n. f. 2 <i>s'arrondir</i> , v. 2.

### RULE II.

To form the compounds of these verbs, we must place the pronouns

pronouns *me, te, se, nous* and *vous*, before the single tenses of the indicative of the verbs passive conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, as

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Me fais-je aimé ?* have I loved myself ? *t'es-tu aimé ?* hast thou loved thyself ? *s'est-il aimé ?* has he loved himself ? *nous sommes nous-aimés ?* have we loved ourselves ? *vous êtes-vous aimés ?* have you loved yourselves ? *se sont-ils aimés ?* have they loved themselves ?

Imp. *M'étois je aimé ?* had I loved myself ? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the verb *être aimé*, to be loved, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Have I fallen asleep ?	1 <i>s'endormir</i> , v. 2.
hast thou equipped thyself ?	1 <i>s'équiper</i> , v. 1.
has he grown bold ?	1 <i>s'enhardir</i> , v. 2.
has she grown rich ?	1 <i>s'enrichir</i> , v. 2.
have you listed ?	1 <i>s'enrôler</i> , v. 1.
have you made yourselves hoarse ?	1 <i>s'enrouer</i> , v. 1.
have you praised yourselves ?	1 <i>se louer</i> , v. 1.
are the swords grown rusty ?	1 <i>épée</i> , n. f. 2 <i>s'enrouiller</i> , v. 1.
are the chickens grown fat ?	1 <i>poulet</i> , n. m. 2 <i>s'engraïsser</i> , v. 1.
are the stars grown dark ?	1 <i>étoile</i> , n. f. 2 <i>s'obscurcir</i> , v. 2.

*Of the same Verbs conjugated with an interrogation negative.*

**R U L E I.**

To form the single tenses of the reflected Verbs with an interrogation negative, you must place the negative *ne* before the single tenses of the same verb, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, and *pas* or *point* after the pronouns in the nominative, as

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Ne m'aime-je pas ?* don't I love myself ? *ne t'aimes-tu pas ?* dost thou not love thyself ? *ne s'aime-t-il pas ?* does he not



not love himself? *ne nous aimons-nous pas?* do we not love ourselves? *ne vous aimez-vous pas?* do you not love yourselves? *ne s'aiment-ils pas?* do they not love themselves?

Imp. *Ne m'aimois-je pas?* did I not love myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the Verb *s'aimer*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Doest thou not get strength?	1 <i>se fortifier</i> , v. 1.
don't your pulse grow weak?	1 <i>pous</i> , n. m. 2 <i>s'affaiblir</i> , v. 2.
does not our army gather strength?	1 <i>armée</i> , n. f. 2 <i>se renforcer</i> , v. 1.
does not the enemy surrender?	1 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6.
don't the child fall asleep again?	1 <i>enfant</i> , n. m. 2 <i>se rendormir</i> , v. 2.
don't we retire?	1 <i>se retirer</i> , v. 1.
don't you lift again?	1 <i>se rengager</i> , v. 1.
don't your servants stir?	1 <i>domestique</i> , n. m. 2 <i>se remuer</i> , v. 1.
don't the besieged surrender?	1 <i>assiégé</i> , n. m.
don't this cloth grow straiter?	1 <i>drap</i> , n. m. 2 <i>se retrécir</i> , v. 2.

R U L E II.

To form the compounds of the same verbs, you must place the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous* between the particle *ne*, and the auxiliary verb of the single tenses of verbs passive, conjugated with an interrogation negative, as

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Ne me suis-je pas aimé?* have I not loved myself? *ne t'es-tu pas aimé?* hast thou not loved thyself? *ne s'est-il pas aimé?* has he not loved himself? *ne nous sommes-nous pas aimés?* have we not loved ourselves? *ne vous êtes-vous pas aimés?* have you not loved yourselves? *ne se sont-ils pas aimés?* have they not loved themselves?

Imp. *Ne m'étois-je pas aimé?* had I not loved myself? and so

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPENCH.

71

so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the verb passive *être aimé*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

Have I not gone out of my way 1 for 2 you 1	1 <i>se détourner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pour</i> , prep.
hast thou not rested thyself 1 ?	1 <i>se reposer</i> , v. 1.
has not your son 1 sacrificed himself 2 for his mother 3 ?	1 <i>se sacrifier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pour</i> , n. f. 3 <i>à</i> , prep.
have we not behaved 1 well 2 ?	1 <i>se comporter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv.
have you not tried your- selves 1 ?	1 <i>s'essayer</i> , v. 1.
have not these flowers 1 blown 2 ?	1 <i>fleur</i> , n. f. 2 <i>s'épanouir</i> , v. 2.
have not the prisoners 1 made their escape 2 ?	1 <i>prisonnier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>s'échapper</i> , v. 1.
had we not met together 1 ?	1 <i>s'assembler</i> , v. 1.
had they not flattered them- selves 1 in vain 2 ?	1 <i>se flatter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>en vain</i> , adv.

### *Of French Verbs conjugated with conjunctive Pronouns.*

Besides the conjunctive pronouns already taken notice of, French verbs are conjugated with other pronouns, which are thus declined.

#### *Singular.*

Nom.	<i>en</i> , some.
Gen.	{ <i>en</i> , of me, of thee, of him, of her, of it.
	{ <i>me</i> , to me.
	{ <i>te</i> , to thee.
Dat.	{ <i>lui</i> , to him, to her, to it.
	{ <i>se</i> , to one's self, to him- self, to herself, to itself.

#### *Plural.*

Nom.	<i>en</i> , some.
Gen.	{ <i>en</i> , of us, of you, of them.
	{ <i>nous</i> , to us,
	{ <i>vous</i> , to you,
Dat.	{ <i>leur</i> , to them.
	{ <i>se</i> , to one's self, to themselves,

*Singular.*

Singular.		Plural.	
	<i>me, me.</i>		<i>nous, us.</i>
	<i>te, thee.</i>		<i>vous, you.</i>
Acc.	<i>le, him, it.</i>	Acc.	<i>les, them.</i>
	<i>la, her, it.</i>		<i>les, them.</i>
	<i>en, some.</i>		<i>en, some.</i>
Abl.	<i>en, from me, from thee, from him, from her, from it.</i>	Abl.	<i>en, from us, from you, from them.</i>

These pronouns constantly keep in *French* verbs the same places which the pronouns *me, te, se, nous* and *vous*, have in the reflected one's; so that whosoever can conjugate a reflected verb, knows how to place the conjunctive pronouns in *French* verbs. Let one example serve for all; we always say

*Nous la tenons.*  
*nous ne la tenons pas*  
*la tenons-nous ?*  
*ne la tenons-nous pas ?*

we keep it.  
 we don't keep it.  
 do we keep it ?  
 don't we keep it ?

### Exercises upon these pronouns.

My wife 1 loves 2 me.	1 femme, n. f. 2 aimer, v. 1.
don't you love him much 1 ?	1 beaucoup, adv.
this tree 1 is dead 2; the	1 arbre, n. m. 2 mourir, v. 2.
frost 3 has killed 4 it.	3 gelée, n. f. 4 faire mourir, v. 5. 2.
come 1 into 2 our room 3; it	1 entrer, v. 1. 2 dans prep. 3
is open 4.	1 chambre, n. f. elle est ouverte.
this house 1 is too 2 little 3;	1 maison, n. f. 2 trop, adv.
sell 4 it.	3 petit, adj. 4 vendre, v. 6.
I tell 1 the truth 2, and you	1 dire, v. 4 2 vérité, n. f.
won't believe 3 me.	3 croire, v. 5.
I see 1 him, and speak 2 to	1 voir, v. 3. 2 parler, v. 1.
him every day 3.	3 tous les jours.
my aunt 1 is in her room;	1 tante, n. f. 2 interrompre, v. 6.
don't disturb 2 her.	

my

my sister 1 is in 2 the country 3, I shall write 4 to her to morrow 5.

do you speak to me, sir 1 ?  
I speak to you.

I hate 1 him as 2 much as 2.  
I love her.

answer 1 me ; don't answer them.

you say 1 it ; I believe you.  
won't you believe us ?

why do you believe him ?

your daughter 1 repents 2,  
forgive 3 her her fault 4.

If I repent, will you forgive me ?

here is 1 a fine 2 book 3,  
shew 4 it.

I shan't shew you my  
buckles 1.

may the Lord 1 hear 2 you,  
and defend 3 you.

honour 1 your father 2 and  
mother 3, and obey 4 them.

correct 1 your son 2, and he  
shall give 3 you rest 4.

here is an excellent 1 letter 2,  
have you wrote it ?

I send 1 you some 2 reflections 3  
upon 4 the education 5  
of children 6.

accustom 1 your sons to 2  
study 3, and take 4 them  
with 5 you, when 6 you  
visit 7 honest men 8.

1 *sœur*, n. f. 2 *à*, prep. 3 *campagne*, n. f. 4 *écrire*, v. 4.  
5 *demain*, adv.

1 *monsieur*, n. m.

1 *hàir*, v. 2. 2 *autantque*,  
conj.

1 *répondre*, v. 6.

1 *dire*, v. 4.

1 *filie*, n. f. 2 *se repentir*, v. 2.  
3 *pardonner*, v. 1. 4 *faute*,  
n. f.

1 *voici*, adv. 2. *beau*, adj.  
3 *livre*, n. m. 4 *montrer*,  
v. 1.

1 *boutle*, n. f.

1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *entendre*,  
v. 6. 3 *défendre*, v. 6.

1 *honorer*, v. 1. 2 *pers*, n. m.  
3 *mere*, n. f. 4 *obéir*, v. 2.

1 *corrigen*, v. 1. 2 *filis*, n. m.  
3 *donner*, v. 1. 4 *repos*, n. m.

1 *excellent*, adj. 2 *lettre*, n. f.

1 *envoyer*, v. 1. 2 *quelque*, adj.  
3 *réflection*, n. f. 4 *sur*, prep.  
5 *éducation*, n. f. 6 *enfants*,  
plur. ans. n. m.

1 *accoutumer*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep.  
3 *étude*, n. f. 4 *prendre*, v. 6.  
5 *avec*, prep. 6 *quand*, conj.  
7 *rendre visite à*, v. 6.  
8 *d'honnêtes gens*.

E

I do



- I do 1 him the justice 2 which 3 he deserves 4. 1 *rendra*, v. 6. 2 *justice*, n. f. 3 *que*, pron. 4 *mériter*, v. 1.
- do you think 1 us fit 2 for 3 the bar 3? 1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *propre*, adj. 3 *au barreau*.
- I am sorry 1 to 2 find you 2 so 3 sick 4. 1 *fâché*, adj. 2 *de vous trouver*. 3 *si*. 4 *malade*, adj.
- will you have 1 pears 2, I have some at 3 your service 4. 1 *vouloir*, v. 3. 2 *poire*, n. f. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *service*, n. m.
- these men 1 are not virtuous 2, don't receive 3 them in 4 your family 5. 1 *gens*, n. m. plur. 2 *vertueux*, adj. 3 *recevoir*, v. 3. 4 *dans*, prep. 5 *famille*, n. f.
- here are 1 beautiful 2 verses 3, I have learn't 4 them by heart 5. 1 *voici*, adv. 2 *beau*, *ne*, adj. 3 *vers*, n. m. 4 *apprendre*, v. 6. 5 *par cœur*.
- this book is full 1 of good 2 things 3, read 4 it. 1 *plein*, adj. 2 *bon*, *ne*, adj. 3 *chose*, n. f. 4 *lire*, v. 4.
- I am always 1 angry 2, when 3 I see them. 1 *toujours*, adv. 2 *fâché*. 3 *quand*, conj.
- If you like 1 it, take 2 it. 1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *prendre*, v. 6.
- If you hate 1 them, don't buy 2 them. 1 *haïr*, v. 2. 2 *acheter*, v. 1.
- these stockings 1 are very 2 good, shall I buy them? 1 *bas*, n. m. 2 *fort*, adv.
- have you done 1 it? 1 *faire*, v. 5.
- he was about 1 some pictures 2, has he finished 3 them? 1 *travailler à*, v. 1. 2 *tableau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 3 *finir*, v. 2.
- you owed 1 a hundred 2 guineas 3, have you paid 4 them? 1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *cent*, adj. und. 3 *guinée*, n. f. 4 *payer*, v. 1.
- you have seen 1 her, has she pleased 2 you? 1 *voir*, v. 3. 2 *plaire*, v. 5.
- you have not consulted 1 me. 1 *consulter*, v. 1.
- have you not employed 1 him with 2 success 3? 1 *employer*, v. 1. 2 *avec*, prep. 3 *succès*, n. m.

Remarks

Remarks upon the Conjunctive Pronouns.

RULE I.

When a Verb is attended with two of these pronouns, *me*, *nous*, *te*, and *vous*, must be placed before the accusatives *le*, *la*, and *les*, as

<i>Il me la donne.</i>	he gives it me.
<i>il ne nous le dit pas.</i>	he does not tell it us.
<i>il te les a envoyés.</i>	he has sent them to thee.
<i>il ne vous les a pas pris.</i>	he has not taken them from you.

Exercises upon this Rule.

I know 1 good 2 news 3,	1 <i>savoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>bon</i> , ne, adj.
I shall tell 4 them to you.	3 <i>nouvelle</i> , n. f. 4 <i>dire</i> , v. 4.
I have found 1 your fan 2,	1 <i>trouver</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>éventail</i> ,
do you give it 3 me?	n. m. 3 <i>donner</i> , v. 1.
you shall have my snuff-box 1,	1 <i>tabatiere</i> , n. f. 2 <i>promettre</i> ,
I promise 2 it to you	v. 4.
I have fine 1 carps 2, I shall	1 <i>beau</i> , <i>belle</i> , adj. 2 <i>carpe</i> ,
send 3 them to you.	n. f. 3 <i>envoyer</i> , v. 1.
he has married 1 his grand	1 <i>marier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>petite fille</i> ,
daughter 2 to 3 my brother 4,	n. f. 3 <i>à</i> , prep. 4 <i>frère</i> , n. m.
and he had destined 5	5 <i>destiner</i> , v. 1. 6 <i>pour</i> ,
her for 6 a wife 7	prep. 7 <i>femme</i> , n. f.
for me.	
he has sold 1 his trees 2, and	1 <i>vendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>arbre</i> , n. m.
yet 3 he had promised	3 <i>cependant</i> , conj.
them to us.	
you have my horses 1; when 2	1 <i>cheval</i> , plur. aux, n. m.
will you send 3 them	2 <i>quand</i> , adv. 3 <i>renvoyer</i> ,
back 3 to me?	v. 1.

RULE II.

In the same case, *lui* and *leur* must be placed after the same accusatives, as

<i>Nous les lui donnons.</i>	we give them to him.
<i>nous ne la leur donnons pas.</i>	we don't give it to them.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

If they ask <sup>1</sup> your protection <sup>2</sup> ,	1 demander, v. 1. 2 protection,
will you refuse <sup>3</sup> it them?	n. f. 3 refuser, v. 1.
you have his money <sup>1</sup> , give <sup>2</sup>	1 argent, n. m. 2 rendre, v. 6.
it him back <sup>2</sup> .	
as <sup>1</sup> soon as <sup>1</sup> I knew <sup>2</sup> the	1 aussi-tôt que. 2 apprendre, v. 6.
death <sup>3</sup> of their uncle <sup>4</sup> ,	3 mort, n. f. 4 oncle, n. m.
I told <sup>5</sup> it them.	5 faire savoir, v. 5. 3.
they ask for <sup>1</sup> my friendship <sup>2</sup> ,	1 demander, v. 1. 2 amitié,
I grant <sup>3</sup> it them.	n. f. 3 accorder, v. 1.

## RULE III.

*T* and *en* must be placed after all the conjunctive pronouns,

*Je vous en donnerai.*  
*ne vous y fiez pas.*

I shall give you some.  
don't trust him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You have bought <sup>1</sup> cherries <sup>2</sup> ,	1 acheter, v. 1. 2 cerise, n. f.
give <sup>3</sup> us some.	3 donner, v. 1.
when I have money <sup>1</sup> , I	1 argent, n. m.
give you some.	
If you have wine <sup>1</sup> , give	1 vin, n. m.
them some.	
he hates <sup>1</sup> the park <sup>2</sup> , don't	1 haïr, v. 2. 2 parc, n. m.
carry <sup>3</sup> him there.	3 mener, v. 1.
these conditions <sup>1</sup> are too <sup>2</sup>	1 condition, n. f. 2 trop, adv.
hard <sup>3</sup> , I don't submit <sup>4</sup> to	3 dur, adj. 4 se soumettre,
them.	v. 4.

## RULE IV.

The disjunctive pronoun *moi* being used after the second person of the imperative of any reflected verb, conjugated affirmatively, *en* and *y* must be placed before it, as

*Donnez en moi.*

give me some.

*menez y moi.*

carry me thither.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

If you have too much 1 1 *trop*, adv. 2 *bien*, n. m.  
 wealth, 2 give me some.  
 have 1 you got 1 too many 2 1 *avoir*, v. 3. 2 *trop*. 3  
 guineas 3, lend 4 me some. *guinée*, n. f. 4 *prêter*, v. 1.  
 Vauxhall is not far 1 from 2 1 *loin*, adv. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *ici*,  
 hence 3, conduct 4 me adv. 4 *conduire*, v. 4.  
 there.

R U L E V.

When *y* and *en* meet together in a sentence, *y* must be placed first, as *je vous y en porterai*, I shall carry some for you there.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You have no 1 fish 1 at 2 1 *point de poisson*. 2 *d*, prep.  
 Hampstead, my brother 3 3 *freres*, n. m. 4 *porter*, v. 1.  
 will carry 4 some for you  
 there.  
 as they had no tea 1 at their 1 *thé*, n. m. 2 *maison de*  
 country house 2, I have *campagne*, n. f. 3 *envoyer*,  
 sent 3 them some thither. v. 1.

*Of French Moods.*

The Infinitive denotes any thing without affirming, as *manger*, to eat.

The Indicative shews and affirms, as *il mange*, he eats.

The Imperative commands, prays and exhorts, as *mangez*, eat; *ne mangez pas*, don't eat.

The Conjunctive comes after the conjunction *que*, that; or such like words following a verb, as *il faut que je fasse un discours*, I must make a speech.

Use of the French Tenses.

*Single Tenses of the Indicative.*

*The Present.*

This tense denotes that a thing is, or is done at the time wherein we speak, as *je marche*, I walk; it answers to the



# 78 EXERCISES upon the

English present of the indicative, *I walk, I do walk, I am walking.*

## Exercises upon this Tense.

Wisdom 1 is the principal 2 thing 3.	1 Sageſſe, n. f. 2 principal, adj. 3 chose, n. f.
wisdom dwells 1 with 2 prudence 3.	1 habiter, v. 1. 2 avec, prep. 3 prudence, n. f.
hatred 1 stirreth up 2 strifes 3.	1 haine, n. f. 2 cauſer, v. 1. 3 diſpute, n. f.
the labour 1 of the righteous 2 tendeth 3 to life 4.	1 travail, n. m. 2 juſte, n. m. 3 tendre, v. 6. 4 vie, n. f.
the tongue 1 of the juſt is as 2 choice 4 ſilver 3.	1 langue, n. f. 2 comme, conj. 3 argent, n. m. 4 pur, adj.
the righteous is 1 more 1 excellent 1 than 2 his neighbour 3.	1 vaut mieux. 2 que, conj. 3 voiſin, n. m.

## The Imperfect.

This tense is used, 1st, to denote that the thing we speak of was present in a past time specified, as *j'étudiois quand il entra*, I was studying when he came in. When thus used, it answers to the English imperfect, *I was walking.*

2dly, It is used to express the inclinations or qualities a person had, or what he at certain times did, in a time entirely past, as

*Hérode étoit cruel.*

Herod was a cruel man.

*mon pere faisoit la même chose.*

my father did the same thing.

3dly, It is used after the conjunction *ſi*, to denote the thing that should be, that another thing might happen, as *je lirois, ſi j'avois des livres*, I should read, if I had books.

## Exercises upon this Tense.

I was sick 1, when 2 he came 3.	1 malade, adj. 2 quand, conj. 3 venir, v. 2.
was you not at 1 home 1 when he ſet out 2 ?	1 au logis. 2 partir, v. 2.
my father 1 was abroad 2 when my mother 3 died 4.	1 pere, n. m. 2 en ville. 3 mere, n. f. 4 mourir, v. 2.

this

this woman 1 was handsome 2 in 3 her youth 4.	1 femme, n. f. 2 beau, belle, adj. 3 dans, prep. 4 jeu- nesse, n. f.
Boadicea 1 was a warlike 3 princess 2.	1 Boadicee, n. f. 2 princesse, n. f. 3 guerrier, adj.
the late 1 king 2 was a good 3 prince 4.	1 feu, adj. 2 roi, n. m. 3 bon, adj. 4 prince, n. m.
if he loved 1 my sister 2, he would marry 3 her.	1 aimer, v. 1. 2 sœur, n. f. 3 épouser, v. 1.
should he fear 1 me, he would do 2 his duty 3.	1 craindre, v. 6. 2 faire, v. 5. 3 devoir, n. m.
if he went 1 there 2, he would be punished 3.	1 aller, v. 1. 2 y pron. conj. 3 punir, v. 2.

*The Preterite.*

This tense is used to denote a thing past, in such a manner, that nothing remains of the time wherein it happened, as *je fus malade l'année dernière*, I was sick last year.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

I went 1 yesterday 2 to 3 the play 4.	1 aller, v. 1. 2 hier, adv. 3 à, prep. 4 comédie, n. f.
we danced 1 the 2 day before yesterday 2 during 3 three 4 hours 5.	1 danser, v. 1. 2 avant hier. 3 pendant, prep. 4 trois, adj. 5 heure, n. f.
we supped 1 last 3 week 2 at 4 Ranelagh.	1 souper, v. 1. 2 semaine, n. f. 3 dernier, adj. 4 à, prep.
Alexander 1 conquered 2 Darius.	1 Alexandre, n. m. 2 conquérir, v. 2.
Cæsar 1 came 2, saw 3, and conquered.	1 César, n. m. 2 venir, v. 2. 3 voir, v. 3.
Pyrrus 1 defeated 2 the Romans 3.	1 Pirrus, n. m. 2 défaire, v. 5. 3 Romain, n. m.

*The Future.*

This tense denotes a thing which is to be in a time not yet come, as *je parlerai*, I shall speak, and answers to the English future, *I shall or will walk, &c.*

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- The expectation 1 of the wicked 2 shall perish 3.  
 wealth 1 gotten 2 by 3 vanity 4 shall be diminished 5.
- the house 1 of the wicked shall be overthrown 2.  
 a false 1 witness 2 shall not be unpunished 3.  
 the sluggard 1 will not plow 2 by 3 reason of the cold 3; therefore 4 he shall beg 5 in 6 harvest 6, and have nothing 7.
- 1 *espérance*, n. f. 2 *méchants* plur. *ans*, n. m. 3 *périr*, v. 2.  
 1 *richesses*, plur. n. f. 2 *acquérir*, v. 2. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *vanité*, n. f. 5 *diminuer*, v. 1.  
 1 *maison*, n. f. 2 *renverser*, v. 1.  
 1 *faux*, adj. 2 *témoin*, n. m. 3 *impuni*, adj.  
 1 *pareseux*, n. m. 2 *labourer*, v. 1. 3 *à cause du froid*. 4 *c'est pourquoi*. 5 *mandier*, v. 1. 6 *pendant la moisson*. 7 *rien*, n. m.

*The Conditional.*

The conditional or uncertain time denotes a thing that would, should or could be in an unspecified and uncertain time, and depends of another uncertain thing, as *je serois votre fortune, si j'étois roi*, I should make your fortune, if I was a king.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- My father 1 would love 2 my sister 3, if 4 she was more modest 5.
- I would marry 1 her, if she was handsome 2.
- I would not go 1 to London 2, if I was in 3 your place 4.
- I would give 1 you a place 2, if you had done 3 your duty 4.
- 1 *père*, n. m. 2 *aimer*, v. 1. 3 *sœur*, n. f. 4 *si*, conj. 5 *modeste*, adj.  
 1 *épouser*, v. 1. 2 *beau, belle*, adj.  
 1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *Londres*, n. m. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *place*, n. f.  
 1 *donner*, v. 1. 2 *poste*, n. m. 3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *devoir*, n. m.

*Compounds of the Indicative.**The First Compound.*

This tense denotes a thing that is past, but in such a manner that a part still remains of the time wherein that thing has

has happened, as *j'ai perdu cette année cent pistoles*, I have lost a hundred pistoles this year. *J'ai perdu* denotes a thing that is past; but it has happened *cette année*; and there still remains a part of this year to slide away.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

- How many 1 guineas 2 1 *combien*, adv. 2 *guinée*, n. f.  
 have you won 3 to day 4? 3 *gagner*, v. 1. 4 *aujourd'hui*, adv.
- I have read 1 Telemachus 2 1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *Télémaque*,  
 this week 3. n. m. 3 *semaine*, n. f.
- I have seen 1 the prince 2 1 *voir*, v. 3. 2 *prince*, n. m.  
 twice 3 this month 4. 3 *deux fois*. 4 *mois*, n. m.
- the king 1 of Prussia 2 has 1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *Prusse*, n. f.  
 defeated 3 the French 4 3 *battre*, v. 4. 4 *François*,  
 and Austrians 5 this year 6. n. m. 5 *Autrichien*, n. m.  
 6 *année*, n. f.
- our age 1 has produced 2 1 *siècle*, n. m. 2 *produire*, v. 4.  
 great 3 poets 4. 3 *grand*, adj. 4 *poète*, n. m.

*Remark upon the preterite and first compound.*

When the time wherein a thing has happened is entirely past, and is not specified, we may indifferently use these two tenses, as *Alexandre fut*, or *a été un grand capitaine*, Alexander was, or has been a great general.

*Exercises wherein the preterite or first compound may be indifferently used.*

- The duke 1 of Marlborough 1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *souvent*, adv.  
 has often 2 beaten 3 the 3 *battre*, v. 4.  
 French.
- the fruits 1 of the earth 2 1 *fruit*, n. m. 2 *terre*, n. f.  
 have been the food 3 of 3 *nourriture*, n. f. 4 *premier*,  
 the first 4 men 5. adj. 5 *homme*, n. m.
- Christ 1 has driven 2 the 1 *Jésus Christ*, n. m. 2 *chasser*,  
 traders 3 out 4 of the v. 1. 3 *marchand*, n. m.  
 temple 4. 4 *du temple*.
- water 1 was changed 2 into 3 1 *eau*, n. f. 2 *changer*, v. 1.  
 wine 4 at 5 the wedding 3 *en*, prep. 4 *vin*, n. m.  
 of Cana 5. 5 *aux nocés de Cana*.



Joseph has interpreted 1 Pha- 1 *interpréter*, v. 1. 2 *songe*, n. m.  
 rao's 3 dreams 2. 3 *Pharaon*, n. m.  
 Cain killed 1 his brother 2 1 *tuer*, v. 1. 2 *frère*, n. m.  
 Abel.

### The Second Compound.

This tense is used to denote, that, in a certain specified time that is past, the thing spoken of was also past, as *j'avois fait mon thème, quand vous entrâtes*, I had done my exercise when you came in.

### Exercises upon this Tense.

The king 1 had ended 2 his 1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *finir*, v. 2.  
 speech 3, when 4 I enter- 3 *discours*, n. m. 4 *quand*,  
 ed 5 into 6 the house 7 conj. 5 *entrer*, v. 1. 6 *dans*,  
 of lords 8. prep. 7 *chambre*, n. f.  
 8 *pair*, n. m.  
 you had sold 1 your estate 2, 1 *vendre*, v. 6. 2 *bien*, n. m.  
 when I married 3. 3 *se marier*, v. 1  
 the captain 1 had paid 2 his 1 *capitaine*, n. m. 2 *payer*,  
 debts 3, when he died 4. v. 1. 3 *dette*, n. f. 4 *mourir*,  
 v. 2.  
 the duke 1 had left 2 the 1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *quitter*, v. 1.  
 army 3 when we took 4 3 *armée*, n. f. 4 *prendre*,  
 Tournay. v. 6.

### The Third Compound.

This tense, like the preterite, expresses a thing quite past, and is commonly construed with

*quand*, when.

*aussitôt que*, as soon as.

*lorsque*, when.

*après que*, when.

*dès que*, as soon as.

*à peine*, scarce.

as *quand j'eus parlé, chacun se leva*; when I had spoken, every one got up.

### Exercises upon this Tense.

When he had finished 1 his 1 *finir*, v. 2. 2 *histoire*, n. f.  
 history 2, she began 3 her 3 *commencer*, v. 1. 4 *la*  
 own 4. *sienne*.

when

when the king 1 was come 2, 1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *venir*, v. 2.  
 they began the play 3. 3 *comédie*, n. f.  
 as soon as Cæsar 1 was en- 1 *César*, n. m. 2 *entrer*, v. 1.  
 tered 2 into 3 the senate 4 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *sénat*, n. m.  
 house 4, the conspirators 5 5 *conjuré*, n. m. 6 *tomber*,  
 fell 6 upon 7 him and v. 1. 7 *sur*, prep. 8 *tuer*,  
 killed 8 him. v. 1.

*The Fourth Compound.*

This tense denotes a time to come, wherein the thing spoken of will be over, as *j'aurai fini mon ouvrage, quand vous commencerez le vôtre*, I shall have finished my work, when you begin yours.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

I shall have dined 1, when 2 1 *diner*, v. 1. 2 *quand*, conj.  
 you come 3. 3 *venir*, v. 2.  
 when I have done 1 my 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *tâche*, n. f.  
 task 2, I shall go 3 to 4 my 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *chez mon*  
 brothers 4. *frère*.  
 I shall study 1 my lesson 2, 1 *étudier*, v. 1. 2 *leçon*, n. f.  
 when I have finished 3 3 *finir*, v. 2. 4 *thème*, n. m.  
 my exercise 4.

*The Fifth Compound.*

This tense denotes a thing that would, could or should have happened, had it not been for some other conditional thing, as *vous auriez réussi, si vous aviez suivi mon conseil*, you would have succeeded, if you had followed my advice.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

The prince 1 would have 1 *prince*, n. m. 2 *avancer*,  
 preferred 2 him, if 3 he v. 1. 3 *si*, conj. 4 *se com-*  
 had behaved 4 better 5. *porter*, v. 1. 5 *mieux*, adv.  
 you would have won 1 if 1 *gagner*, v. 1. 2 *jouer*, v. 1.  
 you had played 2.  
 his mistress 1 would not have 1 *maîtresse*, n. f. 2 *pardonner*,  
 forgiven 2 him; had 3 she v. 1. 3 *si elle n'avoit point*  
 not been 3 a good 4 wo- *été*. 4 *bon*, ne, adj. 5 *femme*,  
 man 5. n. f. Single

*Single Tenses of the Conjunctive.**The Present,*

This tense is used when the Verb coming before it is either in the present or future, as

*Croyez vous qu'ils viennent ?* Do you think that they will come ?

*il faudra que je le fasse.* I shall be obliged to do it.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

We must 1 come to 2 a resolution 3. 1 *Il faut*, v. imp. 3. 2 *prendre*, v. 6. 3 *resolution*, n. f.

you must repeat 1 your lesson 2. 1 *répéter*, v. 1. 2 *leçon*, n. f.

they must write 1 their letters 2. 1 *écrire*, v. 4. 2 *lettre*, n. f.

you will be obliged 1 to sell 2 your estate 3. 1 *il faudra*, v. imp. 3. 2 *vendre*, v. 6. 3 *bien*, n. m.

will they not be obliged to help 1 him ? 1 *secourir*, v. 2.

*The Preterite.*

This tense is used, when the Verb coming before it is in any one of the past, or conditional tenses, as

*Je voulois qu'il entrât.* I was willing he should enter.  
*il ordonna qu'on le mît à mort.* he ordered him to be put to death.

*elle voudroit que vous y allas-* she wishes you would go  
*siez.* there.

*j'ai ordonné qu'on le laissât al-* I have commanded to let  
*ler.* him go.

*vous aviez empêché qu'on ne* you had hindered my being  
*m'insultât.* insulted.

*auriez-vous voulu qu'il accusât* would you have had him ac-  
*son frere ?* cuse his brother.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

We were not willing 1 that 1 *Vouloir*, v. 3. 2 *exposer*, v. 1.  
he should expose 2 his life 3. 3 *vie*, n. f.

would

would 1 you have 1 him	1 <i>vouloir</i> , 2 <i>courir</i> , v. 2.
run 2 the risk 3 of 4 lo-	3 <i>risque</i> , n. m. 4 <i>de perdre</i> ,
sing 4 his estate 5.	5 <i>bien</i> , n. m.
he ordered 1 them to be	1 <i>ordonner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pendre</i> , v.
hanged 2 immediately 3.	6. 3 <i>sur le champ</i> .
I wish 1 you would study 2	1 <i>je voudrais</i> . 2 <i>étudier</i> , v. 1.
more 3 than 4 you do 5.	3 <i>plus</i> , adv. 4 <i>que</i> , conj.
	5 <i>vous ne faites</i> .
we wish your master 1 would	1 <i>maître</i> , n. m. 2 <i>enseigner</i> ,
teach 2 you the first 3	v. 1. 3 <i>premier</i> , adj. 4 <i>prin-</i>
principles 4 of the French 6	<i>cipe</i> , n. m. 5 <i>langue</i> , n. f.
tongue 5.	6 <i>François</i> , adj.
I have ordered him to be	1 <i>punir</i> , v. 2.
punished 1.	
I have hindered 1 your be-	<i>empêcher</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>trouper</i> ,
ing imposed upon 2.	v. 1.
would you have had 1 us	1 <i>auriez vous voulu</i> . 2 <i>perdre</i> ,
lose 2 our time 3?	v. 4. 3 <i>tems</i> , n. m.

### Compounds of the Conjunctive.

#### The first Compound.

This tense is used, when the Verb coming before it, is either in the present, first compound, or future of the indicative, as

<i>Je doute qu'aucun philosophe</i>	I doubt whether any of the
<i>ait jamais connu l'origine des</i>	philosophers ever knew
<i>vents.</i>	the cause of the winds.
<i>il a fallu que j'aie sollicité mes</i>	I have been obliged to wait
<i>juges.</i>	upon my judges.
<i>je n'entreprendrai rien que je</i>	I shall undertake nothing be-
<i>n'aie consulté mon avocat.</i>	fore I have consulted my
	lawyer.

#### Exercises upon this Tense.

Do you doubt 1 that he has	1 <i>Douter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>se comporter</i> ,
behaved 2 well 3?	v. 1. 3 <i>bien</i> , adv.
I don't doubt but he has	1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>devoir</i> , n. m.
done 1 his duty 2.	
I have been obliged 1 to re-	1 <i>il a fallu</i> , v. imp. 3. 2 <i>re-</i>
concile 2 them.	<i>concilier</i> , v. 1.

I shall



I shall say 1 nothing 2 before you have spoken 3.

I shall not forgive 1 you before you have asked 2 pardon 3.

1 dire, v. 4. 2 rien, n. m.

3 parler, v. 1.

1 pardonner, v. 1. 2 demander, v. 1. 3 pardon, n. m.

### The Second Compound.

This tense is used after the imperfect, preterite, conditional, and the first, second, and fifth compounds, as

*J'ignorois que vous eussiez appris l'Arithmétique.*

*il ne crut pas qu'on lui eût tendu un piège.*

*vous trouveriez mauvais, que nous eussions contrevenu à vos ordres.*

*il n'a pas cru qu'on lui eût tendu un piège.*

*nous avions ignoré que le roi vous eût accordé cette grace.*

*vous auriez trouvé mauvais, que nous eussions contrevenu à vos ordres.*

I did not know that you had learned Arithmetick.

he did not believe that they had laid a snare for him.

you would take it ill, if we had disobeyed your orders.

he did not believe that they had laid a snare for him.

we did not know that the king had granted you that favour.

you would have taken it ill, if we had disobeyed your orders.

### Exercises upon this Tense.

I did not know 1 that you had taught 2 philosophy 3. he did not believe 1 that they had discovered 2 where 3 he was.

I should have taken 1 it ill 1, if you had not assisted 2 your countryman 3.

we did not believe that he had done 1 it.

we did not know that the dutchess 1 had rewarded 2 that lady 3.

1 Savoir, v. 3. 2 enseigner, v. 1. 3 philosophie, n. f.

1 croire, v. 5. 2 découvrir, v. 2. 3 où, adv.

1 trouver mauvais, v. 1. 2 assister, v. 1. 3 compatriote, n. m.

1 faire, v. 5.

1 duchesse, n. f. 2 récompenser, v. 1. 3 dame, n. f.

we should have taken it ill, 1 *cultiver*, v. 1. 2 *esprit*, n. m.  
if you had not improved 1  
your mind 2.

The French and English imperative denoting the same thing, there need no remarks upon them.

### *Tenses of the Infinitive.*

#### *The Present.*

This tense denotes the present, past, and future time, as

<i>Vous me voyez danser.</i>	You see me dance.
<i>vous m'avez entendu parler.</i>	you have heard me speak.
<i>vous m'entendrez chanter.</i>	you will hear me sing.

#### *Exercises upon this Tense.*

Are you willing 1 to go 2 to 3	1 <i>Vouloir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>aller</i> , v. 1.
York 4 ?	3 <i>à</i> , prep. 4 <i>York</i> , n. m.
can 1 you speak 2 French 3 ?	1 <i>savoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>parler</i> , v. 1.
	3 <i>François</i> , n. m.
we expect 1 to have a good 2	1 <i>compter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>bon</i> , ne,
crop 3.	adj. 3. <i>recolte</i> , n. f.
I am 1 to receive 2 my rents 3.	1 <i>devoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3.
	3 <i>rente</i> , n. f.
we are to dance 1 this even-	1 <i>danser</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>soir</i> , n. m.
ing 2.	
be pleased 1 to grant 2 me a	1. <i>daigner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>accorder</i> ,
favour 3.	v. 1. 3 <i>faveur</i> , n. f.

#### *Compound of the Present.*

This tense denotes a time past, relatively to the tense of the verb coming before it, as

<i>Vous paraissez avoir perdu vo-</i>	You look as if you had lost
<i>tre argent.</i>	your money.
<i>j'ai cru être arrivé trop tard.</i>	I thought I was come too late.

#### *Exercises upon this Tense.*

They look 1 as if they	1 <i>Paraître</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>avoir en-</i>
had 2 a mind 2 to suc-	<i>vie</i> . 3 <i>de réussir</i> . 4 <i>en-</i>
ceed 3 in their undertak-	<i>treprise</i> , n. f.
ings 4.	

she pretends 1 that she has  
lost 2 her money 3 at 4  
play 4.

he thought 1 he was gone  
out 2 too 3 soon 4.

1 *prétendre*, v. 6. 2 *perdre*, v.  
4. 3 *argent*, n. m. 4 *au*  
*jeu*.

1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *sortir*, v. 2.  
3 *trop*, adv. 4 *tôt*, adv.

### Use of the Participle Active.

You must observe, first, that this participle is always undeclined, as

*Un homme craignant Dieu.*

*une femme aimant son mari.*

A man fearing God.

a wife loving her husband.

Secondly, that when it denotes a past time, it takes a participle passive after it, as *ayant cherché*, having sought.

Thirdly, that when *en* is placed before it, this word signifies *as, when or whilst*, as

*En me parlant, il pensoit à au-*  
*tre chose.*

When he was speaking to  
me, he was thinking of o-  
ther things.

*je vous le dirai, en allant.*

I shall tell it you, as we go.

### Exercises upon this Participle.

Philosophers 1 knowing 2 the  
truth 3, ought 4 not to  
conceal 5 it.

I met 1 some people 2 sing-  
ing 3 psalms 4.

Alexander 1, having defeat-  
ed 2 Darius, seized upon 3  
his kingdom 4.

he spoke 1 to me several 2  
times 3, as he walked 4.

he died 1 as he was speak-  
ing.

1 *Philosophe*, n. m. *connoître*,  
v. 5. 3 *vérité*, n. f. 4 *de-*  
*voir*, v. 3. 5 *cacher*, v. 1.

1 *rencontrer*, v. 1. 2 *gens*, plur.  
n. m. 3 *chanter*, v. 1.  
4 *psaume*, n. m.

1 *Alexandre*, n. m. 2 *défaire*,  
v. 5. 3 *se rendre maître de*,  
v. 6. 4 *royaume*, n. m.

1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *plusieurs*, adj.  
plur. 3 *fois*, n. f. 4 *marcher*, v. 1.

1 *mourir*, v. 2.

### Use of the Participle Passive.

This participle is sometimes declined, and sometimes undeclined.

It

It is declined, first, in the verbs passive, as

<i>Il est chéri.</i>	He is beloved.
<i>elle est chérie.</i>	she is beloved.
<i>nous sommes chéris.</i>	we are beloved.
<i>elles sont chéries.</i>	they are beloved.

Secondly, in the compounds of the reflected verbs, as

<i>Il s'est caché.</i>	He has hid himself.
<i>elle s'est cachée.</i>	she has hid herself.
<i>nous nous sommes cachés.</i>	we have hid ourselves.
<i>elles se sont cachées.</i>	they have hid themselves.

Thirdly, after the Verb *avoir*, when this verb has a pronoun in the accusative before it, as

<i>Les vers que j'ai faits, je vous les donne.</i>	I give you the verses which I have made.
--	--

It is undeclined, first, after the verb *avoir*, when this verb has no pronoun in the accusative before it, as

<i>J'ai lu Gil-blas.</i>	I have read Gil-blas.
--------------------------	-----------------------

Secondly, when its nominative comes after it, as

<i>La peine qu'ont pris les savans.</i>	The trouble which the learned have taken.
---	---

Thirdly, when it governs, and is placed before an infinitive without a preposition between them, as

<i>Les femmes que j'ai entendu chanter.</i>	The women whom I heard sing.
---	------------------------------

Fourthly, after a Verb conjugated in its compounds with the Verb *être*, and governing a conjunctive pronoun in the dative, as

<i>Elle s'est prescrite cette règle.</i>	She has made this her rule.
--	-----------------------------

Fifthly, when in the same sentence it is followed by *que* or *qui*, as

<i>Les raisons qu'il a cru que j'approuvois.</i>	The reasons which he thought I approved of.
--	---

Sixthly, in the Verbs impersonal, as

<i>La pluie qu'il a fait.</i>	The rain which has fallen.
-------------------------------	----------------------------

*Exercices*



*Exercises upon the declined Participle Passive.*

Having already given several Exercises upon this participle, when I treated of the passive and reflected Verbs, I shall now content myself with setting down here a few Exercises upon the third Remark.

The speech 1 which 2 I have made 3, I present 4 to you.	1 Harangue, n. f. 2 que. 3 faire, v. 5. 4 présenter, v. 1.
the sums 1 which I have borrowed 2, I return back 3.	1 somme, n. f. 2 emprunter, v. 1. 3 rendre, v. 6.
the cause 1 which I have defended 2, I forsake 3.	1 cause, n. f. 2 défendre, v. 6. 3 abandonner, v. 1.

*Exercises upon the undeclined Participle Passive.*

I have not yet 1 read 2 the history 3 of England 4.	1 Encore, adv. 2 lire, v. 4. 3 histoire, n. f. 4 Angleterre, n. f.
do you know 1 the trouble 2 which 3 my 5 brother 5 has taken 4 to 6 serve you 6?	1 savoir, v. 3. 2 peine, n. f. 3 que. 4 prendre, v. 6. 5 mon frere, v. 1. 6 pour vous servir.
here is 1 the child 2 whom 3 I have heard 4 speak 5.	1 voilà, adv. 2 enfant, n. m. 3 que. 4 entendre, v. 6. 5 parler, v. 1.
I have made 1 several 2 rules 3 to myself 1.	1 se prescrire, v. 4. 2 plusieurs, adj. plur. 3 règle, n. f.
I have read the books 1 which 2 you thought 3 I approved of 4.	1 livre, n. m. 2 que. 3 croire, v. 5. 4 approuver, v. 1.
the wind 1 which 2 has blown 2 for 3 two days 3, has unrooted 4 several trees 5.	1 vent, n. m. 2 qu'il a fait. 3 pendant deux jours. 4 déraciner, v. 1. 5 arbre, n. m.

## OF A D V E R B S.

What has been said before concerning the undeclined particles is to be understood only of such as are met with in the foregoing Exercises; I must now treat of them in a more particular manner.

First,

First, the French Adverbs may be divided into eight classes, viz. Adverbs of *manner*, *order*, *place*, *distance*, *time*, *quantity*, *distribution*, and *motive*.

*Adverbs of manner.*

The adverbs of *manner* are formed from their respective adjectives, by adding *ment* after each of them, as

*Fortement*, strongly.

*Aisément*, easily.

*tendrement*, tenderly.

*bardiment*, boldly.

*promptement*, quickly.

*absolument*, absolutely.

And several others, to which we must add,

*En vain*, in vain.

*bien*, well.

*exprès*, purposely.

*ainsi*, thus.

*mal*, badly.

*demême*, so, thus.

The adverbs of manner are compared like adjectives with the words

*Plus*, more.

*Moins*, less.

*le plus*, the most.

*très*, very.

*aussi*, as.

*fort*, very.

*si*, so.

But the adverb *mieux*, better, is the comparative of the adverb *bien*, well; and *pis*, worse, is that of *mal*, badly.

The Adverbs of *manner* are seldom placed before any other adverbs, but sometimes take adverbs of quantity before them, as

*Cet homme traite bien fièrement ses inferieurs.*

This man uses his inferiors in a very proud manner.

*vous parlez peu décemment des femmes.*

you speak with little decency of the women.

They are placed, first, before the adjectives, as

*Parfaitement belle.*

Perfectly handsome.

Secondly, after the single tenses of the Verbs, as

*Il parle modestement de lui-même.*

He speaks modestly of himself.

Thirdly, in the compounds, between the auxiliary and participle, as

*Vous vous êtes bien comporté.*

you have behaved well.

*Exercices*

## 92 EXERCISES upon the

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

She behaves 1 more politely 2 than 3 her sister 4.	1 <i>se comporter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>poliment</i> . 3 <i>que</i> , conj. 4 <i>sœur</i> , n. f.
he speaks 1 more judiciously 2 than the other 3.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>sensément</i> . 3 <i>autre</i> , pron. nom.
your country-man 1 has served 2 me the most faithfully 3 in 4 the world 4.	1 <i>compatriote</i> , n. m. 2 <i>servir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>fidelement</i> . 4 <i>du monde</i> .
he composes 1 verses 2 as easily 3 as 4 Voltaire.	1 <i>composer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>vers</i> , n. m. 3 <i>facilement</i> . 4 <i>que</i> , conj.
don't behave so impudently 1.	1 <i>effrontément</i> .
we are lodged 1 less conveniently 2 than you.	1 <i>loger</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>commodément</i> .
he has served his king 1 very faithfully.	1 <i>roi</i> , n. m.
you don't work 1 better than I.	1 <i>travailler</i> , v. 1.
you speak very 1 indiscreetly 2.	1 <i>bien</i> , adv. 2 <i>imprudemment</i> .
this lady 1 is perfectly 2 handsome 3, and speaks modestly 4 of herself 5.	1 <i>dame</i> , n. f. 2 <i>parfaitement</i> . 3 <i>beau, belle</i> , adj. 4 <i>modestement</i> . 5 <i>d'elle même</i> .
I have strongly 1 opposed 2 his designs 3.	1 <i>fortement</i> . 2 <i>opposer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>dessin</i> , n. m.

## *Adverbs of Order.*

These adverbs being

<i>Premièrement</i> , first.	<i>Devant</i> , before.
<i>secondement</i> , secondly.	<i>derrière</i> , behind.
<i>troisièmement</i> , thirdly.	<i>ensuite</i> , afterwards, then.
<i>quatrièmement</i> , fourthly, &c.	<i>auparavant</i> , before.
<i>d'abord</i> , at first.	<i>enfin</i> , at last.
<i>après</i> , after.	

are never used with adjectives, and are placed before or after the Verb, as the smoothness of the sentence requires it. When they come after it, they are not

to

to be separated from it, whereas when they come before it, they may be placed at the head of the sentence. All this will appear by the following examples.

*Parlez d'abord à mon frere ;* Speak first to my brother ; I  
*ensuite je lui dirai ce que je* shall tell him afterwards  
*pense.* what I think.

*Dieu créa d'abord l'homme ;* God created the man first,  
*ensuite il créa la femme.* and afterwards he created the woman.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>We must 1 first do 2 our duty 3 ; secondly, we 4 must only take 4 lawful 6 pleasures 5.</p> <p>You ought 1 first to love 2 God 3 above 4 all 5 things 6 ; secondly, you ought to love your neighbour 7 as 8 yourself 9.</p> <p>First, the king 1 is not absolute 2 in 3 England 4 ; secondly, we have the happiness 5 to live 6 under 7 a good 8 prince 9.</p> <p>Our eyes 1 admire 2 at first beauty 3, then our senses 4 covet 5 it, and our heart 6 gives 7 itself over 7 to 8 it 8 afterwards.</p> | <p>1 <i>Il faut</i>, v. imp. 3. 2 <i>faire</i>, v. 5. 3 <i>devoir</i>, n. m. 4 <i>nous ne devons prendre que</i>. 5 <i>plaisir</i>, n. m. 6 <i>permis</i>, adj.</p> <p>1 <i>devoir</i>, v. 3. 2 <i>aimer</i>, v. 1. 3 <i>Dieu</i>, n. m. 4 <i>sur</i>, prep. 5 <i>tout</i>, adj. 6 <i>chose</i>, n. f. 7 <i>prochain</i>, n. m. 8 <i>comme</i>, conj. 9 <i>vous-même</i>, pron. nom.</p> <p>1 <i>roi</i>, n. m. 2 <i>absolu</i>, adj. 3 <i>en</i> prep. 4 <i>Angleterre</i>, n. f. 5 <i>bonheur</i>, n. m. 6 <i>vivre</i>, v. 4. 7 <i>sous</i>, prep. 8 <i>bon</i>, adj. 9 <i>prince</i>, n. m.</p> <p>1 <i>oeil</i>, plur. <i>yeux</i>, n. m. 2 <i>admirer</i>, v. 1. 3 <i>beauté</i>, n. f. 4 <i>sens</i>, n. m. 5 <i>désirer</i>, v. 1. 6 <i>cœur</i>, n. m. 7 <i>se livrer</i>, v. 1. 8 <i>y</i>, pron. conj.</p> |
|---|---|

*Adverbs of Place.*

These adverbs are,

Où, where.

ici, here.

là, there.

dedans, within.

dehors, without, out.

dessus, upon.

Deffous, under.

partout, every where.

autour, round.

deçà, on this side.

delà, off, from thence.

au delà, beyond.

You



You must observe, first, that they are placed after the Verb, except *où*, that comes before it, as

*Je suis ici.*

I am here.

*Où allez vous ?*

where are you going ?

Secondly, that except *partout* and *autour*, they may be governed by prepositions, as

*Allez par ici.*

Go this way.

*Passer par là.*

pass that way.

### Exercises upon these Adverbs.

Where shall we go ?

1 *Aller*, v. 1.

we are 1 here.

1 *être*, v. aux.

shall you stay 1 there ?

1 *rester*, v. 1.

he has been turned out 1.

1 *mettre dehors*, v. 4.

God 1 is every where.

1 *Dieu*, n. m.

let us go this 1 way 1.

1 *par ici*.

from whence 1 come 2 you ?

1 *d'où*. 2 *venir*, v. 2.

### Adverbs of Distance.

Observe first, that these adverbs being *loin*, far, and *près*, near may be compared and placed after other adverbs, as *approchez vous plus près*, come nearer.

Secondly, that they may come either before or after prepositions, as

*Cette maison paroît bien petite de loin.*

This house seems very small at a distance.

*il demeure loin de moi.*

he lives far from me.

### Exercises upon these Adverbs.

Of all 1 the courtiers 2 you are he 3 who 4 approach 5 the nearest the king's 7 person 6.

1 *Tout*, adj. 2 *courtisan*, n. m. 3 *celui*, pron. nom. 4 *qui*, pron. adj. 5 *approcher*, v. 1. 6 *personne*, n. f. 7 *roi*, n. m.

this village 1 is neither 2 too 3 far, nor 4 too near the 5 city of Dublin 5.

1 *village*, n. m. 2 *ni*, conj. 3 *trop*, adv. 4 *ni*, conj. 5 *de la ville de Dublin*.

sometimes 1 what 2 appears 3 handsome 4 at a distance 5,

1 *quelquefois*, adv. 2 *ce qui*, pron. nom. 3 *paroître*, v.

is 6 not so 6 near 7 at hand 7. 5. 4 *beau*, adj. 5. *de loin*.  
 6 *ne l'est pas*. 7 *de près*.  
 near 1 you I study 2, far 3 1 *près de*, 2 *étudier*, v. 1.  
 from 3, you I play 4. 3 *loin de*. 4 *jouer*, v. 1.

### Adverbs of Time.

These adverbs are seven in number, viz.

*Tantôt*, presently, by and by. *Tôt*, soon.  
*demain*, to-morrow. *tard*, late.  
*hier*, yesterday. *matin*, early.  
*aujourd'hui*, to day, this day.

You must observe first, that the four first may be governed by a preposition, as *pour demain*, for to-morrow, &c.

Secondly, that they are placed either before or after the Verb, according as the smoothness of the sentence requires it, as

*Demain je prendrai médecine.* I shall take physick to-mor-  
 row.  
*je vais aujourd'hui à la comé- die.* I shall go this day to the  
 play.

Thirdly, that they must not be placed in the compounds between the auxiliary Verb and participle, as

*Il a fait aujourd'hui beau tems.* It has been fine weather to  
 day.

Fourthly, that the three last may be compared, as *plus tard*, later.

Fifthly, that they may take other adverbs before them, as *il est trop tôt*, it is too soon.

Sixthly, that they must always be placed after the Verb, as *je me lève matin*, I get up early.

### Exercises upon tantôt, demain, hier, and aujourd'hui.

We have enough 1 of them 2 1 *en*, pron. conj. 2 *assez*, adv.  
 for this day. 3 *pour*, prep.  
 I learnt 1 this news 2 since 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *nouvelle*, n.  
 yesterday. f. 3 *depuis*, prep.  
 I keep 1 this pear 2 for to- 1 *garder*, v. 1. 2 *poire*, n. f.  
 morrow.

you put us off r from 2 to-morrow, to another to-morrow 2.

to-morrow I shall go 1 to 2 the play 3 ; and to night 4 I sup 5 abroad 6.

I saw 1 my friend 2 yesterday 3.

I shall speak 1 to him to-morrow.

it has been 1 fine 3 weather 4 to day 2.

1 remettre, v. 4. 2 de demain en demain.

1 aller, v. 1. 2 à, prep. 3 comédie, n. f. 4 ce soir. 5 souper, v. 1. 6 en ville.

1 voir, v. 3. 2 ami, n. m.

1 parler, v. 1.

1 il a fait. 2 aujourd'hui. 3 beau, adj. 4 tems, n. m.

### Exercises upon tôt, tard, and matin.

It is later than I thought 1.

come 1 another 2 time 2 sooner.

I get up 1 every 2 day 2 earlier than you.

it is very 1 late.

did he not embark 1 very early?

it 1 is in vain that 1 you got up early, you shall not set out 2 sooner.

1 Croire, v. 5.

1 venir, v. 2. 2 une autre fois.

1 se lever, v. 1. 2 tous les jours.

1 bien, adv.

1 s'embarquer, v. 1.

1 c'est en vain que. 2 partir, v. 2.

### Adverbs of Quantity.

*Assez*, enough.

*trop*, too much, too.

*peu*, little, few.

*beaucoup*, much, a great deal.

*bien*, very much.

*fort*, much.

*dutout*, at all.

*plus*, more.

*moins*, less.

*autant*, as much.

*tant*, so much.

*presque*, almost.

*Encore*, once more.

*très*, most.

*quelque*, some, little.

*si*, so much.

*aussi*, as much.

*tout*, quite, intirely.

*d'avantage*, over and above, more.

*dumoins*, at least.

*auplus*, at most.

*aumoins*, at least.

*tout-à-fait*, quite.

*Adverbs*

# Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

97

Adverbs of quantity are placed in speech before the adjective and adverb. As to the Verb, if it is single, they come after it; and if it is compounded, they are commonly placed between the auxiliary and participle, altho' they may sometimes be placed after it. This place must even always be given to *d'avantage*. All this will be made plain by the following examples.

*Elle est bien pauvre.*

She is very poor.

*je suis presque entièrement convaincu de mon erreur.*

I am almost entirely convinced of my error.

*j'en ai autant que vous.*

I have as much as you.

*j'ai trop mangé.*

I have eat too much.

*le drap bleu m'a plu d'avantage que le verd.*

the blue cloth has pleased me more than the green.

## Exercises upon these Adverbs.

She is too rich 1 to 2 become 3 your wife 4.

1 Riche, adj. 2 pour, prep. 3 devenir, v. 2. 4 femme, n. f.

we are more 1 than half 1 persuaded 2.

1 plus d'à moitié, 2 persuader, v. 1.

our pond 1 is almost empty 2.

1 étang, n. m. 2 vuide, adj.

I don't know 1 much the governor 2 of the city 3.

1 connoître, v. 5. 2 gouverneur, n. m. 3 ville, n. f.

I write 1 more 2 pages 2 in 3 a day 4, than 5 you do 5 in a week 6.

1 écrire, v. 4. 2 plus de pages. 3 dans, prep. 4 jour, n. m. 5 que vous ne faites. 6 semaine, n. f.

I have read 1 more books 2 than you.

1 lire, v. 4. 2 livre, n. m.

this house 1 is almost entirely 2 destroyed 3.

1 maison, n. f. 2 entièrement, adv. 3 détruire, v. 4.

he is more 1 than half 1 dead 2.

1 plus d'à demi. 2 mourir, v. 2.

I have quite finished 1 my task 2.

1 finir, v. 2. 2 tâche, n. f.

I have 1 ten 2 at most.

1 j'en ai. 2 dix, adj.

we were twenty 1 at least.

1 vingt, adj.

you have a great deal 1 of malice 2, and he has more 3.

1 beaucoup. 2 malice, n. f. 3 d'avantage.



*Adverbs of Distribution.*

*Quelquefois*, sometimes. *jamais*, never, ever.  
*d'autrefois*, at other times. *d'ordinaire*, commonly.  
*souvent*, often. *à l'avenir*, henceforth.  
*toujours*, always, ever.

are the adverbs of *distribution*. *Souvent* may be compared; *jamais* is sometimes joined to the preposition *à*, for; and *toujours* to the preposition *pour*, for.

The adverbs of *distribution* may, in the single tenses, be placed either before or after the Verb; and in the compounds, they are commonly placed between the auxiliary and participle. All this will be made plain by the following Examples.

<i>Venez chez moi le plus souvent</i>	Come to my house as often
<i>que vous pourrez.</i>	as you can.
<i>soyez à jamais heureux.</i>	be for ever happy.
<i>quelquefois je me tais.</i>	I sometimes hold my tongue.
<i>j'écris souvent.</i>	I write often.
<i>j'ai toujours aimé ma sœur.</i>	I have always loved my sister.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

He comes 1 the ofteneft 2	1 <i>Venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>le plus souvent</i> .
with 3 his friends 4.	3 <i>avec</i> , prep. 4 <i>ami</i> , n. m.
let the name 1 of the Lord 2	1 <i>nom</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m.
be for ever glorified 3.	3 <i>glorifier</i> , v. 1.
don't engage yourself 1 for	1 <i>s'engager</i> , v. 1. <i>toujours</i> .
ever 2.	
sometimes I breakfast 1 at 2	1 <i>déjeuner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à neuf</i>
nine o'clock 2.	<i>heures</i> .
I often dine 1 at 2 two	1 <i>diner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à deux heures</i> .
o'clock 2.	
I have always respected 1	1 <i>respecter</i> , v. 1.
him.	
he has never loved 1 his son 2.	1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>fils</i> , n. m.

*Adverbs of Motive.*

These adverbs are *pourquoi*, why; and *à cause*, on account, for the sake, because. The last always takes after it the preposition *de*, or the conjunction *que*, as *je marche à cause de vous*, I walk

I walk for your sake. *Je parle, acause qu'il le faut*, I speak, because it is necessary to do it.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

Why do you endeavour	1 to 2	1. <i>Tâcher</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de</i> , prop.
deceive	3 me	3 <i>tromper</i> , v. 1.
I shall do	1 it on your ac-	1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>à cause de vous</i> .
count	2	2 <i>à cause de</i> , prep.
grant	1 him this favour	1 <i>accorder</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>faveur</i> , n. f.
	2 for	2 <i>à cause de moi</i> , 1 <i>à cause de</i> .
my sake	3	3 <i>solliciter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>juge</i> , n. m.
I wait upon	1 the judges	1 <i>il s'agit de vos intérêts</i> .
	2, because your	2 <i>il s'agit de vos intérêts</i> .
	3 interests	3 <i>dans</i> , prep. 5 <i>cause</i> , n. f.
are concerned	3 in 4 this	4 <i>cause</i> , n. f.
	5	

To rank, *pour le présent*, for the present, *tour à tour*, by turn, *à l'exception*, if we except, *à la bonne heure que*, let us suppose that, and many other such expressions amongst the Adverbs, Prepositions, or Conjunctions, is, methinks, to confound the ideas we ought to have of the parts of speech. *Pour*, in the first example, is a Preposition; *le* an article; and *présent* a noun. It is true that these three words joined together denote a circumstance, and consequently form an adverbial expression; but as children are not commonly able to judge when words joined together, denote or don't denote a circumstance, we ought, in books destined for their use, to leave every part of speech in its respective class.

## OF PREPOSITIONS.

French Prepositions may be divided into seven classes, *viz.* the Prepositions of place, order, union, separation, opposition, end, and specification. Those of the six first classes, being used in the same manner in French as in English, need not be exemplified.

### Prepositions of Place.

These Prepositions are,

*Chez*, in, at, to, amongst.

*dans*, in.

*sous*, under.

*sur*, upon, over.

*devant*, before.

*derrière*, behind.

*parmi*, amongst.

*vers*, towards.

*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

- It is just 1, but 2 it is not  
always 3 true 4, that 5  
every one is 5 master 6 in 7  
his own house 7.
- the consuls 1 had a great 2  
power 3 amongst the Ro-  
mans 4.
- politeness 1 reigns 2 more 3  
in the capital 4 than in the  
provinces 5.
- we imagine 1 that our an-  
tipodes 2 are under us,  
and they perhaps 3 think 4  
that we are under them 5.
- the bottle 1 is upon the ta-  
ble 2.
- docility 1 is a virtue 2, but 3  
the power 4 one 5 gives 5  
over one's self 6 is weak-  
ness 7.
- shall I always have before  
me a hateful 2 object 1 ?
- the ambitious 1 man never 3  
looks 2 behind himself 4.
- there are 1 amongst men 2  
many 3 fools 4.
- it 1 was towards the river 2  
that 3 I saw 4 your bro-  
ther 5.
- 1 *juste*, adj. 2 *mais*, conj.  
3 *toujours*, adv. 4 *vrai*,  
adj. 5 *que* *chacun* *soit*.  
6 *maître*, n. m. 7 *chez* *soi*.
- 1 *consul*, n. m. 2 *grand*, adj.  
3 *pouvoir*, n. m. 4 *Romain*,  
n. m.
- 1 *politesse*, n. f. 2 *regner*, v. 1.  
3 *plus*, adv. 4 *capitale*, n. f.  
5 *province*, n. f.
- 1 *s'imaginer*, v. 1. 2 *antipode*,  
n. m. 3 *peut-être*, adv.  
4 *croire*, v. 5. 5 *eux*, pron.  
nom.
- 1 *bouteille*, n. f. 2 *table*, n. f.
- 1 *docilité*, n. f. 2 *vertu*, n. f.  
3 *mais*, conj. 4 *ascendant*,  
n. m. 5 *qu'on* *donne*. 6 *soi*,  
pron. nom. 7 *faiblesse*, n. f.
- 1 *objet*, n. m. 2 *hassable*, adj.
- 1 *ambitieux*, n. m. 2 *regarder*,  
v. 1. 3 *jamais*, adv. 4 *lui*,  
pron. nom.
- 1 *il y a*. 2 *homme*, n. m.  
3 *plusieurs*, n. m. plur. 4 *soit*,  
n. m.
- 1 *c'est*. 2 *rivière*, n. f. 3 *que*,  
conj. 4 *voir*, v. 3. 5 *frère*,  
n. m.

*Prepositions of Order.*

These Prepositions are

*Avant*, before.

*après*, after.

*entre*, between.

*depuis*, since, from.

*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

- We see 1 nothing 2 now a  
days 3, but 4 what 4 o-
- 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *rien*, n. m.  
3 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 4 *que*.  
thers

thers 5 have seen 5 before us.	5 d'autres n'aient vu.
Noah 1 lived 2 before and after the flood 3.	1 Noé, n. m. 2 vivre, v. 4.
we are between hope 1 and fear 2.	3 déluge, n. m.
some 1 books 2 are 3 from the beginning to the end, nothing but 3 a heap 4 of errors 5.	1 espérance, n. f. 2 crainte, n. f.
	1 quelque, adj. 2 livre, n. m.
	3 ne font depuis un bout jusqu'à l'autre que. 4 tissu, n. m. 5 erreur, n. f.

*Prepositions of Union.*

These Prepositions are

<i>Avec</i> , with.	<i>outre</i> , besides.
<i>selon</i> , according to.	<i>durant</i> , during.
<i>suivant</i> , according to.	<i>pendant</i> , during.
<i>par</i> , upon, by.	

*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

The great 1 travel 2 with numerous 3 attendants 3.	1 Grand, n. m. 2 voyager, v.
a good 1 Christian 2 ought 3 to live 4 according to the maxims 5 of the gospel 6.	1. 3 un nombreux cortège 3.
we must 1 distrust 2 those who swear 3 easily 4 upon 5 what 6 is most sacred 6.	1 bon, adj. 2 Chrétien, n. m.
we may displease 1 by 2 our good qualities 3, and please 4 by our bad 5 ones.	3 devoir, v. 3. 4 vivre, v.
how much 1 have you to spend 2 every 3 day 3?	4. 5 maxime, n. f. 6 évangile, n. m.
to 1 succeed 2 at court 3, besides 4 merit, one must have 4 a powerful 4 protection 5.	1 devoir, v. 3. 2 se miser, v.
the enemies 1 have 2 remained 2 in 3 their camp 4.	1. 3 jurer, v. 1. 4 aisément, adv. 5 par. 6 ce qu'il y a de plus sacré.
	1 nous pouvons déplaire. 2 par. 3 qualité, n. f. plaire, v.
	5. 5 mauvais, adj.
	1 combien, adv. 2 dépenser, v.
	1. 3 par jour.
	1 pour, prep. 2. réussir, v. 2.
	3 à la cour. 4 il faut, outre le mérite. 4 puissant, adj. 5 protection, n. f.
	1 ennemi, n. m. 2 sont demeurés. 3 dans, prep. 4 camp, during



during 5 the campaign 6.

the ant 1 makes 2 during 3  
the summer 4, the provi-  
sions 5 she wants 6 during  
the winter 7.

n. m. 5 *durant*. 6 *campagne*, n. f.

1 *fourmi*, n. f. 2 *faire*, v. 5.

3 *pendant*. 4 *été*, n. m.

5 *provision*, n. f. 6 *avoir*  
*besoin*. 7 *hiver*, n. m.

### Prepositions of Separation.

*Sans*, without.

*excepté*, except, save.

are the prepositions of separation.

*hors*, except.

*bormis*, except.

### Exercises upon these Prepositions.

People 1 of quality 2 seldom 3  
go out 3 without 4 a ser-  
vant 4.

a woman 1 may 2 please 3  
without beauty 4 and  
without sense 5.

all 1 is conjectural 2, ex-  
cept 3 the geometrical 5  
demonstrations 4.

the law 1 of Mahomet per-  
mits 2 every 3 thing 3,  
except 4 wine 5.

except 1 you, all 2 is indif-  
ferent 3 to me.

1 *gens*, plur. n. m. 2 *distinction*,  
n. f. 3 *ne sortent guerres*.  
4 *sans domestique*.

1 *femme*, n. f. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3.  
3 *plaire*, v. 5. 4 *beauté*, n. f.  
5 *raison*, n. f.

1 *tout*, n. m. 2 *conjectural*, adj.  
3 *excepté*. 4 *démonstration*,  
n. f. 5 *géométrique*, adj.

1 *loi*, n. f. 2 *permettre*, v. 4.  
3 *tout*, n. m. 4 *hors*. 5 *vin*,  
n. m.

1 *bormis*. 2 *tout*. 3 *indifferent*,  
adj.

### Prepositions of Opposition.

*Contre*, against.

*malgré*, in spite of.

are the prepositions of opposition.

*nonobstant*, notwithstanding.

### Exercises upon these Prepositions.

The honest 1 man 2 don't  
speak 3 against the truth 4.  
in spite of my 1 care 1, I have  
lost 2 my law-suit 3.

the wicked 1 does not re-  
spect 2 the churches 3; he

1 *honnête*, adj. 2 *homme*, n. m.  
3 *parler*, v. 1. 4 *vérité*, n. f.

1 *mes soins*. 2 *perdre*, v. 4.  
3 *procès*, n. m.

1 *méchant*, n. m. 2 *respecter*,  
v. 1. 3 *église*, n. f. 4 *com-*  
*mitte*

commits 4 wickedness 5  
therein 6, notwithstanding  
the sacredness 7 of those  
places 8.

mettre, v. 4. 5 crime, n. m.  
6, pron. conj. 7 sainteté,  
n. f. 8 lieu, plur. lieux,  
n. m.

### Prepositions of End.

*Envers*, towards.  
*touchant*, about  
are the prepositions of end.

*pour*, for.

### Exercises upon these prepositions.

Good 1 education 2 teaches 3  
how 4 to behave 4 towards  
every body 5.  
what 1 have you wrote 2  
about religion 3?  
I am come 1 to 2 see you 2.  
he passes 1 for the eldest 2.

1 bon, ne, adj. 2 éducation, n. f.  
3 enseigner, v. 1. 4 à sabbien  
comporter. 5 tout le monde.  
1 que, pron. nom. 2 écrire,  
v. 1. 3 religion, n. f.  
1 venir, v. 2. 2 pour vous  
voir.  
1 passer, v. 1. 2 aîné, n. m.

### Prepositions of Specification.

These prepositions are *à*, *de*, and *en*. To shew all their different uses is not a very easy matter; they are sometimes englished by a preposition and sometimes without. I shall treat here of each of them separately, taking care to exemplify them, before I give exercises upon them.

#### The preposition *à* englished without a preposition.

Un lit à colonnes.  
un pays à pâturages.  
un moulin à poudre.  
une arme à feu.  
une figure à genou.  
une fille à marier.  
aller à grands pas.  
un bonnet à la Turque.  
un pot à l'eau.

a four posted bed.  
a pasture country.  
a powder mill.  
a fire arm.  
a kneeling figure.  
a marriageable girl.  
to walk very fast.  
a Turkish bonnet.  
a water-pot.

## Exercifes.

England 1 is a corn 3 coun-  
try 2.

I have bought 1 this morn-  
ing 2 some tea 4 spoons 3.  
hand 2 mills 1 are very use-  
ful 3.

it is 1 a difpute 2 never 3 to  
be ended 3.

I have lent 1 him two 2  
Chinefe 4 defigns 3.

do you love 1 the onion 3  
affance 2 &c.

where have you put 2 the  
ink 4 bottle 3?

1 *Angleterre*, n. f. 2 *pays*,  
n. m. 3 *bled*, n. m.

1 *acheter*, v. 1. 2 *matin*, n. m.  
3 *cuillere*, n. f. 4 *thé*, n. m.

1 *moulin*, n. m. 2 *bras*, n. m.  
3 *utile*, adj.

1 *c'est*. 2 *diffute*, n. f. 3 *à ne  
jamais finir*.

1 *prêter*, v. 1. 2 *deux*, adj.  
3 *deffein*, n. m. 4 *Cbinois*,  
adj.

1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *saute*, n. f.  
3 *ognon*, n. m.

1 *où*, adv. 2 *mettre*, v. 4.  
3 *bouteille*, n. f. 4 *encre*, n. f.

à englished by to.

*Chambres à louer.*

*bois à couper.*

*bon à manger.*

*vendre à l'enchere.*

Rooms to let.

wood to cut down.

good to eat.

to sell to the best bidder.

## Exercifes.

There is 1 a house 2 to be  
sold 3 in 4 our street 5.

he is disposed 1 to serve 2  
you.

I shall go 1 soon 2 to my  
country-house 3.

4 *il y a*. 2 *maison*, n. f. 3 *à  
vendre*. 4 *dans*, prep. 5 *rue*,  
n. f.

1 *disposer*, v. 1. 2 *servir*, v. 2.

1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *bientôt*, adv.  
3 *maison de campagne*.

à englished by for.

*Un carrosse à six places.*

*crier à l'aide.*

A coach for six people.

to cry for help.

## Exercifes.

There is 1 in 2 this inn 3 a  
stable 4 for thirty 5 horses 6.

1 *il y a*. 2 *dans*, prep. 3 *auberge*,  
n. f. 4 *écurie*, n. f. 5 *trenté*,  
adj. und. *cheval*, plur.  
*aux*, n. m.

we

we keep 1 a table 2 for twenty 3 people 4. 1 *tenir*, v. 2. 2 *table*, n. f. 3 *vingt*, adj. und. 4 *couvert*, n. m.

*à englished by after.*

*Pardonner à l'Italienne.* to forgive after the Italian manner.

*vivre à l'Angloise.* to live after the English way.

*Exercises.*

I have ordered 1 my taylor 2 to 3 make 4 me a cap 5 after 6 the Turkish manner 6. 1 *ordonner*, v. 1. 2 *à mon tailleur*. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *faire*, v. 5. 5 *bonnet*, n. m. 6 *à la Turque*.

they live 1 after 2 the French way 2. 1 *vivre*, v. 4. 2 *à la Française*.

*à englished by on.*

*Route à droite.* Road on the right.

*une maison à gauche.* a house on the left.

*Exercises.*

To 1 go 2 to Putney, you 3 must take 3 the road 4 on the left 5. 1 *pour*, prep. 2 *aller*, v. 1. 3 *il faut prendre*. 4 *chemin*, n. m. 5 *à gauche*.

go 1 strait along 1 and turn 2 on the right 3. 1 *allez tout droit*. 2 *tourner*, v. 1. 3 *à droite*.

*à englished by at.*

*Il est à Oxford.* he is at Oxford.

*demeurez vous à Cambrige ?* do you live at Cambridge ?

*Exercises.*

The scene 1 is at Paris. 1 *Scene*, n. f.

I have staid 1 six months 2 at Lyons 3. 1 *demeurer*, v. 1. 2 *six mois*. 3 *Lyons*, n. m.

where 1 did he end 2 his 3 days 3 ? at Rome. 1 *où*, adv. 2 *finir*, v. 2. 3 *ses jours*.

*à englished*



à englished by with.

Une table à tiroirs.

A table with drawers.

une canne à lorgnette.

a cane with a spying-glass.

## Exercises.

I have a cap 1 with 2 a plume  
of feathers on it 2.

1 bonnet, n. m. 2 à aigrette.

why 1 do you despise 2 my  
house 3; it is 4 a house  
with 5 a yard, inner yard  
and a garden 5.1 pourquoi, adv. 2 mépriser,  
v. 1. 3 maison, n. f. 4 cest.  
5 à cour, basse cour & jar-  
din.

à englished by in.

Un procureur à la cour du banc  
du roi.an attorney in the court of  
king's bench.

un chapeau à la mode.

a hat in the mode.

## Exercises.

My sister 1 is married 2 to 3  
Mr. Durel, a 4 counsel-  
lor in the court of king's  
bench 4.1 Soeur, n. f. 2 marier, v. 1.  
3 à, prep. 4 avocat à la  
cour du banc du roi.all 1 my cloaths 2 are in the  
mode 3.1 tout, plur. tous, adj. 2 habit,  
n. m. 3 mode, n. f.

à englished by the preposition by.

Deux à deux.

Two by two.

pas à pas.

step by step.

## Exercises.

We went 1 to 2 meet him 2,  
walking 3 two by two.1 aller, v. 1. 2 au devant de  
lui. 3 marcher, v. 1.I shall follow 1 you step by  
step.

1 suivre, v. 4.

The preposition de englished without a preposition.

Quelque chose de bon.  
rien de mauvais.Something good.  
nothing bad.

Exercisi,

## Exercises.

- He has always 1 something 2  
wonderful 3 to 4 tell us 4. 1 *Toujours*, adv. 2 *quelque*  
*chose*, pron. nom. 3 *mer-*  
*veilleux*, adj. 4 *à nous*  
*dire*.
- is there 1 any 2 one 2 wife 3 1 *y a-t-il*. 2 *quelqu'un*, pron.  
amongst 4 them? nom. 3 *sage*, adj. 4 *parmi*,  
prep.
- have you nothing 1 good 2 1 *rien*, pron. nom. 2 *bon*,  
to tell us? adj.
- this room 1 is five 2 foot 2 1 *chambre*, n. f. 2 *de cinq*  
longer 3 than the other 4 *pieds*. 3 *long*, ne, adj. 4 *autre*,  
adj.
- he is more 1 than half 1 1 *plus d'à demi*. 2 *mourir*, v. 2.  
dead 2.

## De englished by the preposition by.

*Voyager de nuit.*

To travel by night.

*plus grand d'un pouce.*

taller by an inch.

## Exercises.

- I am shorter 2 than he by 1 1 *Moins grand*. 2 *de deux*  
two inches 1. *pouces*.
- I love 1 to 2 travel by night. 1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep.

## De englished by with.

*Donner de mauvaise grace.*

To give with a bad grace.

*courir de toutes ses forces.*

to run with all one's might.

## Exercises.

- Do 1 these things 2 with a 1 *Faire*, v. 5. 2 *chose*, n. f.  
good 3 grace 4. 3 *bon*, ne, adj. 4 *grace*, n. f.
- why 1 do you point at 2 me 1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *montrer*,  
with 3 your hand 3? v. 1. 3 *de la main*.
- he has had the impudence 1 1 *impudence*, n. f. 2 *de*, prep.  
to 2 strike 3 me with 4 3 *frapper*, v. 1. 4 *de sa*  
his cane 4. *cane*, n. f.
- I beckoned 1 him with 2 my 1 *faire signe*, v. 5. 2 *de la*  
head 2. *tête*.

*De englished by for.*

*Mourir de chagrin.*

To die for grief.

*crier de peur.*

to cry for fear.

*Exercises.*

If 1 you fall 2 sick 3, I shall  
die 4 for grief.

1 *Si*, conj. 2 *tomber*, v. 1.

3 *malade*, adj. 4 *mourir*, v. 2.

I thought 1 that 2 he was  
willing 3 to strike 4 me,  
and I cried for fear.

1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *que*, conj.

3 *vouloir*, v. 3. 4 *frapper*,  
v. 1.

*De englished by out of and from.*

*Briser de dépit.*

To break out of spite.

*d'un bout à l'autre.*

from one end to the other.

*du bien au mal.*

from good to evil.

*Exercises.*

He has broke all 1 my china 2  
out of spite.

1 *Tout*, adj. 2 *porcelaine*, n. f.

I have read 1 your book 2  
from one end to the other.

1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *livre*, n. m.

our ambassador 1 is come  
back 2 from Rome.

1 *ambassadeur*, n. m. 2 *rev-*  
*nir*, v. 2.

when 1 will your sister 2  
return 3 from her country-  
house 4?

1 *quand*, adv. 2 *sœur*, n. f.

3 *revenir*, v. 2. 4 *maison*  
*de campagne*.

*De englished by of.*

*Envie de plaire.*

Desire of pleasing.

*besoin de manger.*

want of eating.

*Exercises.*

The king 1 has formed 2 the  
design 3 of making 4 wars  
against 6 the French 6.

1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *former*, v. 1.

3 *dessein*, n. m. 4 *faire*, v. 5.

5 *guerre*, n. f. 6 *aux*  
*François*.

I have a great 1 desire 2 of  
travelling 3.

1 *grand*, adj. 2 *désir*, n. m.

3 *voyager*, v. 1.

he has the art 1 of pleasing 2  
every 3 body 3.

1 *art*, n. m. 2 *plaire à*, v. 5.

3 *tout le monde*.

*The*

*The Preposition en englished without a Preposition.*

<i>Une femme en couche.</i>	A lying-in woman.
<i>un bonnet en broderie.</i>	an embroidered cap.
<i>une cheminée en marbre.</i>	a marble chimney.
<i>un maître en fait d'armes.</i>	a fencing master.
<i>une carpe en étuvée.</i>	a stewed carp.
<i>un ornement en or.</i>	a gold ornament.

*Exercises.*

We have bought 1 a 2	1 <i>Acheter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>une tenture</i>
damask suit of hangings 2.	<i>en damas</i> .
there are 1 twelve 2 marble	1 <i>il y a</i> . 2 <i>doux</i> , adj. und.
chimneys in 3 my new 4	3 <i>dans</i> , prep. 4 <i>nouvelle</i>
house 4.	<i>maison</i> .
is the fencing-master come 1 ?	1 <i>venir</i> , v. 2.
do you love 1 stewed carps ?	1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1.

*En englished by the Preposition in.*

<i>Un mot en usage.</i>	A word in use.
<i>une vigne en fleur.</i>	a vine in blossom.
<i>une troupe en quatre colonnes.</i>	a troop in four columns.
<i>un ouvrage en six volumes.</i>	a work in six volumes.
<i>un pied en longueur.</i>	a foot in length.
<i>un magistrat en robe.</i>	a magistrate in his robes.

*Exercises.*

You have revived 1 words 2	1 <i>Faire revivre</i> , v. 5. 4.
that 3 were no 4 more 4	<i>mot</i> , n. m. 3 <i>qui</i> , pron.
in use 5.	4 <i>plus</i> , adv. 5 <i>usage</i> , n. m.
I saw 1 yesterday 2 many 3	1 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>hier</i> , adv.
apple-trees 4 in blossom.	3 <i>plusieurs</i> , adj. plur. 4 <i>pom-</i>
he has composed 1 a comedy 2	<i>mier</i> , n. m.
in five 3 acts 4.	1 <i>composer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>comédie</i> ,
	n. f. 3 <i>cing</i> , adj. und.
this table 1 is two 2 foot 3	4 <i>acte</i> , n. m.
in length and a foot and a	1 <i>table</i> , n. f. 2 <i>deux</i> , adj. und.
half 4 in breadth 5.	3 <i>pied</i> , n. m. 4 <i>demi</i> , adj.
he is a doctor 1 in divinity.	5 <i>largeur</i> , n. f.
	1 <i>docteur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>théologie</i> ,
	n. f. En



*En englished by as and like.*

*Se conduire en étourdi.*

*penfer en Anglois.*

*se comporter en bonnête homme.*

To behave as a rash man.

to think as an English-man.

to behave like an honest man.

*Exercifes.*

Go 1 to war 2 and behave  
like a man 3 of courage 4.

what 1 opinion 2 can 3 one  
have of a man who 4 be-  
haves every where 5 like a  
fool 6 ?

1 *Aller*, v. 1. 2 *guerre*, n. f.  
3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *courage*,  
n. m.

1 *quel*, pron. adj. 2 *opinion*,  
n. f. 3 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 4 *qui*,  
pron. 5 *partout*, adv. 6 *in-  
sensé*, n. m.

*En englished by into.*

*Traduire en François.*

To translate into French.

*Exercifes.*

The Bible 1 has been trans-  
lated 2 into Welch 3.

the Septuagint 1 have trans-  
lated the Holy 2 Bible 3  
into Greek 4.

1 *Bible*, n. f. 2 *traduire*, v. 4.  
3 *Gallois*, n. m.

1 *les Septante*. 2 *saint*, adj.  
3 *Grec*, n. m.

*En before the French participle active.*

*Tomber en courant.*

*se sauver en fuyant.*

*reuer en dormant.*

To fall as one runs.

to make one's escape by run-  
ning away.

to dream in one's sleep.

*Exercifes.*

I dream every 1 night 1 in 2  
my sleep 2, but 3 you  
dream, when 4 you are  
awake 4.

I love 1 to read 2, as 3 I  
dine 3.

you may 1 tell 2 me your  
reason 3, as 4 you go 4.

1 *Toutes les nuits*. 2 *en dor-  
mant*. 3 *mais*, conj. 4 *en  
veillant*.

1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *à lire*. 3 *en  
dinant*.

1 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 2 *dire*, v. 4.  
3 *raison*, n. f. 4 *en mar-  
chant*.

in

in 1 speaking thus 1, she wept 2 bitterly 3.	1 <i>en parlant ainsi</i> . 2 <i>pleurer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>amerement</i> , adv.
will you tell me her history 1, when 2 we go away 2?	1 <i>histoire</i> , n. f. 2 <i>en nous en allant</i> .
he caught cold 1, when 2 he bathed himself 2.	1 <i>s'enrhumer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>en se baignant</i> .
I have lost 1 my handkerchief 2, as 3 I was coming 3.	1 <i>perdre</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>mouchoir</i> , n. m. 3 <i>en venant</i> .
I have improved 1 by 2 my studies 2.	1 <i>faire des progrès</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>en étudiant</i> .
he was very 1 much 1 surprised 2 to 3 see me again 3.	1 <i>bien</i> , adv. 2 <i>surprendre</i> , v. 6. 3 <i>en me revoyant</i> .

## OF CONJUNCTIONS.

We have about fifty three Conjunctions, which may be divided into conjunctions copulative, augmentative, alternative, hypothetical, adversative, extensive, periodical, motivational, conclusive, explicative, transitive, and conductive.

### Conjunctions Copulative.

These Conjunctions are *et*, and; and *ni*, nor, neither. The last is always repeated in the sentence, and the first is never multiplied but when it is placed at the head of a sentence, as

*David était roi & prophete.*

David was a king and a prophet.

*et le pere, & la mere, & le fils, & la fille, & tous les parens sont riches.*

the father, the mother, the son, the daughter, and all the relations are rich.

*vous n'avez ni amis, ni ennemis.*

you have neither friends, nor foes.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

His father 1 and mother 2 have forsook 3 him. correct 1 thy son 2, and he shall give 3 thee rest 4.

1 *Pere*, n. m. 2 *mere*, n. f. 3 *abandonner*, v. 1. 4 *corriger*, v. 1. 2 *fil*, n. m. 3 *donner*, v. 1. 4 *repos*, n. m. one

one 1 generation 2 passes  
away 3, and another 4 ge-  
neration cometh 5, but 6  
the earth 7 abideth 8 for  
ever 9.

his friends 1 and foes 2 laugh  
at 3 him.

his 1 brothers 1, sisters 2,  
cousins 3, and all 4 his  
relations 5, are indifferent 6  
to him.

neither beauty 1 nor money 2  
moves 3 you.

he has neither vice 1 nor vir-  
tue 2.

1 *un*, adj. 2 *génération*, n. f.  
3 *passer*, v. 1. 4 *autre*, adj.  
5 *venir*, v. 2. 6 *mais*, conj.  
7 *terre*, n. f. 8 *demeurer*,  
v. 1. 9 *pour toujours*.

1 *Et ses amis*. 2 *ennemi*, n. m.  
3 *se moquer de*, v. 1.

1 *Et ses frères*. 2 *soeur*, n. f.  
3 *cousin*, n. m. 4 *tout*, plur. *tous*,  
adj. 5 *parent*, plur. *ens*, n. m.  
6 *indifférent*, plur. *ens*, adj.

1 *beauté*, n. f. 2 *argent*, n. m.  
3 *toucher*, v. 1.

1 *vice*, n. m. 2 *vertu*, n. f.

### Conjunctions Augmentative.

These Conjunctions are *deplus*, besides; and *d'ailleurs*, besides, otherwise; both of which may sometimes be placed after the Verb, but commonly appear at the head of the words they connect with those that precede, as

*Il l'a beaucoup loué; deplus il  
l'a récompensé.*

*Tous vos amis vous en prient;  
d'ailleurs votre honneur y est  
intéressé.*

*C'est un avaré, qui a d'ailleurs  
quelques bonnes qualités.*

He has praised him much;  
besides he has rewarded  
him.

all your friends beg it of you;  
besides your honour is con-  
cerned therein.

he is a covetous man, but  
has otherwise some good  
qualities.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

You have beauty 1, wit 2,  
learning 3; besides you  
are of a good 4 family 5;  
with 6 all 7 these advan-  
tages 8 you 9 cannot well  
miss making 9 your for-  
tune 10.

he fell in a passion 1; again 2  
him without 3 reason 4;  
besides he struck 5 him.

1 *Beauté*, n. f. 2 *esprit*, n. m.  
3 *savoir*, n. m. 4 *bon*, ne,  
adj. 5 *famille*, n. f.  
6 *avec*, prep. 7 *tout*, plur.  
8 *avec*, prep. 9 *avantage*, n. m.  
10 *fortune*, n. f.

1 *s'emporter*, v. 1. 2 *contre*,  
prep. 3 *sans*, prep. 4 *raison*,  
n. f. 5 *frapper*, v. 1.

he

he is a blunt 2 man 1, but 3 1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *brusque*, adj.  
 otherwise has a 4 great 3 *qui*, pron. 4 *beaucoup*,  
 deal 4 of probity 5. adv. 5 *probité*. n. f.

### Conjunctions Alternate.

These Conjunctions are *ou*, or; *sinon*, else, or otherwise;  
 and *tantôt*, sometimes. As they answer almost in every  
 respect to their English, it seems to me needless to exemplify  
 them.

#### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

Grant 1 me this favour 2, or 1 *Accorder*, v. 1. 2 *faveur*,  
 refuse 3 it me quickly 4. n. f. 3 *refuser*, v. 1.  
 4 *promptement*, adv.  
 come 1 to day 2, or don't 1 *venir*, v. 2. 2 *aujourd'hui*,  
 come at all 3. adv. 3 *dutout*, adv.  
 tell 1 me yes 2, or no 3. 1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *oui*, adv.  
 3 *non*, adv.  
 obey 1, otherwise you shall 1 *obéir*, v. 2. 2 *punir*, v. 2.  
 be punished 2.  
 sometimes he loads 1 me 1 *accabler*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep.  
 with 2 caresses 3, and some- 3 *caresse*, n. f. 4 *parler*,  
 times he won't speak 4 v. 1.  
 to me.

### Hypothetical Conjunctions.

These conjunctions are

*Si*, if, whether. *pourvu*, provided.  
*quand*, when. *amoin*, unless.  
*soit*, whether. *sauf*, with this proviso.

They must always be placed at the head of what they  
 join; the two first govern the indicative; the three following  
 the conjunctive, with the conjunction *que*; and the last the  
 infinitive, with the preposition *à*, as

*Je verrai la princesse, si elle* I shall see the princess, if she  
*vient ici.* comes here.  
*je le ferois, quand même vous* I would do it, if even you  
*vous y opposeriez.* was to oppose it.  
*j'irai à l'ennemi, pourvu que* I shall go to the enemy, pro-  
*vous me montriez l'exemple.* vided you shew me the  
 example.



*il promet tout, sauf à faire ses exceptions.*

he promised all, with this proviso that he might make his exceptions.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

Our soldiers 1 will be courageous 2, if 3 they be well commanded 4.

we don't know 1 whether 2 we are just 3 before 4 God 5.

I would serve 1 him, if 2 even 3 he would 4 not, whether 1 it be 1 reason 2, or 3 whim 4, she loves 5 him.

I shall always 1 be a 2 philosopher 2, whether 3 fortune 4 smiles 5 on 6 me 6 or 7 not 7.

they will act 1, provided 2 they are paid 3.

you will never 1 obtain 2 what 3 you desire 4 of him 5, unless 6 you speak 7 to him before 8 witnesses 9.

I promise 1 to you to come 2 to 3 your house 3, unless 4 an unforeseen accident happens 4.

I grant 1 all 2 for 3 the present, with 4 this proviso 4, that I shall make 4 my exceptions 6 afterwards 5.

1 Soldat, n. m. 2 courageux, adj. 3 si, conj. 4 commander, v.

1 savoir, v. 3. 2 si, 3 juste, adj. 4 devant, prep. 5 Dieu, n. m.

1 servir, v. 2. 2 quand, 3 même, adv. 4 vouloir, v. 3. 1 soit, 2 raison, n. f. 3 soit.

4 caprice, n. m. 5 aimer, v.

1 toujours, adv. 2 philosophe, n. m. 3 soit que, 4 fortune, n. f. 5 rire, v. 4. 6 me, conj. pron. 7 ou non.

1 agir, v. 2. 2 pourvu que, 3 payer, v. 1.

1 jamais, adv. 2 obtenir, v. 2. 3 ce que, pron. 4 souhaiter, v. 1. 5 de lui, 6 à moins que, 7 parler, v. 1. 8 devant, prep. 9 témoin, n. m.

1 promettre, v. 4. 2 se rendre, v. 6. 3 chez vous, 4 à moins qu'un accident imprévu n'arrive.

1 accorder, v. 1. 2 tout, n. m. 3 pour le présent. 4 sans faire, 5 ensuite, 6 exception, n. f.

*Conjunctions Adversative.*

These conjunctions are  
*Quoique, altho'.*  
*bienque, altho'.*  
*mais, but.*  
*cependant, nevertheless.*

*pourtant, however, &c.*  
*néanmoins, however, &c.*  
*toutefois, however, &c.*

The

The two first govern the conjunctive; the third must be placed at the head of the phrase it joins to the foregoing one; and the others may come either at the head of the phrase they join, or after the verb, or between the auxiliary and participle passive, as

<i>Il n'est point malheureux, bien qu'il soit pauvre.</i>	He is not unhappy, tho' he is poor.
<i>cet ouvrage est long, mais il est nécessaire.</i>	this work is long, but it is necessary.
<i>Lucinde a de l'esprit; cependant elle me déplaît.</i>	Lucinda is witty; nevertheless she displeases me.
<i>on vous blame; vous avez pourtant raison.</i>	you are blamed; nevertheless you are in the right.
<i>il a toutefois réussi.</i>	he has however succeeded.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

He is very poor 1, altho' 2 his relations 3 are very rich 4.	1 <i>pauvre</i> , adj. 2 <i>quoique</i> . 3 <i>parent</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , n. m. 4 <i>riche</i> , adj.
you are not happy 1, tho' 2 you are rich.	1 <i>heureux</i> , adj. 2 <i>bienque</i> .
this work 1 will perhaps 2 be a little 3 dry 4, but it will be useful 5.	1 <i>ouvrage</i> , n. m. 2 <i>peut-être</i> , adv. 3 <i>un peu</i> . 4 <i>sec</i> , adj. 5 <i>utile</i> , adj.
he is rich, nevertheless 1 he borrows 2 from 3 every 4 body 4.	1 <i>cependant</i> . 2 <i>emprunter</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>de</i> , prep. 4 <i>tout le monde</i> .
altho' he speaks 1 well 2, he however 3 persuades 4 no body 5.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv. 3 <i>pourtant</i> . 4 <i>persuader</i> , v. L. 5 <i>personne</i> , pron. nom.
there are 1 bad 2 books 3 which 4 however 6 amuse 5 the reader 7.	1 <i>il y a</i> . 2 <i>mauvais</i> , adj. 3 <i>livre</i> , n. m. 4 <i>qui</i> , pron. 5 <i>amuser</i> , v. 1. 6 <i>néanmoins</i> . 7 <i>lecteur</i> , n. m.
Damon has all 1 his life-time 1 been the sport 2 of passions 3; however 4 he 5 knew how 5 to overcome 6 that 7 of gaming 8.	1 <i>toute sa vie</i> . 2 <i>jouet</i> , n. m. 3 <i>passion</i> , n. f. 4 <i>toutefois</i> . 5 <i>il sut</i> . 6 <i>vaincre</i> , v. 6. 7 <i>celle</i> , pron. 8 <i>jeu</i> , n. m.

Con-

# EXERCISES upon the Conjunctions Extensive.

These conjunctions are

*Jusque*, to, even to.

*encore*, and yet.

*aussi*, also.

*même*, even.

*tant*, both.

*nonplus*, neither, no more.

*enfin*, in a word.

As these and the remaining Conjunctions, except *que*, answer almost in every respect to their English, I shall not lose my time in exemplifying them.

## Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

He has drank 1 the cup 2

to 3 the very dregs 3.

he 1 suffered himself to be in-  
treated for a long while 1;

and 2 yet 2 he 3 did it  
with 3 a 4 bad grace 4.

the enemies 1 have retired 2

in 3 disorder 4; they have

also 5 abandoned 6 their

artillery 7.

you ask for 1 it; I ask for it  
also 2.

he passes 1 for 2 a selfish 2,

even 3 for 4 a roguish

man 4.

she is 1 a lady 2 that 3

pleases 4 every body 5,

both 6 women and men 6.

you have not found 1 the

master 2, nor 3 the ser-

vant 4 neither 5.

you have not understood 1

my meaning 2 no more 3

than 4 he 4.

Lucinda 1 is lively 2, witty 3,

generous 4, in 5 a word 5

she possesses 6 all 7 sorts

of good qualities 7.

1 *Boire*, v. 5. 2 *calice*, n. m.

3 *jusqu' à la lie*.

1 *il a été longtemps à se faire pri-*

*er*. 2 *encore*. 3 *ne l'a-t-il*

*fait que de* 4 *mauvaise*

*grace*.

1 *ennemi*, n. m. 2 *retirer*, v. 1.

3 *en*, prep. 4 *disordre*, n. m.

5 *aussi*. 6 *abandonner*, v. 1.

7 *artillerie*, n. f.

1 *demander*, v. 1. 2 *aussi*.

1 *passer*, v. 1. 2 *pour intéressé*.

3 *même*. 4 *pour fripon*.

1 *c'est*. 2 *dame*, n. f. 3 *qui*,

pron. 4 *plaire à*, v. 5.

5 *tout le monde*. 6 *tant aux*

*femmes qu'aux hommes*.

1 *trouver*, v. 1. 2 *maître*, n. m.

3 *ni*, conj. 4 *domestique*,

n. m. 5 *nonplus*.

1 *comprendre*, v. 6. 2 *penser*,

n. f. 3 *nonplus*. 4 *que lui*.

1 *Lucinde*, n. f. 2 *enjoué*, adj.

3 *spirituel*, le, adj. 4 *géné-*

*reux*, euse, adj. 5 *enfin*.

6 *posséder*, v. 1. 7 *toutes*

*sortes de bonnes qualités*.

*Periodical*



*Periodical Conjunctions.*

These Conjunctions are

*Lorsque*, when.

*quand*, when.

*dèsque*, as soon as, when.

*tandis*que, whilst.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

You will obtain 1 favours 2, when 3 the prime-minister 4 will ask 5 them for 6 you.

don't fail 1 to 2 come 3, when 4 I 5 shall send for you 5.

you shall learn 1 two 2 fables 3, as soon as 4 you 5 have done writing 5.

who 1 can 2 refuse 3, when 4 a king 5 requests 6 ?

one must 1 strike 2 the iron 3 whilst 4 it is hot 5.

1 *Obtenir*, v. 2. 2 *grace*, n. f. 3 *lorsque*. 4 *le premier-ministre*. 5 *demandeur*, v. 1. 6 *pour*, prep.

1 *manquer*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *venir*, v. 2. 4 *quand*. 5 *je vous enverrai chercher*.

1 *apprendre*, v. 6. 2 *deux*, adj. 3 *fable*, n. f. 4 *dèsque*. 5 *vous aurez fini d'écrire*.

1 *qui*, pron. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 3 *refuser*, v. 1. 4 *dèsque*. 5 *roi*, n. m. 6 *demandeur*, v. 1.

1 *il faut*. 2 *battre*, v. 4. 3 *fer*, n. m. 4 *tandis*que. 5 *chaud*, adj.

*Motival Conjunctions.*

These Conjunctions are

*Parceque*, because.

*puisque*, since.

*car*, for.

*d'autant*que, since.

*comme*, since.

*aussi*, by reason of.

*attendu*, for the sake of.

*afin*, that.

the last whereof govern the conjunctive, with the Conjunction *que*, and the infinitive with the preposition *de*.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

We 1 must forgive 1 our enemies 2, because 3 God 4 bids 5 us so to do 5.

Il faut pardonner à. 2 ennemi, n. m. 3 *parceque*. 4 Dieu, n. m. 5 nous l'ordonne.



we shall leave 1 you alone 2,  
since 3 you don't like 4  
our company 5.

all 1 men 2 are mad 3, for 4  
they all endeavour 5 to 6  
make themselves 6 un-  
happy 7.

they will certainly 2 surren-  
der 1, since 3 the conquere-  
ror 4 is full 5 of mercy 6.

since 1 we can 2 be attack-  
ed 3, let 4 us be upon our  
guards 5.

she has recommended 1 this  
affair 2 to me, by 3 rea-  
son of its being 3 of the  
utmost 4 importance 5 to 6  
her.

they have travelled 1 all 2  
night 2 for 3 the sake of  
the moon 3.

for 1 conveniency's sake 1,  
set out 2 to-morrow 3.

let us set out quickly 1, that 2  
we may arrive 2 before 3  
the others 4.

let us do 1 our duty 2, that 3  
no body 4 may have  
reason 4 to 5 blame us 5.

1 *laisser*, v. 1. 2 *seul*, adj.

3 *puisque*, 4 *aimer*, v. 1.

5 *compagnie*, n. f.

1 *tout*, plur. *tous*, adj.

2 *homme*, n. m. 3 *fou*, plur.

*foux*, adj. 4 *car*. 5 *tâcher*,

v. 1. 6 *de se rendre*, v. 6

7 *malheureux*, adj.

1 *se rendre*, v. 2 *jurement*,

adv. 3 *d'autant que*. 4 *vain-*

*queur*, n. m. 5 *plein*, adj.

6 *clémence*, n. f.

1 *comme*. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3.

attaquer, v. 1. 4 *tenons*

*nous sur nos gardes*.

1 *recommander*, v. 1. 2 *af-*

*faire*, n. f. 3 *aussi est-elle*.

4 *dernier*, adj. 5 *conséquence*,

n. f. 6 *pour*, prep.

1 *voyager*, v. 1. 2 *toute la*

*nuit*. 3 *attendu le clair de*

*la lune*.

1 *attendu la commodité*. 2 *par-*

*tir*, v. 2. 3 *demain*, adv.

1 *promptement*, adv. 2 *afin*

*d'arriver*. 3 *avant*, prep.

4 *autre*, pron. nom.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *devoir*, n. m.

3 *afin que*. 4 *personne n'ait*

*raison*. 5 *de nous blâmer*.

### Conjunctions Conclusive.

These Conjunctions are

*Donc*, then.

*par conséquent*, consequently.

*ainsi*, therefore.

*partant*, therefore.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

You wish 1 to see us 2, we 3  
must then 3 show ourselves 4.

1 *Souhaitter*, v. 1. 2 *de nous*

*voir*. 3 *il faut donc*. 4 *se*

*montrer*, v. 1.

she complains 1, he 2 has 1 *se plaindre*, v. 6. 2 *il l'a donc*  
 then used her ill 2. *maltraitée*.  
 you have promised 1 it; 1 *promettre*, v. 4. 2 *parcon-*  
 consequently 2 you can- *sequent*. 3 *pouvoir*, v. 3.  
 not 3 refuse 4 it. 4 *refuser*, v. 1.  
 he is humane 1 and charita- 1 *humain*, adj. 2 *charitable*,  
 ble 2, therefore 3 the adj. 3 *ainsi*. 4 *pauvre*, n.  
 poor 4 may 5 hope 6 to m. 5 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 6 *espé-*  
 be relieved 7 by him. *rer*, v. 1. 7 *assister*, v. 1.  
 I have paid 1 you back 1 1 *payer*, v. 1. 2 *ce que*, pron.  
 what 2 I had borrowed 3, 3 *emprunter*, v. 1. 4 *par-*  
 therefore 4 we are quit 5. *tant*. 5 *quite*, adj.

### Conjunctions Explicative.

These Conjunctions are

*Comme*, like, as. *savoir*, viz.  
*entantque*, as. *surtout*, especially.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

They have behaved 1 like 2 1 *Se comporter*, v. 1. 2 *comme*.  
 fools 3. 3 *fou*, plur. *foux*, n. m.  
 he presented himself 1 as 2 1 *se présenter*, v. 1. 2 *comme*.  
 I arrived 3. 3 *arriver*, v. 1.  
 Christ 1 has a father 2 as 3 1 *Jesus Christ*, n. m. 2 *pere*,  
 a God 4, and a mo- n. m. 3 *entantque*. 4 *Dieu*,  
 ther 5 as a man 6. n. m. 5 *mere*, n. f. 6 *homme*,  
 n. m.  
 there are 1 three 2 orders 3 1 *il y a*. 2 *trois*, a'j. 3 *ordre*,  
 in 4 France, viz. 5 the n. m. 4 *en*, prep. 5 *savoir*.  
 clergy 6, the nobility 7, 6 *clergé*, n. m. 7 *noblesse*,  
 and the commons 8, n. f. 8 *tiers-état*.  
 he is fit 1 for 2 many things 2, 1 *propre*, adj. 2 *pour plusieurs*  
 especially 3 for war 4. *choses*. 3 *surtout*. 4 *pour la*  
*guerre*.

### Conjunctions Transitive.

These Conjunctions are

*Or*, now. *pour*, as for.  
*aureste*, as for the rest. *quant*, as for.  
*dureste*, as for the rest.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

All men 1 are liars 2 ; now 3  
my dear friend 3, you are a  
man.

shew 1 him the goodness 2  
of your cause 3 ; as 4 for  
the rest 4, don't forget 5  
the resources 6 of money 7.

I 1 only beg of you to 1  
read 2 my book 3, be-  
fore 4 you judge of it 4 ;  
as for the rest 5, use 6 all  
your rights 7.

my brother 1 and sister 2  
made 3 him each 4 a pre-  
sent 5 ; the 6 one gave 6  
him a horse 7 ; as for 8  
the other 9, she gave him  
a sword-knot 10.

the news 1 of the victory 2  
is certain 3 ; as for 4 that  
of the number 4 of the  
dead 5, we 6 doubt it 6.

1 *Tous les hommes.* 2 *menteur,*  
adj. 3 *or mon cher ami.*

1 *montrer, v.* 1. 2 *bonté, n. f.*  
3 *cause, n. f.* 4 *dureté.*  
5 *oublier, v.* 1. 6 *ressource,*  
n. f. 7 *argent, n. m.*

1 *je ne vous demande que de.*  
2 *lire, v.* 4. 3 *livre, n. m.*  
4 *avant que d'en juger.* 5 *dureté.* 6 *se servir, v.* 2.  
7 *droit, n. m.*

1 *frère, n. m.* 2 *sœur, n. f.*  
3 *faire, v.* 5. 4 *chacun.*  
5 *présent, n. m.* 6 *l'un lui a*  
*donné.* 7 *cheval, n. m.* 8 *pour.*  
9 *autre, pron.* 10 *neud*  
*d'épée.*

1 *nouvelle, n. f.* 2 *victoire, n.*  
f. 3 *sûr, adj.* 4 *quant à celle*  
*du nombre.* 5 *mort, n. m.*  
6 *on en doute.*

*The conductive Conjunction que.*

This Conjunction being often made use of in French  
speech, I must be a little particular upon it.

## R U L E I.

When *que* comes after a Verb, denoting an affirma-  
tion, or a kind of certainty, the Verb following must be used  
in the indicative, as

*Je sais qu'il est malade.*

*je conviens qu'il m'a payé.*

*j'espère qu'il viendra.*

I know that he is sick.

I grant that he has paid me.

I hope that he will come.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I maintain 1 that he is here 2.

we are sure 1 that he is not  
gone out 2.

1 *Soutenir, v.* 2. *ici, adv.*

1 *sûr, adj.* 2 *sortir, v.* 2.

I think



I think 1 that he will be here 1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *demain*, adv.  
to-morrow 2.  
we hope 1 that you will for- 1 *esperer*, v. 1. 2 *pardonner*,  
give 2 your 3 daughter 3. v. 1. 3 *à votre fille*.

## R U L E II.

When *que* comes after a Verb joined to a negative particle, or denoting doubt, ignorance, fear, desire, or not expressing any thing positive, it governs the conjunctive, as

<i>Je n'espere pas qu'il vienne.</i>	I don't expect his coming.
<i>je doute qu'il le fasse.</i>	I doubt his doing it.
<i>je crains qu'il ne s'en aille.</i>	I fear his going away.
<i>je souhaite qu'il regne.</i>	I wish that he may reign.
<i>je veux qu'il change de conduite.</i>	I will have him alter his conduct.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

I don't grant 1 that he has	1 <i>Convenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>payer</i> ,
paid 2 me.	v. 1.
I doubt 1 her 2 being here 2.	1 <i>douter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>qu'elle soit</i>
	<i>ici</i> .
I fear 1 that he will die 2.	1 <i>craindre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>mourir</i> , v. 2.
I wish 1 he may finish 2.	1 <i>souhaiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>finir</i> , v. 2.
I 1 will have him satisfy 2	1 <i>je veux qu'il</i> . 2 <i>satisfaire</i> ,
me.	v. 5.

## R U L E III

*Que* answers sometimes to the English words *to the end that*, *how*, *but*, *as soon as*, *without*, *since*, *unless*, *why*, *altho*, *as*, *when*, and *if*, as

<i>approchez vous que je vous</i>	come near that I may speak
<i>parle.</i>	to you.
<i>que vous êtes changé !</i>	how altered you are !
<i>vous ne faites que rire.</i>	you do nothing but laugh.
<i>qu'il boive plus qu'à l'ordinaire,</i>	as soon as he drinks more than
<i>il est malade.</i>	usual, he is sick.
<i>il ne sauroit sortir sans d'enrhu-</i>	he cannot go out without
<i>mer.</i>	catching cold.



*il y a huit jours qu'il est parti.*

it is a week since he has set out.

*je ne partirai pas que tout ne soit prêt.*

I shall not set out, unless every thing be ready.

*que n'obéissez vous à votre maître ?*

why don't you obey your master ?

*tout habile homme qu'il est, il n'a pu me répondre.*

tho' he is an able man, he could not answer me.

*rempli qu'il étoit de préjugés, il nia tout.*

as he was full of prejudices, he denied all.

*comme l'armée étoit rangée en bataille, & qu'elle étoit prête à combattre.*

as the army was drawn in order of battle, and ready to engage.

*quand vous aurez reconnu votre faute, & que vous l'aurez réparée.*

when you have acknowledged your fault, and made amends for it.

*si vous le trouvez, & qu'il vous demande où je suis.*

if you find him, and he asks you where I am.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Come 1 here 2 that 3 I may see 4 you.

1 Venir, v. 2. ici, adv. 3 que. 4 voir, v. 3.

how 1 different you are 1 from what 2 you was formerly 3 ?

1 que vous êtes différent. 2 ce que. 3 autrefois, adv.

you 1 do nothing but 1 prattle 2 and play 3.

1 vous ne faites que. 2 causer, v. 1. 3 badiner, v. 1.

as 1 soon as he takes 1 the 2 country-air 2, he is cured 3.

1 qu'il prenne. 2 l'air de la campagne. 3 guérir, v. 2.

he cannot 1 open 2 his mouth 3 without 4 telling 4 a lie 5.

1 il ne sauroit. 2 ouvrir, v. 2. 3 touche, n. f. 4 qu'il ne dise. 5 mensonge, n. m.

it 1 is a fortnight 1 since 2 he returned 3 from 4 Jamaica 5.

1 il y a quinze jours. 2 que. 3 revenir, v. 2. 4 de, prep. 5 Jamaïque, n. f.

I shall not go out 1, unless 2 you be ready 3.

1 sortir, v. 2. 2 que. 3 prêt, adj.

why 1 don't you speak 2 more 3 slowly 4 ?

1 que. 2 parler, v. 1. 3 plus, adv. 4 lentement, adv.

tho' 1 he is a child 1, he may 2 defend himself 3.	1 tout enfant qu'il est. 2 pouvoir, v. 3. 3 se défendre, v. 6.
as 1 he had a good opinion of me 1, he would not believe 2 what 3 they said 4 against 5 me.	1 prévenu qu'il étoit en ma faveur. 2 croire, v. 5. 3 ce que, pron. nom. 4 dire, v. 4. 5 contre, prep.
just as 1 we had dined 2, and 3 we were ready to go out 3.	1 comme, conj. 2 dîner, v. 1. 3 & que nous allions sortir.
when 1 you have confessed 1 your crime 2, and 3 I have pardoned you 3.	1 quand vous aurez avoué. 2 crime, n. m. 3 & que je vous aurai pardonné.
if 1 you meet 2 him, and 3 he speaks to you 3.	1 si. 2 rencontrer, v. 1. 3 & qu'il vous parle.

## OF INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is a part of Speech that denotes some sudden motion of the mind ; as joy, grief, fear, hatred, &c.

Joy is expressed with the words *ah ! ha ! bon !* good !

We express grief with the words *ba ! oh ! héla !* alas !

Our hatred is denoted by the words *fi ! fi donc !* fy upon !

We encourage people with the words *ça, come on ; allons,* come on ; *courage,* cheer up.

We shew our admiration with the words *ba ! ho ! heigh !*

We call with the words *bola, hé ;* oh, *soho ;* and we impose silence with the word *paix,* hush.

### Exercises upon the Interjections.

Good 1 ! here 2 are 2 news 3 for 4 you.	1 Bon. 2 voilà. 3 nouvelle, n. f. 4 pour, prep.
I have read 1 your first 2 tragedy 3. alas 4 ! I have read your second 5, oh 6 !	1 lire, v. 4. 2 premier, adj. 3 tragédie, n. f. 4 hélas. 5 second, adj. 6 bola.
ha ! ! how 2 do I fear 2 to 3 displease 4 him ?	1 ba ! 2 que je crains. 3 de, prep. 4 déplaire, v. 5.
fy 1, fy 1, you don't think 2 of 3 it 3.	1 si. 2 penser, v. 1. 3 y, pron. conj.

G 2

come

come 1, let us set out 2.

1 *allons.* 2 *partir, v. 2.*

come 1, cheer 2 up 2.

1 *allons.* 2 *courage.*

heigh 1! how 2 fine it is 2?

1 *ho.* 2 *que c'est beau.*

oh 1! gentlemen 2, don't go 3

1 *hé!* 2 *messieurs.* 3 *aller, v.*

so fast 4.

1 *hé!* 2 *si vite.*

hush 1, there 2.

1 *paix.* 2 *là.*

## OF INTERJECTIONS.

## FRENCH

# FRENCH SYNTAX.

**H**AVING partly shewed the joining of *French* words together, I have already treated of Syntax ; few pages will now be sufficient to explain what remains to be said upon this subject.

## OF ARTICLES.

### RULE I.

We use two articles, when a Noun is placed immediately after the adjective *tout*, all ; as *de tout le monde*, of all the world.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

He is the enemy 1 of all mankind 2.	1 <i>Ennemi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>monde</i> . n. m.
you are the friend 1 of all the English 2.	1 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Anglois</i> , n. m.
this belongs 1 to all the world 2.	1 <i>appartenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>monde</i> , n. m.

### RULE II.

Two articles must also be used, when an adjective, that is not an adjective of number, is placed after its Noun, to shew its surname or condition, as

*De Guillaume le Conquérant.* Of William the Conqueror.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have spoken 1 this morning 2 to 3 the countess 3 of Holderness 4.	1 <i>Parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>matin</i> , n. m. 3 <i>à madame la comtesse</i> . 4 <i>Holdernes</i> .
this estate 1 belongs 2 to the duke 2 of Rutland.	1 <i>bien</i> , n. m. 2 <i>appartenir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>duc</i> , n. m.



Speak to 1 the countess of 1 *à madame la Comtesse.*  
Northumberland.

### RULE III.

They must also be used, when the superlative is placed immediately after its Noun, as

*aux hommes les plus méchants.* to the most wicked men.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

She is one of the most beautiful 1 women 2 in 3 England 3. *1 Beau, belle, adj. 2 femme, n. f. 3 d'Angleterre.*

She is married 1 to the most generous 2 man in 3 France 3. *1 marier, v. 1. 2 généreux, adj. 3 de France.*

### RULE IV.

Lastly, they must be used, when the words *Monsieur, Madame, Monseigneur*, and such like are joined to and come before Nouns having the first article, as

*à Messieurs les Ecois.* To the Scotch.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

I shall speak 1 to the Chancellor 3 this afternoon 2. *1 Parler, v. 1. 2 après midi, n. m. 3 chancelier, n. m.*  
I have wrote 1 this morning 2 to your brothers 3. *1 écrire, v. 4. 2 matin, n. m. 3 frere, n. m.*  
I have read 1 the duke 3 of Richmond's speech 2. *1 lire, v. 4. 2 harangue, n. f. 3 duc, n. m.*

## OF NOUNS.

### RULE I.

In quotations, the Nominative Case to the Verb must be placed after it, as

*Tous les hommes sont foux, dit Boileau.* All men are mad, says Boileau.

*Exercices*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

In short 1, said 2 that good 3	1 <i>Enfin</i> , adv. 2 <i>dire</i> , v. 4
king 4, I shall not think 6	3 <i>bon</i> , adj. 4. <i>roi</i> , n. m.
myself 5 happy 7 before 8	5 <i>me</i> , pron. conj. 6 <i>croire</i> ,
I 9 have completed 9 the	v. 5. 7 <i>heureux</i> , adj. 8. <i>que</i> ,
happiness 10 of my sub-	conj. 9 <i>je n'ai fait</i> . 10 <i>bon-</i>
jects 11.	<i>heur</i> , n. m. 11 <i>sujet</i> , n. m.
gentlemen 1, have we an-	1 <i>Messieurs</i> . 2 <i>répondre</i> , v. 10.
swered 2 to them, you 3	3 <i>vous ne songez qu'au plai-</i>
only think of pleasure 3,	<i>sir</i> . 4 <i>négliger</i> , v. 1. 5 <i>gloire</i> ,
and neglect 4 the glory 5	n. f. 6 <i>prince</i> , n. m.
of the prince 6.	

R U L E II.

In narrations, the Nominative Case to the Verb may be placed after it, as

<i>D'abord parurent les domesti-</i>	At first the servants appeared;
<i>ques; quelque tems après</i>	and sometimes after the
<i>vint la maîtresse du logis.</i>	mistress of the house came.

*Exercise upon this Rule.*

On 1 our arrival 2 appeared 3	1 <i>à</i> , prep. 2 <i>arrivée</i> , n. f.
a gentleman 4 to receive 5	3 <i>paraître</i> , v. 5. 4 <i>gentil-</i>
us; two 6 minutes after 6	<i>homme</i> , n. m. 5 <i>recevoir</i> , v.
the king 7 came 8.	3. 6 <i>au bout de deux minutes</i> ,
	7 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 8 <i>venir</i> , v. 2.

R U L E III.

When in interrogations, the Nominative to the Verb is a Noun used without a conjunctive pronoun, that nominative must be placed after the Verb, as

<i>A quoi pense votre frère?</i>	What is your brother think-
	ing of?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

What 1 does merit 3 avail 2	1 <i>à quoi</i> . 2 <i>servir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>mé-</i>
without 4 friends 4 ?	<i>rite</i> , n. m. 4 <i>sans protection</i> .
	G 4 how

how much 1 does your brother 3 get 2 every 4 day 4? 1 *combien*, adv. 2 *gagner*, v.  
 how 1 does 2 your sister 3 do 2? 1. 3 *frere*, n. m. 4 *par jour*.  
 1 *comment*, adv. 2 *se porter*, v.  
 1. 3 *sœur*, n. f.

## RULE IV.

A Noun, having an article common to the Genitive and Ablative cases, is in the first of these, when it denotes things as united, as

*Le temple du Seigneur.*

The temple of the Lord.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Alexander 1 the Great 2 was 1 *Alexandre*, n. m. 2 *grand*,  
 son 3 of Philip 4 king 5 of adj. 3 *fils*, n. m. 4 *Philippe*,  
 Macedonia 6. n. m. 5 *roi*, n. m. 6 *Macedoine*, n. f.  
 you are the son of a great 1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *devoir*, v. 3.  
 man 1; and ought 2 to 3 *marcher*, v. 1. 4 *sur*, prep.  
 tread 3 upon 4 the steps 5 5 *trace*, n. f. 6 *pere*, n. m.  
 of your father 6.  
 the king of Prussia 1 is a great 1 *Prusse*, n. f. 2 *général*, n. m.  
 general 2.

## RULE V.

It is in the Ablative, when it denotes separation, division, or privation, as

*À mon départ de Rome.*

At my departure from Rome.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This happened 1 two 2 1 *arriver*, v. 1. 2 *deux*, adj.  
 years 3 before 4 my de- 3 *an*, n. m. 4 *avant*, prep.  
 parture 5 from Toledo 6. 5 *départ*, n. m. 6 *Toledo*,  
 n. m.  
 I shall come 1 to see 2 you 1 *venir*, v. 2. 2 *voir*, v. 3.  
 before my departure from 3 *ville*, n. f.  
 this city 3.

## RULE VI.

It is also in the Ablative, when it is governed by a Verb, or a participle, as

*Il est aimé de son pere.* He is loved by his father.  
*avez vous reçu un présent du duc ?* have you received a present from the duke ?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This musician 1 is very 2 1 *Musicien*, n. m. 2 *très*, adv.  
 well 2 known 3 by the 3 *connoître*, v. 5. 4 *grand*,  
 great 4. n. m.  
 it 1 is in your power 1 to 2 1 *il dépend de vous*. 2 *de*, prep.  
 make 3 me happy 4. 3 *rendre*, v. 6. 4 *heureux*,  
 adj.  
 why 1 have you stript 2 him 1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *dépouiller*,  
 of his estate 3 ? v. 1. 3 *bien*, n. m.  
 he is hated 1 by 2 every 1 *haïr*, v. 2. 2 *de tout le*  
 body 2. *monde*.

## R U L E VII.

Such Nouns, as have, or may take *to* before them in English, are usually translated by the French Dative, as

*J'aspire à la gloire.* I aspire to glory.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

God 1 has promised 2 to 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *promettre*, v.  
 Abraham, a numerous 3 4. 3 *nombreux*, *usé*, adj.  
 progeny 4. 4 *postérité*, n. f.  
 good 1 counsels 2 are ne- 1 *bon*, adj. 2 *conseil*, n. m.  
 cessary 3 to 4 young peo- 3 *nécessaire*, adj. 2 *aux*  
 ple 4. *jeunes gens*.  
 the king 1 has granted 2 a 1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *accorder*, v. 1.  
 favour 3 to my father 4. 3 *favor*, n. f. 4 *pere*, n. m.

## R U L E VIII.

Such Nouns, as express the term of an action, or are governed by Prepositions, are in the Accusative, as

*Le craignez vous ?* Do you fear him ?  
*je suis devant vous.* I am before you.



*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I have studied 1 philosophy 2  
in 3 Newton's 5 writings 4. 1 *Etudier*, v. 1. 2 *philosophie*,  
n. f. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *écrit*,  
n. m. 5 *Newton*, n. m.
- I asked for 1 his friendship 2,  
and offered 3 him mine. 1 *demandeur*, v. 1. 2 *amitié*, n.  
f. 3 *offrir*, v. 2. 4 *lui*, pron. pers. 5 *mon*, n. m.
- you have at last 1 overcome 2  
my resistance 3. 1 *enfin*, adv. 2 *vaincre*, v. 6.  
3 *résistance*, n. f.
- you have delivered 1 me from  
the danger. 2 in 3 which I  
was 3. 1 *délivrer*, v. 1. 2 *danger*, n.  
m. 3 *où j'étais*, n. m.
- he has appeared 1 before 2  
the judge 3. 1 *paraître*, v. 5. 2 *devant*,  
prep. 3 *juge*, n. m.

## RULE IX.

The Vocative must be used, when we address ourselves to persons, or things, as

*Entrez, messieurs.*

Come in, gentlemen.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Brave 1 soldiers 2, you have  
got 3 a great 4 deal 4 of  
glory 5. 1 *Brave*, adj. 2 *soldat*, n. m.  
3 *acquérir*, v. 2. 4 *beaucoup*,  
adv. 5 *gloire*, n. f.
- O heavens 1, hear 2 my  
voice 3, O earth 4, lend 5  
your ear 6. 1 *cieux*, n. m. plur. 2 *écouter*,  
v. 1. 3 *voix*, n. f. 4 *terre*,  
n. f. 5 *prêter*, v. 1. 6 *oreille*, n. f.
- judge 1 me, O 2 God 2, and  
plead 3 my cause 4. 1 *juger*, v. 1. 2 *à mon Dieu*.  
3 *plaider*, v. 1. 4 *cause*, n. f.

## RULE X.

Such Nouns, as in English are placed before a participle active with *of* between both, govern the infinitive with *de* before it, as

*L'art de faire la guerre.*  
*le désir d'acquérir.*

The art of making war.  
the desire of getting.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I have not the art 1 of plea- 1 *Art*, n. m. 2 *plaire*, v. 5.  
sing 2.

- he has a 1 mighty desire 1 of going 2 to 3 Constanti-  
nople. 1 grand envie. 2 aller, v. 1.  
3 à, prep.
- the desire 1 of getting 2 ri-  
ches 3 is natural 4 to  
men 5. 1 désir, n. m. 2 amasser, v. 1.  
3 richesses, n. f. plur. 4 na-  
tuel, adj. 5 aux hommes.

## OF ADJECTIVES.

### RULE I.

When a Noun of multitude is followed by a Genitive, the Adjective must agree with that Genitive, as

Il y a une partie du palais brûlé. There is a part of the palace burnt.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- I met 1 a multitude 2 of drunken 4 peasants 3. 1 Rencontre, v. 1. 2 foule, n. f. 3 païsan, n. m. 4 ivre, adj.
- he found 1 a part 2 of his soldiers 3 wounded 4. 1 trouver, v. 1. 2 partie, n. f. 3 soldat, n. m. 4 blesser, v. 1.
- when 1 he saw 2 the half 3 of his people 4 killed 5, he ran away 6. 1 quand, conj. 2 voir, v. 3. 3 moitié, n. f. 4 monde, n. m. 5 tuer, v. 1. 6 s'enfuir, v. 2.

### RULE II.

Two singulars being equal to a plural, the Adjective and verb common to both must be used in the plural, as

L'esprit & le corps sont essentiels à l'homme. The soul and body are essential to man.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Bread 1 and wine 2 are use-  
ful 3 to mankind 4. 1 Pain, n. m. 2 vin, n. m. 3 utile, adj. 4 au genre hu-  
main.
- gluttony 1 and drunkenness 2  
are pernicious 3 to health 4. 1 gourmandie, n. f. 2 ivrogne-  
rie, n. f. 3 pernicieux, euse,  
adj. 4 santé, n. f.

the mother 1 and daughter 2 1 *mere*, n. f. 2 *fille*, n. f.  
are very handsome 3. 3 *beau*, *belle*, adj.

## RULE III.

<i>Digne</i> , worthy.	<i>taxé</i> , taxed.
<i>indigne</i> , unworthy.	<i>accusé</i> , accused.
<i>capable</i> , capable.	<i>comblé</i> , loaded.
<i>incapable</i> , incapable.	<i>las</i> , tired.
<i>charmé</i> , charmed.	<i>ennuyé</i> , weary.
<i>content</i> , pleased.	<i>fatigué</i> , fatigued.
<i>mécontent</i> , displeased.	<i>avide</i> , greedy.
<i>chargé</i> , loaded, commanded.	<i>facé</i> , sorry.

and such like Adjectives and Participles, as likewise Adjectives signifying plenty or want, fullness or emptiness, govern the genitive with the Preposition *de*, as

*Il est digne de louange.*

He is worthy of praise.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

My brother 1 is worthy of	1 <i>Frere</i> , n. m. 2 <i>estime</i> , n. f.
the esteem 2 you have for 3	3 <i>pour</i> , prep.
him.	
he is unworthy of the ho-	1 <i>bonheur</i> , n. f. 2 <i>faire</i> , v. 5.
nour 1 you do 2 him.	
I am charmed with his con-	1 <i>conduite</i> , n. f.
duct 1.	
are you pleased with your	1 <i>marché</i> , n. m.
bargain 1 ?	
we are tired of life 1.	1 <i>vie</i> , n. f.
you are too greedy of glory 2.	1 <i>trop</i> , adv. 2 <i>gloire</i> , n. f.
this cask 1 is full 2 of wine 3.	1 <i>tonneau</i> , n. m. 2 <i>plein</i> , adj.
	3 <i>vin</i> , n. m.

## RULE IV.

Most of the same Adjectives and Participles govern the infinitive with the same Preposition, as

*Il est capable de servir sa patrie.* He is capable of serving his country.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

He is worthy to command 1 1 *Commander*, v. 1.

us.

he

he is incapable of serving 1 you.	1 <i>servir</i> , v. 2.
I am commanded to assist 1 you.	1 <i>assister</i> , v. 1.
his brother 1 is accused of 2 having committed 2 a mur- der 3.	1 <i>frère</i> , n. m. 2 <i>d'avoir com- mis</i> . 3 <i>meurtre</i> , n. m.
we are tired of 1 doing 1 al- ways 2 the same 3 thing 4.	1 <i>de faire</i> . 2 <i>toujours</i> , adv. 3 <i>même</i> , adj. 4 <i>chose</i> , n. f.
I am sorry that 1 I have not succeeded 1.	1 <i>de n'avoir point réussi</i> .

## R U L E V.

Adjectives signifying fitness or unfitness, inclination or resistance, advantage or disadvantage, profit or disprofit, pleasure or displeasure, due and submission, govern the dative and infinitive, with the preposition *à*, as

*Il est propre au travail.*

He is fit for labour.

*il est prompt à se fâcher.*

he is apt to fall in a passion.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

He is fit 1 for the ecclesiastical 3 state 2.	1 <i>Propre</i> , adj. 2 <i>état</i> , n. m. 3 <i>ecclésiastique</i> , adj.
you speak 1 to me of an honest 2 man 3, who 4 is inclined 5 to serve 6 all 7 his friends 7.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>honnête</i> , adj. 3 <i>homme</i> , n. m. 4 <i>qui</i> , pron. 5 <i>porter</i> , v. 1. 6 <i>servir</i> , v. 2. 7 <i>tous ses amis</i> .
drunkenness 1 is hurtful 2 to health 3	1 <i>ivrognerie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>nuisible</i> , adj. 3 <i>santé</i> , n. f.
I 1 know no body 1 more slow 2 to work 3 than he 4.	1 <i>je ne connois personne</i> . 2 <i>lent</i> , adj. 3 <i>travail</i> , n. m. 4 <i>lui</i> , pron. nom.
children 1 ought 2 to be dutiful 3 to their parents 4.	1 <i>enfant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 2 <i>devoir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>obéissant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , adj. 4 <i>parent</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m.

## R U L E VI.

Some Adjectives, as *sensible*, *habile*, *adroit*, *content*, &c. may, or may not have a government, as

*C'est*



*C'est un homme sensible.*  
*elle est sensible au froid.*

He is a touchy man.  
 she is chilly.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

My sister 1 is as 2 touchy as 2  
 yours 3.

I 1 feel a pleasure in having  
 the honour 1 of serving 2  
 you.

my physician 1 is a very 2  
 skilful 3 man.

where 1 can 2 you find 3 a  
 person 4 more skilful in 5  
 drawing 5 ?

he is very 1 dexterous 2.  
 she was very dexterous in 1  
 shooting an arrow out of a  
 bow 1.

we are satisfied 1.

I am satisfied with 1 your  
 conduct 2.

1 *Sœur*, n. f. 2 *aussi sensible*  
*que*. 3 *la vôtre*, pron. nom.

*je suis sensible à l'honneur*. 2 *ser-*  
*vir*, v. 1.

1 *médecin*, n. m. 2 *très*, adv.  
 3 *habile*, adj.

1 *où*, adv. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3.  
*trouver*, v. 1. 4 *personne*, n.  
 f. 5 *à dessiner*.

1 *très*, adv. 2 *adroit*, adj.

1 *à tirer de l'arc*.

1 *content*, plur. *ens*, adj.

1 *de*, prep. 2 *conduite*, n. f.

All the other adjectives have no government.

OF DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE I.

*Moi*, I.

*moi-même*, myself.

*toi*, thee.

*toi-même*, thyself.

*lui*, he, him.

*elle*, she, her.

*qui* ? who ?

*quelqu'un*, some body, any  
 body.

*chacun*, every one.

*quiconque*, whosoever.

*autrui*, others.

*personne*, no one.

*rien*, such.

*qui que ce soit*, whosoever.

*qui que ce fut*, whosoever it  
 was.

are said of persons and personified things only ; for if I ask  
 this question, *est-ce là votre canif* ? is this your penknife ? one  
 can't answer, *c'est lui*, it is he ; but *c'est*, it is.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Who is there 1 ? It 2 is 2 I,	1 Là, adv. 2 c'est.
it is you, it is he.	
go 1 and see 2 my brother 3, and tell 4 him that	1 aller, v. 1. 2 voir, v. 3,
I am in 5 good 6 health 7.	3 frere, n. m. 4 dire, v. 4,
	5 en, prep. 6 bon, ne, adj,
	7 santé, n. f.
your friend 1 behaves 2 ill 3 ;	1 ami, n. m. 2 se comporter,
I am not pleased 4 with 5	v. n. 3 mal, adv. 4 content,
him.	adj. 5 de, prep.
come back 1 from the country 2, because 3 we want 4	1 revenir, v. 2. 2 campagne,
you.	n. f. 3 parceque, conj. 4 avoir
we have pleaded 1 our	besoin de.
cause 2 ourselves.	1 plaider, v. 1. 2 cause, n. f.
you 1 only speak of 1 your-	1 vous ne parlez que de.
self.	
has any body ever 1 doubt-	1 jamais, adv. 2 douter de,
ed 2 the existence 3 of	v. 1. 3 existence, n. f. 4 Dieu,
God 4.	n. m.
every one follows 1 his 2	1 suivre, v. 4. 2 son, pron.
own 2 inclination 3.	adj. 3 inclination, n. f.
don't do 1 to others what 2	1 faire, v. 5. 2 ce que, pron.
you 3 would not have done	nom. 3 vous ne voudriez pas
to yourself 3.	qu'on vous fit.
no one knows 1 whether 2	1 savoir, v. 3. 2 si, conj.
he is worthy 3 of love 4	3 digne, adj. 4 amour, n. m.
or hatred 5.	5 haine, n. f.
whosoever asks for 1 me,	1 demander, v. 1. 2 que je suis
tell him that 2 I am busy 2.	en affaires.

RULE II.

Quoi, what.	rien, nothing.
ceci, this.	quoi que ce soit, whatever,
cela, that.	nothing.
ce qui, what.	quoi que ce fut, whatever it
ce que, what.	was, nothing.
que ? what ?	
are said of things only. ; for speaking of a girl, I can't say,	
ceci est beau, this is handsome ; but elle est belle, she is hand-	
some.	

*Exercises*

## Exercises upon this Rule.

I know 1 what 2 he is capa-  
ble 3 of 2.

this pleases 1 me.

that displeases 1 you.

what 1 grieves 2 me the  
most 3 is 4, that you have  
lost 5 your money 6.

tell 1 me what 2 you know.

what 1 have you said 2?

nothing 1 ought 2 to hinder 3  
a christian 4 to defend 5  
the truth 6.

whatever 1 has detained 2  
you; you 3 are in the  
wrong 3.

they 1 have told me 1 no-  
thing 2 new 2.

1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *de quoi*.

3 *capable*, adj.

1 *plaire*, v. 5.

1 *déplaire*, v. 5.

1 *ce qui*. 2 *affliger*, v. 1. 3 *le*  
*plus*. 4 *c'est*. 5 *perdre*, v. 4.

6 *argent*, n. m.

1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *ce que*.

1 *que*. 2 *dire*, v. 4.

1 *rien*. 2 *devoir*, v. 2. 3 *em-*

*pecher*, v. 1. 4 *chrétien*,

n. m. 5 *défendre*, v. 6.

6 *vérité*, n. f.

1 *quoi que ce soit qui*. 2 *retenir*,

v. 2. 3 *vous avez tort*.

1 *ils ne m'ont dit*. 2 *quoi que ce*  
*soit de nouveau*.

## R U L E III.

*Lui-même*, himself, itself.

*elle-même*, herself, itself.

*soi*, one's self.

*soi-même*, one's self.

*le mien*, *la mienne*, mine.

*le tien*, *la tienne*, thine.

*le sien*, *la sienne*, his, her, its.

*le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, ours.

*le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, yours.

*le leur*, *la leur*, theirs.

*ce*, he, she, it, they.

*celui*, *celle*, this.

*celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, this.

*celui-là*, *celle-là*, that.

*lequel*? *laquelle*? which?

*le même*, *la même*, the same.

*l'un*, *l'une*, the one.

*l'autre*, the other.

*aucun*, *aucune*, none.

*pas un*, *pas une*, not one.

*plusieurs*, many.

are said of persons and things; for we may say, *c'est un beau prince*, he is a handsome prince, and *c'est un beau diamant*, it is a fine diamond.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

The Amazons 1 governed 2 1 *Amazone*, n. f. 2 *gouverner*,  
and defended 3 their domi- v. 1. 3 *défendre*, v. 6. 4 *état*,  
nions 4 themselves 5. n. m. 5 *par elles mêmes*.



- it becomes 1 no one 2 to 3  
praise 4 one's self 4.
- this affair 1 is good in 3 it-  
self 4.
- our aunts 1 are 2 a com-  
ing 2, speak 3 to your's,  
and I shall speak to mine.
- our birds 1 are upon 2 the  
table 3, take 4 your's, and  
give 5 me mine.
- I read 1 Horace and Virgil 2,  
because 3 they 4 are 4 the  
best 5 Latin 7 poets 6.
- it 1 was 1 envy 2 that 3 oc-  
casioned 4 the first 5 mur-  
der 6 in 7 the world 7.
- he 1 who 2 puts 3 his hope 4  
in 5 God 5 shall not be  
deceived 6.
- bring 1 me that 2 I bought 3  
yesterday 4.
- this 1 is the most learned 2,  
and that 3 the most igno-  
rant 4.
- I prefer 1 this 2 to that 3.
- which 1 do you speak of?
- Denmark 1 and Norway 2  
belong 3 to 4 the same 4  
king 5.
- it 1 is 1 the same sun 2  
which 3 enlightens 4 all 5  
the nations 6 of the earth 7.  
the one and the other relate 1  
the same circumstances 2.
- 1 *convenir*, v. 2. 2 *à personne*,  
3 *de*, prep. 4 *se louer* *soi*  
*même*.
- 1 *affaire*, n. f. 2 *bon*, *ne*, adj. 1  
3 *en*, prep. 4 *soi*.
- 1 *tante*, n. f. 2 *viennent*.  
3 *parler*, v. 1.
- 1 *oiseau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m.  
2 *sur*, prep. 3 *table*, n. f.  
4 *prendre*, v. 6. 5 *donner*,  
v. 1.
- 1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *Virgile*, n. m.  
3 *parceque*, conj. 4 *ce sont*.  
5 *les meilleurs*. 6 *poete*, n. m.  
7 *Latin*, adj.
- 1 *ce fut*. 2 *envie*, n. f. 3 *qui*.  
4 *occasionner*, v. 1. 5 *pre-*  
*mier*, adj. 6 *meurtre*, n. m.  
7 *dans le monde*.
- 1 *celui*. 2 *qui*. 3 *mettre*, v. 4.  
4 *confiance*, n. f. 5 *en Dieu*.  
6 *tromper*, v. 1.
- 1 *apporter*, v. 1. 2 *celle que*.  
3 *acheter*, v. 1. 4 *hier*, adv.
- 1 *celui-ci*. 2 *savant*, adj.  
3 *celui-là*. 4 *ignorant*, adj.
- 1 *preferer*, v. 1. 2 *celle-ci*.  
3 *celle-là*.
- 1 *duquel*.
- 1 *Danemark*, n. m. 2 *Norvege*,  
n. f. 3 *appartenir*, v. 2.  
4 *au même*. 5 *roi*, n. m.
- 1 *c'est*. 2 *soleil*, n. m. 3 *qui*.  
4 *éclairer*, v. 1. 5 *tout*, adj.  
6 *nation*, n. f. 7 *terre*, n. f.
- 1 *rapporter*, v. 1. 2 *circon-*  
*stance*, n. f.



few 1 men 1 use 2 equally 3  
the one and the other  
hand 4

none 1 has opposed 1 me.  
of all 1 those 2 who 3 know 4  
the reasons 5 of my con-  
duct 6, is 7 there any 7  
that blamed 8 it?

I have none 1.

not one 1 of you can 2 com-  
plain 3 of my conduct.

you have not one 1.

many 1 have thought 2 that 3  
the world 4 was eternal 5.

if 1 you 2 want bottles 2,  
I 3 have many 3.

1 peu de gens. 2 se servir de.  
v. 2. 3 également, adv.  
4 main, n. f.

1 aucun n'a été contraire.

1 tout, adj. 2 ceux, 3 qui.  
4 savoir, v. 3. 5 raison, n. f.

6 conduite, n. f. 7 y en  
a-t-il aucun. 8 blâmer, v. 1.

1 aucun.

1 pas un. 2 pouvoir, v. 3. 3 se  
plaindre, v. 6.

1 pas un.

1 plusieurs. 2 croire, v. 5.  
3 que. 4 monde, n. m.  
5 éternel, adj.

1 si, conj. 2 vous avez besoin  
de bouteilles. 3 j'en ai plu-  
sieurs.

#### RULE IV.

The pronouns adjective *mon, ma, my*; *ton, ta, thy*; *notre, our*, and *votre, your*, have a relation to persons and personified things only, as

*Vous perdez votre argent, & je  
dépense le mien.*

You lose your money, and I  
spend mine.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

I have sold 1 my horse 2,  
have 3 you got 3 yours  
still 4?

you ruin 1 your constitution 2,  
and I preserve 3 mine.

1 vendre, v. 6. 2 cheval, n. m.  
3 avez vous. 4 encore.

1 ruiner, v. 1. 2 santé, n. f.  
3 conserver, v. 1.

#### RULE V.

The pronouns adjective *son, sa, his, her, its*, and *leur, their*, may always be related to persons; but have only a relation to such things as are expressed before in the same sentence, by nouns or pronouns. as

*Notre gouverneur a reçu son  
pouvoir du prince.*

Our governor has received  
his power from the prince.

*la mer a son flux.* the sea has its tide.  
*elle a sa source en France.* it has its head in France.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

He may 1 dispose 2 of his 3 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 2 *disposer*,  
 estate 3. v. 1. 3 *bien*, n. m.  
 put 1 this book 2 in 3 its 1 *mettre*, v. 4. 2 *livre*, n. m.  
 place 4. 3 *en*, prep. 4 *place*, n. f.  
 all bodies 1 have their 1 *corps*, n. m. 2 *dimension*, n. f.  
 dimensions 2.  
 the trees 1 bear 2 their fruits 3. 1 *arbre*, n. m. 2 *porter*, v. 1:  
 every 4 one 4 in 5 their 3 *fruit*, n. m. 4 *chacun*.  
 season 5. 5 *dans leur saison*.

R U L E VI.

But if the things are not expressed before in the same sentence, by nouns or pronouns, we must, instead of *son*, *sa*, *ses* and *leur*, use the conjunctive pronoun *en*, as

*Je connois l'arbre dont vous parlez; les fruits en sont excellens.* I know the tree you are speaking of; its fruits are excellent.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have seen 1 Mr. Rolin's 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *maison*, n. f.  
 house 2, I admire 3 its 3 *admirer*, v. 1. 4 *situation*,  
 situation 4, architecture 5, n. f. 5 *architecture*, n. f. 6 *ap-*  
 and apartments 6! *partement*, plur. *ens*, n. m.  
 I have travelled 1 in 2 Hol- 1 *voyager*, v. 1. 2 *en*, prep.  
 land 3, and have seen its 3 *Hollande*, n. f. 4 *princi-*  
 chief 4 cities 5. *pal*, adj. 5 *ville*, n. f.  
 I have read 1 your book 2, 1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *livre*, n. m.  
 and know 3 its faults 4 and 3 *connoître*, v. 5. 4 *faute*,  
 beauties 5. n. f. 5 *beauté*, n. f.

R U L E VII.

*Ce*, *cet*, and *cette*, this, are said of persons and things, as

*Ce héros.* This hero.  
*cet homme-ci.* this man.  
*ce monde.* this world.

*Exercises*

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Let us thank 1 this young 2  
cavalier 3, he 4 is your  
deliverer 5, and 6 it is to  
him you owe your life 7.  
this heaven 1, this earth 2,  
and these elements 3 are  
the work 4 of God 5.

1 Remercier, v. 1. 2 jeune, adj.  
3 cavalier, n. m. 4 c'est  
votre libérateur. 5 Et c'est  
à lui que vous devez la vie.  
1 ciel, n. m. 2 terre, n. f.  
3 élément, plur. ens. n. m.  
4 ouvrage, n. m. 5 Dieu,  
n. m.

## R U L E VIII.

The pronouns adjective *qui*, who, which, that; *que*,  
whom, which; *lequel* *laquelle*, who, which; and *dont*, of  
whom, of which, must have a noun or nominal pronoun for  
their antecedent, as

*Dieu, qui aime les hommes.*

God, who loves men.

*L'argent que j'ai dépensé.*

The money which I have  
spent.

*c'est lui que je vois.*

it is he whom I see.

*celle dans laquelle il couchoit.*

that wherein he laid,

*la femme dont on parle.*

the woman of whom they  
are speaking.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

The Jews 1 who 2 crucified 3  
Christ 4 did not know 5  
what 6 they were about 6.

1 Juif, n. m. 2 qui. 3 cruci-  
fier, v. 1. 4 Jésus Christ,  
n. m. 5 savoir, v. 3.  
6 ce qu'ils faisoient.

he 1 who 2 puts 3 his trust 4  
in God 5 shall not be de-  
ceived 6.

1 celui. 2 qui. 3 mettre, v. 4.  
4 confiance, n. f. 5 en Dieu,  
6 tromper, v. 1.

learn 1 the things 2 which 3  
the gospel 4 prescribes 5  
to us.

1 apprendre, v. 6. 2 chose, n. f.  
3 que. 4 évangile, n. m.  
5 prescrire, v. 4.

let us think 1 to appease 2 the  
judge 3 before 4 whom 4  
we 5 are to appear 5 one 6  
day 6.

1 songer, v. 1. 2 fléchir, v. 2.  
3 juge, n. m. 4 devant  
lequel. 5 nous devons paraître.  
6 un jour.

there



there is 1 in 2 heaven 3 a 1 *il y a*. 2 *dans*, prep. 3 *ciel*,  
king 4 from 5 whom 5 n. m. 4 *roi*, n. m. 5 *dont*.  
depend 6 the kings of the 6 *dépendre*, v. 6. 7 *terre*,  
earth 7. n. f.

# R U L E IX.

*Qui*, in the nominative may be related to persons and things; but in the other cases is related to persons only, as

*Le jeune homme, qui vient ici,* The young man, who comes  
*est de Paris.* here, is of Paris.

*les fables, qui font parler les animaux, sont utiles & amusantes.* the fables, which make the  
animals speak, are both  
useful and entertaining

*il faut bien choisir les amis à qui on veut donner sa confiance.* we must be careful in choosing  
those friends whom we  
intend to make our con-  
fidents.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Blessed 1 are they 2 which 3 1 *heureux*, adj. 2 *ceux*. 3 *qui*.  
do 4 hunger and thirst af- 4 *ont faim & soif de la*  
ter righteousness 4. justice.

the horse 1, which 2 dis- 1 *cheval*, n. m. 2 *qui*. 3 *dé-*  
pleases 3 you so much 4, plaire, v. 5. 4 *tant*, adv.  
cost 5 me thirty 6 guineas 7. 5 *couter*, v. 1. 6 *trente*, adj.  
und. 7 *guinée*, n. f.

there are 1 many 2 men 3 1 *il y a*. 2 *plusieurs*, adj. p. ur.  
whose 4 great 5 actions 6 3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *de qui*.  
remain 7 in 8 oblivion 8. 5 *grand* adj. 6 *action*, n. f.  
7 *rester*, v. 1. 8 *dans l'oubli*.

do you know 1 whom 2 you 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *à qui vous*  
speak to 2 parlez.

# R U L E X.

The pronoun *que* may often be looked upon as the accusa-  
tive of *qui*, *lequel*, and *laquelle*, as

*L'homme que Dieu créa à son image.* Man whom God created after  
his own likeness.

*les anges que l'orgueil précipita dans les enfers.* the angels whom pride pre-  
cipitated into hell.

## Exercises



*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The prince 1 who 2 I 1 Prince, n. m. 2 que. 3 servir, v. 2. 4 confier, v. 1. 5 grand, adj. 6 emploi, n. m.  
serve 3, has intrusted 4 me  
with 4 the greatest 5 em-  
ployments 6.

the woman 1 whom 2 God 3 1 femme, n. f. 2 que. 3 Dieu,  
formed 4 with 5 one of  
Adam's ribs 5, was the  
cause 6 of his sin 7. 5 d'une des côtes d'Adam.  
the world 1, which 2 God 1 monde, n. m. 2 que. 3 tira  
created 3 out of nothing 3, du néant. 4 montrer, v. 1.  
shews 4 his omnipotence 5. 5 toute puissance, n. f.

### R U L E X L

*Que* is also used in the genitive and dative in some particular phrases, in the English whereof, it is not commonly expressed, as

*C'est de vous qu'on parle.* It is you they are speaking of.  
*c'est à vous qu'il s'adresse.* it is you he applies to.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is 1 of that sum 2 I ask 3 1 C'est. 2 somme, n. f. 3 de-  
you the payment 4. mander, v. 1. 4 payment, n. m.  
it is from the king 1 we 1 roi, n. m. 2 devoir, v. 3.  
ought 2 to expect 3 that 3 attendre, v. 6. 4 faveur,  
favour 4. n. f.  
it is to glory 1 I aspire 2. 1 gloire, n. f. 2 aspirer, v. 1.

### R U L E X I I.

*Lequel* and *laquelle*, being related to persons and things, are used, 1st, in the genitive after two antecedents, as

*La personne sur l'honneur de laquelle j'avois compté.* The person upon whose honour I had relied.  
*la tour, au haut de laquelle nous sommes, a cent pieds de haut.* the tower, on the top of which we are, is a hundred foot high.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The duke 1, to whose 3 protection 2 I owe 4 my fortune 5, has lately 7 given 6 me a new 8 employment 9.

the Seyne 1, in 2 the bed 3 of 4 which 4 other 5 rivers 6 fall 7, may 8 pass 9 for 10 a considerable river 10.

1 *Duc*, n. m. 2 *protection*, n. f. 3 *duquel*. 4 *devoir*, v. 3. 5 *fortune*, n. f. 6 *donner*, v. 1. 7 *depuis peu*. 8 *nouvel*, adj. 9 *emploi*, n. m.

1 *Seine*, n. f. 2 *dans*, prep. 3 *lit*, n. m. 4 *de laquelle*. 5 *autre*, adj. 6 *riviere*, n. f. 7 *se jetter*, v. 1. 8 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 9 *passer*, v. 1. 10 *pour une riviere considerable*.

R U L E XIII.

2dly, *Lequel* and *laquelle* may be used in the dative, when we speak of persons, and must be used in that case when we speak of things, as

*Dieu auquel nous devons rapporter toutes nos actions.*  
*les sciences auxquelles je m'applique.*

God to whom we ought to direct all our actions.  
the sciences to which I apply myself.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We must make 1 a judicious 3 choice 2 of those to whom 4 we intend 5 to give 6 our confidence 7.

it 1 is 1 an objection 2 to which 3 there 4 is no answer 4.

1 *Il faut que nous fassions*. 2 *choix*, n. m. 3 *judicieux*, adj. 4 *auxquels*. 5 *vouloir*, v. 3. 6 *donner*, v. 1. 7 *confiance*, n. f.

1 *c'est*. 2 *objection*, n. f. 3 *à laquelle*. 4 *il n'y a pas de réponse*.

R U L E XIV.

3dly, *Lequel* and *laquelle* may be used in the accusative, after a preposition, when we speak of persons, and must be used in that case, when we speak of things, as

*La personne, avec laquelle vous commercez, n'a pas quatre sous vaillant.*

The person, with whom you trade, is not worth a groat.

*la maison, dans laquelle vous demeurez, est plus belle que la nôtre.*

the house, wherein you dwell, is handsomer than ours.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The wood 1. wherein we have walked 2. belongs 3 to one 4 of your friends 5. the province 1. wherein you have passed 2 the summer 3 has allurements 4, which 5 ours has not.

1 Bois, n. m. 2 se promener, v. 1. 3 appartenir, v. 2. 4 un, adj. 5 ami, n. m. 1 province, n. f. 2 passer, v. 1. 3 été, n. m. 4 agrément, plur. m. 5 que, pron.

R U L E XV.

The pronoun *dont*, expressing the genitive or ablative, being said of persons and things, may always and must often be used instead of the pronouns *de qui, duquel, de laquelle, desquels, and desquelles*, as

*La maison dont j'ai fait l'acquisition.*  
*le cheval dont je me suis défait.*

The house of which I have made the purchase.  
the horse I got rid of.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The religion 1, whose 2 laws 3 you despise 4, will condemn 5 you one 6 day 6.  
be grateful 1 towards 2 God 3, of 4 whom 4 you have received 5, so 6 many favours 6.

I have read 1 the book 2 of which 3 you made 4 me a present 5.

1 Religion, n. f. 2 dont. 3 loi, plur. loix, n. f. 4 mépriser, v. 1. 5 condamner, v. 1. 6 un jour. 1 reconnoissant, adj. 2 envers, prep. 3 Dieu, n. m. 4 dont. 5 recevoir, v. 3. 6 tant de faveurs. 1 lire, v. 4. 2 livre, n. m. 3 dont. 4 faire, v. 5. 6 présent, n. m.

R U L E S by which it may be known when the Disjunctive or Conjunctive Pronouns are to be used in French Speech.

I have shewn in several parts of this book how to use the conjunctive and disjunctive Pronouns; what remains to be said



said upon this subject will be contained in the following rules.

# R U L E I.

The same nominative conjunctive needs not always be repeated after the conjunction ; and therefore instead of

*il regarda, & il reconnut la maison.* he looked at, and he knew the house again.

we may say

*il regarda, & reconnut la maison.* he looked at, and knew the house again.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

They have supped 1 together 2, and are 3 now 4 playing 3 at cards 5.	1 Souper, v. 1. 2 ensemble, adv. 3 jouer, v. 1. 4 à présent. 5 carte, n. f.
they sat 1 upon 2 the grass 3, and began 4 to eat 5.	1 s'asseoir, v. 3. 2 sur, prep. 3 herbe, n. f. 4 commencer, v. 1. 5 à manger.

# R U L E II.

When a Verb has several pronouns for its nominative cases, the first must be disjunctive, and the last of all conjunctive, as

<i>Lui &amp; moi nous parlons.</i>	He and I are speaking.
<i>votre ami &amp; vous, vous ne valez rien.</i>	your friend and you are good for nothing.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

My brother 1 and I 2, we went 3 last 4 night 4 to the play 5.	1 Frere, n. m. 2 moi. 3 aller, v. 1. 4 hier au soir. 5 comédie, n. f.
your sister 1, you and I, shall put 2 in 3 the lottery 4.	1 soeur, n. f. 2 mettre, v. 4. 3 à, prep. 4 loterie, n. f.
my cousin 1 and I, shall have new 3 cloaths 2 to morrow 4.	1 cousin, n. m. 2 habit, n. m. 3 neuf, adj. 4 demain, adv.

H

Dupleffis



Dupleffis and I, we have done 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *thème*, n. m.  
our exercise 2.

## R U L E III.

When the pronoun *lui*, he, *eux*, they, are the last of the disjunctives, the conjunctive pronoun may sometimes be omitted, as

*Lui & eux font blâmables.* He and they are blameable.  
*je demeurai, & lui s'en alla.* I stayed, and he went away.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

My brother 1 and he are arrived 2. 1 *Frère*, n. m. 2 *arriver*, v. 1.  
my uncle 1 and they are set out 2 for 3 Jamaica 4. 1 *oncle*, n. m. 2 *partir*, v. 2. 3 *pour*, prep. 4 *Jamaïque*, n. f.  
he and they ought 1 to learn 2 their lesson 3 by heart 4. 1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *apprendre*, v. 6. 3 *leçon*, n. f. 4 *par cœur*.

## R U L E IV.

When a Verb is between two or more pronouns in the same case, the first of them must be conjunctive, and placed before that Verb, and the others disjunctive, and placed after it, as

*Je souffre & lui aussi.* I suffer, and he also.  
*on me parle, aussi bien qu'à lui, & à eux.* they speak to me, as well as to him and them.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

I speak 1, and he also 2. 1 *Parler*, v. 1. 2 *aussi*, conj.  
you write 1, and we also. 1 *écrire*, v. 4.  
I shall sell 1 books 2 to you, as 3 well as 3 to him. 1 *vendre*, v. 6. 2 *livre*, n. m. 3 *aussi bien que*.

## R U L E V.

A disjunctive pronoun must always be used and placed after the Verb *être*, when it signifies *belonging to*, as

*Je suis à vous.* I belong to you.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Blessed 1 are the poor 2 in 3 1 *Bienheureux*, adj. 2 *pauvre*, spirit 3.

spirit 3, for 4 theirs 7 is 7  
the kingdom 5 of heaven 6.

n. m. 3 *d'esprit*. 4 *car*, conj.  
5 *royaume*, n. m. 6 *cieux*,  
n. m. plur. 7 *est à eux*.

this house 1 will one 2 day 2  
be mine 3.

1 *maison*, n. f. 2 *un jour*. 3 *à moi*.

R U L E VI.

The conjunctive pronouns must be used with, and placed before *voici*, and *voilà*, as

*Me voici.*  
*le voilà.*

Here I am.  
here he is.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

you wished 1 to 2 see 3 me,  
here I am; have you any 4  
thing 4 to 5 tell 6 me?  
do you seek for 1 your hat 2?  
here it 3 is.

1 *souhaitter*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep.  
3 *voir*, v. 3. 4 *quelque chose*.  
5 *à*, prep. 6 *dire*, v. 4.  
1 *chercher*, v. 1. 2 *chapeau*,  
n. m. 3 *le*, pron. conj.

O F V E R B S.

What remains to be said upon the *French Verbs*, will be comprised under the following heads, *viz.*

I. *French Verbs conjugated without pas or point.*

R U L E I.

*Pas or point* must be left out, when a negative word is placed after *ne*, as

*Je ne veux plus lui parler.*  
*je ne veux jamais le voir.*  
*je ne connois personne qui blame*  
*ses actions.*  
*je n'ai rien dit.*

I will speak to him no more.  
I will never see him.  
I know no body who blames  
his actions.  
I have said nothing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have nothing 1 to 2 do 3.  
there 1 is nothing more 1 de-  
ceitful 2 than your pro-  
testations 3 of friendship 4.

1 *Rien*, n. m. 2 *à*, prep.  
3 *faire*, v. 5.  
1 *il n'y a rien de plus*. 2 *trom-  
peur*, adj. 3 *protestation*, n.  
f. 4 *amitié*, n. f.

has he done nothing that 1  
deserves 2 death 3?

1 *qui*. 2 *mériter*, v. 1. 3 *mort*,  
n. f.

H 2

have

have you never 1 seen 2 him?	1 <i>jamais</i> , adv. 2 <i>voir</i> , v. 3.
will you never leave 1 your bad 2 habits 3?	1 <i>quitter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>mauvais</i> , adj. 3 <i>habitude</i> , n. f.
we ought 1 never to reveal 2 the secret 3, which 4 has been intrusted 5 to us	1 <i>devoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>révéler</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>secret</i> , n. m. 4 <i>qui</i> . 5 <i>con-</i> <i>fié</i> , v. 1.
time 1 past 2 is no 3 more 3.	1 <i>temps</i> , n. m. 2 <i>passer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>plus</i> , adv.
you are no more the same 1 man 2.	1 <i>même</i> , adj. 2 <i>homme</i> , n. m.
he loves 1 neither 2 to 3 give 4 nor to receive 5.	1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>ni</i> . 3 <i>à</i> , prep. 4 <i>donner</i> , v. 1. 5 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3.
I have neither relations 1 nor friends 2.	1 <i>parent</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.
I find 1 no body 2 who 3 pretends 4 to have seen it.	1 <i>trouver</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>personne</i> , n. m. 3 <i>qui</i> . 4 <i>prétendre</i> , v. 6.
we have no 1 desire 1 to 2 hurt 3 you.	1 <i>aucune envie</i> . 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>nuire</i> , v. 4.

## R U L E II.

It must be left out after the comparatives *plus*, more, and *moins*, less, and the pronoun *autre*, another, as

*Il est plus grand qu'il ne faut.* It is taller than it ought to be.  
*vous êtes autre que je ne croyois.* you are another man than I  
thought.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This room 1 is three 2 times 2 less 3 than it ought 4 to be 4.	1 <i>Chambre</i> , n. f. 2 <i>trois fois</i> . 3 <i>plus petite</i> . 4 <i>ne devoit</i> <i>être</i> .
the weather 1 is less 2 cold 3 to day 4 than it was yester- day 5.	1 <i>temps</i> , n. m. 2 <i>moins</i> . 3 <i>froid</i> , adj. 4 <i>aujourd'hui</i> , adv. 5 <i>hier</i> , adv.
the harvest 1 will be less plen- tiful 2 this 3 year 3 than it was last 4 year 4.	1 <i>moisson</i> , n. f. 2 <i>abondant</i> , adj. 3 <i>cette année</i> . 4 <i>l'année</i> <i>dernière</i> .
she is another 1 woman 1 than he 2 takes her to be 2.	1 <i>autre</i> . 2 <i>il ne pense</i> .

R U L E III.

It must be left out after the Verb *empêcher*, to hinder, as also after Verbs denoting fear, when we speak of a thing we do not wish, as

*J'ai empêché qu'il ne se tuât.*

I have hindered him to kill himself.

*je crains qu'il ne me blesse.*

I fear he should hurt me.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have hindered him 1 to execute 1 the bad 2 designs 3 which 4 he had formed 5 against 6 you.

1 *Qu'il n'exécûtât.* 2 *mauvais*, adj. 3 *dessein*, n. m. 4 *qui*. 5 *former*, v. 1. 6 *contre*, prep.

I fear very 1 much 1, that 2 the bad examples 3, which 4 he has every 5 day 5 before 6 his eyes 6, will 7 make him 7 forsake 8 the path 9 of virtue 10.

1 *beaucoup*, adv. 2 *que*. 3 *exemple*, n. m. 4 *que*. 5 *tous les jours*. 6 *devant les yeux*. 7 *ne lui fassent*. 8 *abandonner*, v. 1. 9 *chemin*, n. m. 10 *vertu*, n. f.

R U L E IV.

It must be left out after the Verb *il y a*, followed by a Verb in the time past, as

*Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu.*

there are ten years since I saw him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There are three 1 years since 2 I spoke 2 to my best 3 friend 4.

1 *trois*, adj. 2 *que je n'ai parlé*. 3 *meilleur*, adj. 4 *ami*, n. m.

there were two 1 months 2 since I 3 had eat 3 grapes 4, when 5 you gave 6 me some.

1 *deux*, adj. 2 *mois*, n. m. 3 *je n'avois mangé*. 4 *raisin*, n. m. 5 *quand*, conj. 6 *donner*, v. 1.

R U L E V.

It is left out of the phrases, wherein *de* signifies a space of time, as

H 3

J

L E



150 EXERCISES upon the

*Je ne le verrai de ma vie.*

I shall never see him whilst I live.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I shall not speak 1 to him 1 *Parler*, v. 1. 2 *de deux*  
these 2 two days 2. *jours*.  
we shall not set out 1 for 3 1 *partir*, v. 2. 2 *de quinze*  
our country-house 4 this 2 *jours*. 3 *pour*, prep. 4 *maison*  
fortnight 2. *de campagne*.

R U L E VI.

It must be left out before *que*, but, nothing but, as

*Je n'ai que deux mots à dire.*

I have but two words to say.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

He does 1 nothing but laugh 2. 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *rire*, v. 4.  
do you know 1 nothing but 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *ce que*. 3 *ap-*  
what 2 you have learned 3 *prendre*, v. 6. 4 *ce matin*.  
this 4 morning 4?

R U L E VII.

It must be left out after such Conjunctions as are rendered into *English* by *unless*, as

*A moins que vous ne commandiez.*

Unless you command.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

you won't succeed 1, unless 2 1 *Reussir*, v. 2. 2 *à moins que*.  
you go 3 yourself 4 to 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *vous-même*,  
Paris. pron. nom.  
a body 1 has no motion 2, 1 *corps*, n. m. 2 *mouvement*,  
unless it receives 3 it from 4 n. m. 3 *recevoir*, v. 3. 4 *de*,  
another 5. prep. 5 *autre*, pron. nom.

R U L E VIII.

It must be left out after *que*, why, as

*Que ne parlez vous ?*

Why don't you speak ?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Why don't you answer 1 1 *Répondre*, v. 6. 2 *à ses ob-*  
his 2 objections 2 ? *jections*.  
why don't you behave 1 bet- 1 *se comporter*, v. 1. 2 *mieux*,  
ter 2 ? adv.

## R U L E IX.

Lastly, it must be left out, whenever the word *personne*, no body, is used in the phrase, as

*Il n'y a ici personne de ma con-*  
*noissance.*

There is no body of my ac-  
quaintance here.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

No body knows 1 whether 2	1 <i>Savoir</i> , v. 3.	2 <i>si</i> , conj.
he is worthy 3 of love 4	3 <i>digne</i> , adj.	4 <i>amour</i> , n.
or 5 hatred 6.	m. 5 <i>ou</i> , conj.	6 <i>haine</i> , n. f.
pride 1 becomes 2 no body.	1 <i>orgueil</i> , n. m.	2 <i>convenir à</i> , v. 2.
a good 1 Christian 2 hates 3	1 <i>bon</i> , adj.	2 <i>chrétien</i> , n. m.
no body.	3 <i>haïr</i> , v. 2.	

II. *Of the Verb, and its Nominative Cases.*

## R U L E I.

When *Qui* is nominative to a Verb, that Verb must be of the same person with the word to which *Qui* has a relation, as

*C'est lui qui m'a parlé.*

It is he who spoke to me.

*c'est vous qui le refusez.*

it is you who refuse it.

*c'est moi qui ai fait cela.*

it is I who have done that.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I am the Lord 1 thy God 2,	1 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m.	2 <i>Dieu</i> , n.
who 3 brought 4 thee	m. 3 <i>qui</i> .	4 <i>retirer</i> , v. 1.
out 4 of the land 5 of E-	5 <i>terre</i> , n. f.	6 <i>Egypte</i> , n. f.
gypt 6.		
he 1 who 2 cannot 3 keep 4	1 <i>celui</i> .	2 <i>qui</i> .
a secret 5, is unfit 6 to go-	3 <i>ne sauroit</i> .	
vern 7.	4 <i>garder</i> , v. 1.	5 <i>secret</i> , n.
	m. 6 <i>incapable</i> , adj.	7 <i>gou-</i> <i>verner</i> , v. 1.
you who are 1 willing 1 to 2	1 <i>vouloir</i> , v. 3.	2 <i>qu'on vous</i>
be obeyed 2, should 3 com-	<i>obéisse</i> .	3 <i>vous ne devez</i>
mand 3 nothing 4 unjust 5.	<i>commander</i> .	4 <i>rien</i> , n. m.
	5 <i>injuste</i> , adj.	

## RULE II.

Many Nouns singu'ar will have the Verb in the plural,  
as

*Le roi & la reine viennent d'ar-  
river.*

The king and queen are just  
arrived.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Wit 1 and good 2 sense 2  
are preferable 3 to beau-  
ty 4.

patience 1 and perseverance 2  
are virtues 3 often 4 ne-  
cessary 5.

a loving 2 wife 1, and a grate-  
ful 4 daughter 3, make 5  
all 6 the pleasure 7 of his  
life 8.

1 *Esprit*, n. m. 2 *jugement*,  
n. m. 3 *préférable*, adj.  
4 *beauté*, n. f.

1 *patience*, n. f. 2 *persévérance*,  
n. f. 3 *vertu*, n. f. 4 *sou-  
vent*, adv. 5 *nécessaire*, adj.

1 *femme*, n. f. 2 *qui l'aime*.  
3 *filie*, n. f. 4 *reconnoissant*,  
adj. 5 *faire*, v. 5. 6 *tout*,  
adj. 7 *plaisir*, n. m. 8 *vie*,  
n. f.

## RULE III.

When a Verb has nominatives of different persons, it must  
agree with the first person rather than the second, and the  
second rather than the third, as

*Vous & moi nous sommes d'ac-  
cord.*

You and I are agreed.

*vous & lui savez la chose.*

you and he know the thing.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

You and I believe 1 that 2  
happiness 3 does not con-  
sist 4 only 5 in 6 riches 6.

my wife 1 and I are resolv-  
ed 2 to 3, lo: e 4 each  
other 4 till 5 death 5.

you and he know 1 better 2  
than I, what 3 you have  
to 4 do 5.

1 *Croire*, v. 5. 2 *que*. 3 *feli-  
cité*, n. f. 4 *consister*, v. 1.  
5 *seulement*, adv. 6 *dans les  
richesses*.

1 *femme*, n. f. 2 *résoudre*, v. 5.  
3 *de*, prep. 4 *nous aimer*.  
5 *jusqu'à la mort*.

1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *mieux*, adv.  
3 *ce que*, pron. nom. 4 *à*,  
prep. 5 *faire*, v. 5.

## RULE

## R U L E IV.

When a Verb has two or more nominative cases, and the conjunction *ni* is placed before every one of them, that Verb must be used in the singular, as

*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne prétend l'avoir fait.* Neither the one nor the other pretends to have done it.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The prince 1 and his minister 2 have their reasons 3 to 4 act 5 as 6 they do 6; but 7 neither the one nor the other is obliged 8 to 9 discover 10 them.

1 Prince, n. m. 2 ministre, n. m. 3 raison, n. f. 4 pour, prep. 5 agir, v. 2. 6 comme ils font. 7 mais, conj. 8 obliger, v. 1. 9 de, prep. 10 découvrir, v. 2.

my brother 1 and sister 2 know 3 good 4 news 5; but neither the one nor the other is willing 6 to tell 7 them.

1 frere, n. m. 2 soeur, n. f. 3 savoir, v. 3. 4 bon, ne, adj. 5 nouvelle, n. f. 6 vouloir, v. 3. 7 dire, v. 4.

## R U L E V.

But if *ni* is only used once, and placed between the nominative cases, the Verb must be in the plural, as

*La prospérité ni l'adversité ne sont point capables de le changer.* Neither prosperity nor adversity can change him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The disinterested 2 man 1 and 3 sincere 5 friend 4 seldom 6 approach 6 the throne 7.

1 Homme, n. m. 2 désintéressé, adj. 3 ni. 4 ami, n. m. 5 sincère, adj. 6 n'approchent gueres du. 7 trône, n. m.

the liars 1 and 2 drunkards 3 shall not enter 4 into 5 the kingdom 6 of heaven 7.

1 menteur, n. m. 2 ni. 3 ivrogne, n. m. 4 entrer, v. 1. 5 dans, prep. 6 royaume, n. m. 7 des cieux.

III. Of Verbs having in French two Nominative Cases, altho' they have but one in English.

## R U L E.

The last of these nominatives may be either singular or plural, altho' the verb must always be in the singular, as



*Il est arrivé aujourd'hui un grand malheur.*

*il y a cent milles d'ici à Bristol.*

*il me vient une pensée.*

*il y a des gens qui soutiennent une opinion contraire à la vôtre.*

A great misfortune has happened to day.

there are a hundred miles from hence to Bristol.

a thought comes into my head.

there are some people who maintain an opinion contrary to yours.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

An express 3 came 1. yesterday 2, who 4 brought 5 us very agreeable 7 news 6.

has any 2 misfortune 2 happened 1 in 3 your family 4? there come 1 every 2 day 2 some 3 people 3 from the army 4, who 5 tell 6 us that 7 our soldiers 8 are full 9 of spirit 10.

there are 1 a thousand 2 men 2, who speak 3 of eloquence 4 without 5 knowing what it is 5.

I got rid 1 of my tutors 2, until 3 one 5 such as I wanted 5 came 4 to present himself 4.

as signor 1 Rolando ended 2 these words 3, there 4 appeared 4 in 5 the saloon 6 1x 7 new 8 faces 9.

1 *Arriver*, v. 1. 2 *hier*, adv. 3 *courrier*, n. m. 4 *qui*. 5 *apporter*, v. 1. 6 *nouvelle*, n. f. 7 *agréable*, adj.

1 *arriver*, v. 1. 2 *du malheur*, 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *famille*, n. f.

1 *venir*, v. 2. 2 *tous les jours*. 3 *des gens*. 4 *armée*, n. f.

5 *qui*. 6 *dire*, v. 4. 7 *que*. 8 *soldat*, n. m. 9 *plein*, adj.

10 *courage*, n. m.

1 *il y a*. 2 *mille gens*. 3 *parler*, v. 1. 4 *éloquence*, n. f. 5 *sans savoir ce que c'est*.

1 *se débarrasser*, v. 1. 2 *précepteur*, n. m. 3 *jusqu'à ce qu'il vint s'en présenter*. 4 *un tel qu'il me faisoit*.

1 *seigneur*, n. m. 2 *achever*, v. 1. 3 *parole*, n. f. 4 *il parut* 5 *dans* prep. 6 *salon*, n. m. 7 *six* adj. 8 *nouveau*, plur. 9 *visage*, n. m.

IV. Of the Verb *être* having *ce* for one of its Nominative Cases.

R U L E I.

When the verb *être* has *ce*, he, she, it, they, for one of its nominatives, this Verb is used in the singular, whether the other nominative be singular or plural, as

*C'est moi qui le dis.*

It is I who say so.

*est ce vous qui l'avez fait ?*

Is it you who have done it ?

*examinez cette jeune dame qui occupe le premier étage. C'est une veuve ; & l'homme que vous voyez avec elle est son oncle.*

consider that young lady who lives on the first floor. She is a widow ; and the man whom you see with her is her uncle.

*sera-ce vous autres qui prendrez soin de ma fille ?*

will it be you who will take care of my daughter ?

Exercises upon this Rule.

Let us observe 1 first 2 in 3 that house 4 on 5 the right hand 5 that old 6 man 6 who tells 7 his money 8. He is a rich 10 and stingy 11 citizen 9, who would not spend 12 a penny 13 to 14 save a man's life 14.

1 Observer, v. 1. 2 d'abord, adv. 3 dans, prep. 4 maison, n. f. 5 à main droite. 6 vieillard, n. m. 7 compter, v. 1. 8 argent, n. m. 9 citoyen, n. m. 10 riche, adj. 11 avare, adj. 12 dépenser, v. 1. 13 sou, n. m. 14 pour sauver la vie d'un homme.

I know 1 Miss A — she is a girl 2 of 3 seventeen or eighteen 3, very ugly 4 and very ill 5 shaped 5.

1 connoître, v. 5. 2 fille, n. f. 3 de dix sept à dix huit ans. 4 laid, adj. 5 mal faite.

was it you who visited 1 him in his sickness 2, and comforted 3 him in his affliction 4 ?

1 visiter, v. 1. 2 maladie, n. f. 3 consoler, v. 1. 4 affliction, n. f.

it was we who paid 1 his 2 expences 2, and gave 3 him money to 4 return 5 to 6 his own country 6.

1 payer, v. 1. 2 sa dépense. 3 donner, v. 1. 4 pour prep. 5 retourner, v. 1. 7 dans son pays.

# EXERCISES upon the RULE II.

But if the second nominative is in the plural, and the verb *être* in the single tenses, this Verb must be used in the third person plural, as

*Ce sont de bonnes gens.*

They are good people.

*ce furent eux qui remportèrent la victoire.*

it was they who got the victory.

*ce seront les saints qui vivront éternellement.*

the saints will live for ever.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Oh! for 1 these three 2, they are devils 3 of 4 the first rank 4, they are spirits 5 of court 6, they enter 7 into 8 the counsels 9 of princes 10, spirit up 11 the ministers 12, occasion 13 insurrections 14 in the provinces 15 and kindle 16 the flambeaux 17 of war 18.

1 *Pour*, prep. 2 *trois*, adj. 3 *diable*, n. m. 4 *du premier ordre*. 5 *esprit*, n. m. 6 *cour*, n. f. 7 *entrer*, v. 1. 8 *dans*, prep. 9 *conseil*, n. m. 10 *prince*, n. m. 11 *animer*, v. 1. 12 *ministre*, n. m. 13 *exciter*, v. 1. 14 *soulevement*, plur. *ens*, n. m. 15 *dans les provinces*. 16 *allumer*, v. 1. 17 *flambeau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 18 *guerre*, n. f.

it 1 was I 1 who had a 2 right 2 to 3 complain 3, and it 4 was they 4 who complained 5.

1 *c'étoit moi*. 2 *droit*. 3 *de me plaindre*. 4 *ce furent eux*. 5 *se plaindre*, v. 6.

## V. Of the Verbs Impersonal *il y a*, *il est*, and *il fait*.

### RULE I.

The verb *il y a*, there is, there are, often denotes a certain time, space, or number, as

*Il y a deux jours qu'il est malade.*

He has been sick these two days.

*il y a quatre milles de Londres à Putney.*

there are four miles from London to Putney.

*il y a trois soldats chez nous.*

there are three soldiers at our house.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- There are six 1 thousand 1 1 *Six mille*, adj. und. 2 *an*,  
 years 2 since 3 the world 4 n. m. 3 *que*. 4 *monde*, n. m.  
 has been created 5. 5 *créer*, v. 1.  
 there are five 1 weeks 2 since 1 *cinq*, adj. und. 2 *semaine*,  
 our fleet 3 set 4 sail 4 n. f. 3 *flote*, n. f. 4 *est*  
 for 5 America 6. *partie*. 5 *pour*, prep. 6 *A-*  
*mérique*, n. f.  
 there are thirty 1 miles 2 1 *trente*, adj. und. 2 *mille*,  
 from 3 London to 4 n. m. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *à*, prep.  
 Chelmsford.  
 there are many 1 who call 2 1 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. 2 *se font*  
 themselves 2 christians 3, *appeller*. 3 *chrétien*, n. m.  
 and are unworthy 4 of the 4 *indigne*, adj. 5 *nom*, n. m.  
 name 5 which 6 they 6 *que*. 7 *porter*, v. 1.  
 bear 7.  
 there were nine 1 persons 2 1 *neuf*, adj. und. 2 *personne*,  
 in 3 Noah's 5 ark 4. n. f. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *arche*,  
 n. f. 5 *Noé*, n. m.

R U L E II.

The verb *il y a* is sometimes followed by an infinitive with the preposition *à* before it, as *il y a à espérer qu'il se corrigera*, it is to be hoped that he will mend.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- It is to be hoped 1 that 2 the 1 *Espérer*, v. 1. 2 *que*. 3 *duc*  
 Duke 3 will recover 4 of n. m. 4 *revenir*, v. 2.  
 this distemper 5. 5 *maladie*, n. f.  
 it is to be feared 1 that 2 he 1 *craindre*, v. 6. 2 *qu'il ne*  
 will die 2 before 3 he has 3 *meure*. 3 *avant d'avoir*. 4  
 time 4 to 5 make 6 his *tems*, n. m. 5 *de*, prep. 6  
 will 7. *faire*, v. 5. 7 *testament*, n. m.

R U L E III.

The verb *il y a* may be used before most French nouns, as

*Y a-t-il de l'argent dans votre bourse ?* Is there any money in your purse?



*il n'y a point de bassesse à pardonner.*

there is no meanness in forgiving.

*il n'y a rien de bon au marché.*

there is nothing good in the market.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There is nothing for 1 you  
in 2 this letter 3.

1 *Pour*, prep. 2 *dans*, prep.  
3 *lettre*, n. f.

are there any 1 carps 1 in 2  
this river 3?

1 *des carpes*. 2 *dans*. 3 *riviere*,  
n. f.

are there any 1 dialogues 1  
in your grammar 2?

1 *des dialogues*. 2 *grammaire*,  
n. f.

there is nothing to 1 get 1  
with 2 beggars 3.

1 *à gagner*. 2 *avec*, prep.  
3 *gueux*, n. m.

there is no honour 1 in 2 re-  
venging one's self 2 of a  
woman 3, whatever 4 of-  
fence she has given 4.

1 *honneur*, n. m. 2 *à se venger*.  
3 *femme*, n. f. 4 *quelque*  
*tort qu'elle ait*.

R U L E IV.

The verb impersonal *il est*, it is, is joined to the adjectives, in order to shew that what is meant by these adjectives becomes what is afterwards expressed in the sentence, as

*Il est certain que l'armée Fran-  
çoise a été battue.*

It is certain that the French  
army has been defeated.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Is it certain that 1 peace 2  
will be made 3 this year 4?

1 *que*. 2 *paix*, n. f. 3 *se faire*.  
v. 5. 4 *année*, n. f.

it is glorious 1 to 2 die 3  
for 4 one's country 5.

2 *glorieux*, adj. 2 *de*, prep.  
3 *mourir*, v. 2. 4 *pour*, prep.

it is good 1 to shew 2 to 3  
conceited men 3, that 4

1 *bon*, adj. 2 *de montrer*.

they have more pride 5  
than skill 6.

3 *aux esprits suffisans*. 4 *que*.  
5 *orgueil*, n. m. 6 *habileté*,  
n. f.

R U L E V.

The verb impersonal *il fait*, it is, is used with such adjectives as denote the disposition of the air, as *il fait chaud*, it is hot.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Is it fine 1 wheather 2 ?

1 Beau, adj. 2 tems, n. m.

it is dark 1.

1 obscur, adj.

is it cold 1 ?

1 froid, adj.

VI. Of the Verb Impersonal, *il faut*.

This verb is thus conjugated, *il faut, il falloit, il fallut, il faudroit, qu'il faille, qu'il fallut*. As it is one of the most necessary French verbs, I must be a little particular upon it.

## R U L E I.

The verb *il faut* is englished sometimes by the verb *must*; sometimes by the words *necessary, requisite, and needful* joined to the verb *to be*; and sometimes by the verbs *shall* and *should*, as

*Il faut que vous me le disiez.*

You must tell it me.

*il faut l'écrire.*

it is necessary to write it.

*il faut que vous l'achettiez.*

you shall buy it.

*il ne faut pas être ingrat.*

one should not be ungrateful.

By which examples it appears that *il faut* requires after it either the conjunctive with the conjunction *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We must do 1 our duty 2.

1 Faire, v. 5. 2 devoir, n. m.

one must think 1 before 2  
one speaks 2.1 penser, v. 1. 2 avant que de  
parler.must we 1 begin again 1  
what 2 we have done 4  
so 3 well 3?1 que nous recommencions. 2 ce  
que. 3 si bien. 4 faire, v. 5.when 1 one has deviated 1  
from 2 the 2 path 3 of vir-  
tue 4, one must endeavour  
to 6 get into it again 6.1 quand on s'est écarté. 2 du.  
3 sentier, n. m. 4 vertu, n. f.  
5 tâcher, v. 1. 6 d'y rentrer.if 1 you have 2 a mind 2 to 3  
be esteemed 3, you must  
do your duty.1 si, conj. 2 vouloir, v. 1.  
3 qu'on vous estime.

children

children 1 must do what 2 they are bid 2.	1 <i>enfant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ce qu'on leur commande.</i>
it was necessary to go 1 to Rome.	1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Rome</i> , n. m.
is 1 it necessary for me to do 1 what must 2 be undone 2 ?	1 <i>faut-il que je fasse.</i> 2 <i>il faut défaire.</i>
you shall learn 1 your lesson 2.	1 <i>apprendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>leçon</i> , n. f.
you shall not go out 1.	1 <i>sortir</i> , v. 2.
one should not be ungrateful 1.	1 <i>ingrat</i> , adj.
when 1 one has nothing good to say 1, one 2 should 2 be 3 silent 3.	1 <i>quand on n'a rien de bon à dire.</i> 2 <i>il faut.</i> 3 <i>garder le silence.</i>

## R U L E II.

The Verb *faut*, is sometimes englished by *must have* or *want*; and if it is *I, thou, he, she, we, you, or they*, who must have or want, we ought to use the conjunctive pronouns in the dative, as,

*Il me faut des bas.*

*I must have stockings.*

*il nous faut des troupes.*

*we want troops.*

*il leur faut des habits.*

*they want cloaths.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I must have a pen 1, ink 2, and paper 3.	1 <i>plume</i> , n. f. 2 <i>encre</i> , n. f. 3 <i>papier</i> , n. m.
thou must have a better 1 horse 2.	1 <i>meilleur</i> , adj. 2 <i>cheval</i> , n. m.
he must have a small 1 house 2.	1 <i>petit</i> , adj. 2 <i>maison</i> , n. f.
she must have a pair 1 of gloves 2.	1 <i>paire</i> , n. f. 2 <i>gant</i> , n. m.
we must have better officers 1.	1 <i>officier</i> , n. m.
ye want some 1 good 2 books 3.	1 <i>quelque</i> , adj. 2 <i>bon</i> , adj. 3 <i>livre</i> , n. m.
they want a better master 1.	1 <i>maître</i> , n. m.

## R U L E III.

The same Verb is used absolutely at the end of a phrase, with the conjunction *comme*, or the pronoun *ce que*, as

*Faites*



*Faites mon habit comme il faut.* Make my coat as it should be.  
*prenez, ce qu'il vous faut.* take what you must have.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Do 1 your work 2 again 1 ; 1 *Refaire*, v. 5. 2 *ouvrage*,  
 it is not as it should be. n. m.  
 do 1 the things 2 as they 1 *faire*, v. 5. *chose*, n. f. 3 *satis-*  
 should be ; and I shall be *faire*, v. 5.  
 satisfied 3.  
 I have told 1 him what 2 I 1 *dire*, v. 4. 2 *ce que*. 3 *il fal-*  
 should 3. *loit*.

*Regimen of French Verbs.*

By the Regimen of a Verb, I mean a Noun or Pronoun, expressing what the action or signification of that Verb has a relation to ; for instance, when I say, *I hate vice*, one may see that my action of hating is related to *vice*. Again, when I say, *we profit by their example*, one may see that the meaning of the Verb *we profit*, is related to *their example*. Therefore, *vice* is the regimen of the Verb *I hate* in the first sentence, and *by their example* is that of the Verb *we profit* in the second.

There are two sorts of regimen, *viz.* the absolute and the relative, the first being the nominative or accusative, and the other the genitive, dative, or ablative.

*I. Verbs Active.*

R U L E I.

The active Verb governs the accusative, as

*Un bon sujet aime son roi.* A good subject loves his king.  
*l'arbre, que vous avez vu, pro-* the tree which you have seen  
*duit d'excellent fruit.* produces excellent fruit.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Wisdom 1 hath builded 2 her 1 *Sagesse*, n. f. 2 *bâtir*, v. 2.  
 house 3, she has hewn out 4 3 *maison*, n. f. 4 *tailler*, v.  
 her



her seven 5 pillars 6.

the people 1 shall curse 2  
him 3 that 3 withholdeth 4  
corn 5 ; but 6 blessing 7  
shall be upon 8 the head 9  
of him that felleth 10 it.

a wise 2 son 1 heareth 3 his  
father's 5 instruction 4 ;  
but a scorner 6 heareth not  
rebuke 7.

a 1 good man 1 leaveth 2 an  
inheritance 3 to his chil-  
dren's 4 children.

the Lord 1 will destroy 2 the  
house of the proud 3, but  
he will establish 4 the bor-  
ders 5 of the widow 6.

the Lord is far 1 from the  
wicked 2 ; but he heareth  
the prayer 3 of the righte-  
ous 4.

the Lord has made 1 all 2  
things 3 for 4 himself 5.

he 1 that 1 justifieth 2 the  
wicked, and he that con-  
demneth 3 the just 4, e-  
ven 5 they both are abo-  
mination to the Lord 5.

a merry 2 heart 1 does 3  
good 4 like 5 a medicine 6 ;  
but a 7 broken spirit 7  
drieth 8 the bones 9.

a man 1 that has friends 2,  
must 3 shew himself 4  
friendly 5.

1. 5 *sept.* adj. und. 6 *co-*  
*lonne*, n. f.

1 *peuple*, n. m. 2 *maudire*,  
v. 4. 3 *celui qui*. 4 *retenir*,  
v. 2. 5 *bled*, n. m. 6 *mais*,  
conj. 7 *bénédiction*, n. f.  
8 *sur*, prep. 9 *tête*, n. f. 10  
*vendre*, v. 6.

1 *filz*, n. m. 2 *sage*, adj. 3 *é-*  
*couter*, v. 1. 4 *instruction*,  
n. f. 5 *pere*, n. m. 6 *mos-*  
*queur*, n. m. 7 *réprimande*,  
n. f.

1 *l'honnête homme*. 2 *laisser*, v.  
1. 3 *héritage*, n. m. 4 *en-*  
*fant*, plur. *ans*, n. m.

1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *détruire*,  
v. 4. 3 *orgueilleux*, n. m.  
4 *affermir*, v. 2. 5 *les limites*.  
6 *vœux*, n. f.

1 *Loin*. 2 *méchant*, plur. *ans*,  
n. m. 3 *prière*, n. f. 4 *juste*,  
n. m.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *tout*, adj. *chose*,  
n. f. 4 *pour*, prep. 5 *lui-*  
*même*, pron. nom.

1 *celui qui*. 2 *justifier*, v. 1.  
3 *condamner*, v. 1. 4 *juste*,  
adj. 5 *sont en abomination*  
*devant le Seigneur*.

1 *cœur*, n. m. 2 *joyeux*, adj.  
3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *du bien*.  
5 *comme*. 6 *médecine*, n. f.  
7 *un esprit abbatu*. 8 *des-*  
*cher*, v. 1. 9 *os*, n. m.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *ami*, n. m.  
3 *devoir*, v. 3. 4 *se montrer*,  
v. 1. 5 *porté à faire du*  
*bien*.

R U L E

R U L E II.

The same Verb governs also the dative, as

*Il a donné du pain aux pauvres.* He has given bread to the poor.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Is it lawful 1 to 2 give 3 tribute 4 to Cesar 5, or not 6?

1 *permis*, 2 *de*, prep. 3 *payer*, v. 1. 4 *le tribut*. 5 *à Cesar*. 6 *ou non*.

shew 1 me the 2 tribute money 2; and they brought 3 him a penny 4.

1 *montrer*, v. 1. 2 *l'argent du tribut*. 3 *apporter*, v. 1. 4 *sou*, n. m.

render 1 to Cesar, the 2 things which are Cesar's 2, and to God 3, the 4 things that are God's 4.

1 *rendre*, v. 6. 2 *ce qui appartient à Cesar*. 3 *Dieu*, n. m. 4 *ce qui appartient à Dieu*.

do 1 good 2 to them that hate 3 you.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *du bien*. 3 *haïr* v. 2.

give 1 us this 2 day 2 our daily 4 bread 3.

1 *donner*, v. 1. 2 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 3 *pain*, n. m. 4 *quotidien*, adj.

forgive 1 us our trespasses 2, as 3 we forgive them 4 that 4 trespass 5 against 5 us.

1 *pardonner*, v. 1. 2 *offense*, n. f. 3 *comme*. 4 *à ceux qui*. 5 *offencer*, v. 1.

if 1 you forgive men 2 their trespasses, your heavenly 4 father 3 will also 5 forgive you; but 6 if you forgive not men 7 their trespasses, neither 8 will your father forgive 8 your trespasses.

1 *si*, conj. 2 *aux hommes*. 3 *pere*, n. m. 4 *celeste*, adj. 5 *aussi*, conj. 6 *mais*, conj. 7 *aux hommes*. 8 *votre pere ne vous pardonnera point non plus*.

give not that 1 which 1 is holy 2 to the dogs 3.

1 *ce qui*, pron. nom. 2 *saint*, adj. 3 *chien*, n. m.

discover 1 not your secret 2 to those 3 who 4 have a 5 mind 5 to 6 betray 7 you.

1 *découvrir*, v. 2. 2 *secret*, n. m. 3 *à ceux*. 4 *qui*. 5 *envie*. 6 *de*, prep. 7 *trahir*, v. 2.

II. Verbs

II. *Verbs passive.*

## RULE I.

Such verbs passive as denote the inward actions of the soul commonly govern the genitive or ablative, as

*Il est aimé de tout le monde.*

He is loved by every body.

*il est haï du prince.*

he is hated by the prince.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I am reading 1 a book 2, which 3 is esteemed 4 by all 5 the connoisseurs 6.

1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *livre*, n. m. 3 *qui*. 4 *estimer*, v. 1. 5 *tout*, plur. tous, adj. 9 *connoisseur*, n. m.

the man 1, whom 2 I recommend 3 to you, is loved 4 and esteemed by all those 5 who 6 know 7 him.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *que*. 3 *recommander*, v. 1. 4 *aimer*, v. 1. 5 *ceux*. 6 *qui*. 7 *connoître*, v. 5.

our sovereign 1 behaves 2 so 3 wisely 3, that 4 he is respected 5 even by those 6 who 6 don't love 7 him.

1 *souverain*, n. m. 2 *se conduire*, v. 4. 3 *si* sagement. 4 *que*. 5 *respecter*, v. 1. 6 *ceux qui*. 7 *aimer*, v. 1.

if 1 he is not loved by his subjects 2, he is feared 3 by them; and that 4 is sufficient for him 4.

1 *si*, conj. 2 *sujet*, n. m. 3 *craindre*, v. 6. 4 *cela lui suffit*.

## RULE II.

Such verbs passive as denote outward actions, commonly govern the accusative with the preposition *par*, as

*Il a été tué par son propre fils.*

He was killed by his own son.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Cæsar 1 was killed 2 in 3 the senate-house 3 by those 4 he had loaded 5 with 6 kindnesses 6.

1 *César*, n. m. 2 *tuer*, v. 1. 3 *en plein sénat*. 4 *ceux qui*. 5 *comblé*, v. 1. 6 *de bienfaits*.

it 1 is reported 1 that Babylon 2, the 3 capital city 3

1 *on dit*. 2 *Babylone*, n. f. 3 *capitale*, n. f. 4 *empire*, n. m.



## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH. 165

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>of the empire 4. of Assyria 5, was founded 6 by Semiramis.</p> <p>Great 1 Britain 1 was formerly 2 inhabited 3 by the Bretons 4 and Picts 5.</p> <p>Westminster 2 bridge 1 has been built 3 by a very skilful 4 architect 5.</p> | <p>5 <i>Assirie</i>, n. f. 6 <i>fonder</i>, v. 1.</p> <p>1 <i>la Grande Bretagne</i>. 2 <i>autrefois</i>. 3 <i>habiter</i>, v. 1. 4 <i>Breton</i>, n. m. 5 <i>Picte</i>, n. m.</p> <p>1 <i>pont</i>, n. m. 2 <i>Westminster</i>, n. m. 3 <i>bâtir</i>, v. 2. 4 <i>habile</i>, adj. 5 <i>architecte</i>, n. m.</p> |
|---|---|

### R U L E III.

Verbs passive denoting actions, that come both from the body and mind, may govern the genitive and ablative, or the accusative with the preposition *par*, as *il est loué de*, or *par beaucoup de gens*, he is praised by many people.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>The duke 1 of Randan, as 2 he left 2 Hanover 3, did 4 an action 5 that 6 was praised 7 by his enemies 8.</p> <p>the prince 1, as 2 he entered the city 2, was congratulated 3 by the citizens 4.</p> | <p>1 <i>duc</i>, n. m. 2 <i>en quittant</i>. 3 <i>Hanovre</i>, n. m. 4 <i>faire</i>, v. 1. 5 <i>action</i>, n. f. 6 <i>qui</i>. 7 <i>louer</i>, v. 1. 8 <i>ennemi</i>, n. m.</p> <p>1 <i>prince</i>, n. m. 2 <i>en entrant dans la ville</i>. 3 <i>féliciter</i>, v. 1. 4 <i>bourgeois</i>, n. m.</p> |
|---|---|

Each of the foregoing exercises ought to make two sentences; in the first whereof, the verb passive will govern the genitive, or ablative; and in the last the accusative, with the preposition *par*.

The last rule not being general, I must here advise the learner, to make the verbs contained therein govern the accusative with the preposition *par*. In so doing, they cannot mistake; whereas they might use the genitive or ablative with a verb that governs neither of those two cases.

### III. *Verbs Neuter and Reflexed.*

#### R U L E I.

The absolute regimen of these verbs is the nominative, as



*Il paroît tout changé.  
il se tient droit.*

He seems to be quite changed,  
he stands upright.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This cloth 1 seems 2 good 3  
to me, you may buy 4 it  
upon 5 my word 5.

the school 1 has been useful 2  
to your grandson 3. He  
grows 4 tall 5, and ap-  
pears 6 a 7 better scholar 7  
than he was six 8 months  
ago 8.

what 1 is it that 1 disturbs 2  
you? you seem quite 3  
different from what you  
was 3 yesterday 4.

1 *drap*, n. m. 2 *paroître*, v. 5.  
3 *bon*, adj. 4 *acheter*, v. 1.  
5 *sur ma parole*.

1 *école*, n. f. 2 *utile*, adj.  
3 *petit fils*, n. m. 4 *devenir*  
v. 2. 5 *grand*, adj. 6 *paroître*,  
v. 5. 7 *plus savant*. 8 *il y a six mois*.

1 *qu'est-ce qui*. 2 *chagriner*,  
v. 1. 3 *tout autre que vous n'étiez*. 4 *hier*, adv.

R U L E II.

The relative regimen of the same verbs is the dative, as

*Ce tableau plaît à ma sœur,*

This picture pleases my sister

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is not surprising 1 that 2  
I don't love 3 this woman 4,  
she displeases 5 every 6  
body 6.

I am not a judge 1 of verses 2;  
here 3 are some 3 that 4  
please 5 me; do you think 6  
that they are good 7?

here 1 is one 1 of the finest 2  
country-houses 3 I 4 have  
seen in my life 4; whom 5  
do you think it belongs 6  
to 5?

an honest 1 man 2 does not  
seek 3 to 4 hurt 5 his  
neighbour 6.

1 *Surprenant*, adj. 2 *que*  
3 *aimer*, v. 1. 4 *femme*, n.  
f. 5 *deplaire*, v. 5. 6 *à tout le monde*.

1 *juge*, n. m. 2 *vers*, n. m. 3 *voilà*. 4 *qui*. 5 *plaire*, v. 5. 6 *croire*, v. 5. 7 *bon*, adj.

1 *voilà une*. 2 *beau, belle*, adj. 3 *maison de campagne*, n. 4 *que j'ai eues de ma vie*. 5 *à qui*. 6 *appartenir*, v. 2.

1 *bonnete*, adj. 2 *homme*, n. m. 3 *chercher*, v. 1. 4 *à nuire à*, v. 4. 6 *prochain*, n. m.

this book 1 seems 2 to me well 3 wrote 4; but 5 is 6 it really so 6?	1 <i>livre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>paraître</i> , v. 5. 3 <i>bien</i> , adv. 4 <i>écrire</i> , v. 4. 5 <i>mais</i> , conj. 6 <i>l'est-il en effet</i> .
one may 1 accustom one's self 2 to 3 any thing 3.	1 <i>pouvoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>s'accoutumer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>à tout</i> .
he has abandoned himself 1 to all 2 kinds 3 of vices 4.	1 <i>s'abandonner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>tout</i> , adj. 3 <i>sorte</i> , n. f. 4 <i>vices</i> , n. m.
why 1 don't you apply your- self 1 to study 2?	1 <i>que ne vous appliquez vous</i> . 2 <i>étude</i> , n. f.

### R U L E III.

Such of the verbs neuter and reflected, as govern the dative, often govern the infinitive with the preposition *à*, as

*Il songe à son salut.*

He thinks of his own safety.

*il songe à faire fortune.*

he thinks of making his fortune.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

when 1 will you proceed 2 to elect 3 your magistrates 4?	1 <i>quand</i> , adv. 2 <i>procéder</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>élire</i> , v. 4. 4 <i>magistrat</i> , n. m.
I expect 1 to see 2 my fa- ther 3 in 4 two or three days 4.	1 <i>attendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>père</i> , n. m. 4 <i>dans deux ou trois jours</i> .
your friend 1 has 2 taken up- on himself 2 to defend 3 my cause 4.	1 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 2 <i>s'engager</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>défendre</i> , v. 6. 4 <i>cause</i> , n. f.
you must resolve 1 to suffer 2 what 3 you can't 4 help 5.	1 <i>se résoudre</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>souffrir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>ce que</i> , pron. nom. 4 <i>pouvoir</i> , v. 3. 5 <i>empêcher</i> , v. 1.
prepare 1 yourself 1 to re- ceive 2 the best 3 of your friends.	1 <i>se préparer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>meilleur</i> , adj.
I accustom myself 1 to read 2 four 4 pages 5 of Gil-Blas every 3 day 3.	1 <i>s'accoutumer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>lire</i> , v. 4. 3 <i>tous les jours</i> 4 <i>quatre</i> , adj. und. 5 <i>page</i> , n. f.

I love

I love 1 your cousin 2, be-  
cause 3 he takes 4 a de-  
light 4 in doing 5 what  
his master 6 bids 7 him.

1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *cousin*, n. m.  
3 *parceque*, conj. 4 *se plaire*,  
v. 5. 5 *à faire*. 6 *maître*,  
n. m. 7 *ordonner*, v. 1.

### R U L E IV.

Many verbs neuter and reflected govern the genitive of  
a noun, and the infinitive of a verb with the preposition  
*de*, as

*S'abstenir de vin.*

To abstain from wine.

*s'abstenir de boire du vin.*

to abstain from drinking wine.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

What 1 are you speaking 2  
of 1? do you speak of  
peace 3 or war 4?

1 *de quoi*. 2 *parler*, v. 1. 3 *paix*,  
n. f. 4 *guerre*, n. f.

we shall lose 1 our friend 3  
soon 2; for 4 he speaks  
of 5 going 5 to 6 Ameri-  
ca 6.

1 *perdre*, v. 4. 2 *bientôt*, adv.  
3 *ami*, n. m. 4 *car*, conj.  
5 *d'aller*. 6 *en Amérique*.

your son 1 repents 2 of his  
fault 3; you must forgive 4  
him.

1 *fils*, n. m. 2 *se repentir*, v. 2.  
3 *faute*, n. f. 4 *pardonner*,  
v. 1.

he 1 has a mind 1 to deceive 2  
you; mistrust 3 him.

1 *il veut*. 2 *tromper*, v. 1. 3 *se*  
*méfier*, v. 1.

why 1 will 2 you have me  
give over 2 my preten-  
sions 3, since 4 they are  
just 5?

1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *voulez*  
*vous que je me désiste de*.  
3 *prétension*, n. f. 4 *puisque*,  
conj. 5 *juste*, n. f.

one grows 1 often 2 tired 1  
with the best 3 dishes 4.

1 *se laisser*, v. 1. 2 *souvent*, adv.  
3 *meilleur*, adj. 4 *mets*, n. m.

I am tired 1 to repeat 2 so 3  
often the same 4 things 5.

1 *se laisser*, v. 1. 2 *répéter*, v. 1.  
3 *si*. 4 *même*, adj. 5 *chose*, n. f.

I pretend 1 to nothing 2.

1 *je ne me pique*. 2 *rien*, n. m.

I pretend 1 to know 2 my  
trade 3.

1 *se piquer*, v. 1. 2 *savoir*,  
v. 3. 3 *métier*, n. m.



IV. Verbs Impersonal.

R U L E I.

The impersonal verbs *il suffit*, *il convient*, *il importe*, and *il m'ennuie*, govern the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as  
*Il suffit de lui parler.* It is enough to speak to him.

Exercises upon this Rule.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| It 1 will be sufficient 1 to follow 2 his orders 3.                        | 1 <i>Il suffira.</i> 2 <i>sui-vre</i> , v. 4. 3 <i>ordre</i> , n. m.  |
| it 1 is fit 1 one 2 should do it 2.  | 1 <i>il convient.</i> 2 <i>de le faire.</i>   |
| when 1 one intends 2 to end 4 well 3, it 5 is requisite 5 to begin 6 well. | 1 <i>quand</i> , conj. 2 <i>vouloir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>bien</i> , adv. 4 <i>finir</i> , v. 2. 5 <i>il importe.</i> 6 <i>commencer</i> , v. 1. |
| I am tired 1 with waiting 2.   | 1 <i>il m'ennuie</i> , 2 <i>attendre</i> , v. 6.  |

R U L E II.

The three first of the foregoing verbs govern also the dative, as

*Il vous suffit de faire votre devoir.* It is enough for you to do your duty.

Exercises upon this Rule.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| It 1 is enough 1 for us to mind 2 our 3 own affairs 3.                    | 1 <i>Il suffit.</i> 2 <i>songer</i> , v. 1. 3 à <i>nos propres affaires.</i>   |
| it becomes 1 you to act 2 otherwise 3.                                    | 1 <i>il convient.</i> 2 <i>agir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>autrement</i> , adv.  |
| what 1 is it to him 1 to know 2 if 3 his enemy 4 is dead 5 or 6 alive 7 ? | 1 <i>que lui importe.</i> 2 <i>savoir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>si</i> , conj. 4 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m. 5 <i>mort</i> , p. p. 6 <i>au</i> , conj. 7 <i>en vie.</i> |

R U L E III.

The impersonal verbs *il s'ensuit*, *il y va*, and *il s'agit*, govern the genitive, as

*Il s'ensuit de là.* It follows from thence.

I

Exercises



# 170 EXERCISES upon the

## Exercises upon this Rule.

It follows 1 from what 2 you have said 4, that 4 merit 5 is not always 6 rewarded 7.  
 my happiness 2 or 3 unhappiness 4 is 1 concerned in it.  
 your life 2 is 1 at stake 1.

1 *Il s'ensuit.* 2 *ce que.* 3 *dire,*  
 v. 4. 4 *que.* 5 *mérite, n. m.*  
 6 *toujours, adv.* 7 *recompenser, v. 1.*  
 1 *il y va.* 2 *bonheur, n. m.*  
 3 *ou, conj.* 4 *malheur, n. m.*  
 1 *il s'agit.* 2 *vie, n. f.*

Note, That the last of these verbs govern also the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as *il s'agit de savoir s'il a raison*, the question is to know whether he is in the right.

## V. Rules upon some French Verbs.

### RULE I.

*Forcer*, to force, to compel. *manquer*, to fail.  
*contraindre*, to compel. *différer*, to delay.  
*commencer*, to begin. *se hâter*, to hasten.  
*continuer*, to continue, to go on. *se bazarder*, to venture.  
*coûter*, to cost.

govern the infinitive with *de* or *à*, as

*Je vous forcerai de le faire*, or *I shall compel you to do it.*  
*à le faire.*

## Exercises upon this Rule.

We took 1 the town 2 and forced 3 the garrison 4 to surrender 5 prisoners 6 of war 7.  
 when 1 will you begin 1 to lead 2 a more christian 4 life 3?  
 hasten 1 to finish 2 what 3 you have begun two 4 days ago 4.

1 *Prendre, v. 6.* 2 *ville, n. f.*  
 3 *forcer, v. 1.* 4 *garnison, n. f.* 5 *se rendre, v. 6.* 6 *prisonniere.* 7 *guerre, n. f.*  
 1 *quand commencerez vous 2 mener, v. 1.* 3 *vie, n. f.* 4 *chrétien, enne, adj.*  
 1 *se hâter, v. 1.* 2 *finir, v. 2.* 3 *ce que.* 4 *depuis deux jours.*

### RULE II.

*Persuader*, to persuade; when it is followed by an infinitive, governs the dative, as *je leur ai persuadé de le vendre*, have

have persuaded them to sell it; but when it is not followed by that mood, it governs the accusative, as *je les ai persuadés*, I have persuaded them.

*Exercises upon these Rules.*

This young man 1 is a rake 2	1 <i>Jeune homme.</i> 2 <i>libertin</i> , n.
who 3 disgraces 4 his family 5, I wish 6 that 7	m. 3 <i>qui.</i> 4 <i>deshonorer</i> , v. 1.
somebody 8 might 9 persuade him 9 to 10 go 11	5 <i>famille</i> , n. f. 6 <i>je voudrais.</i>
to 12 sea 12.	7 <i>que.</i> 8 <i>quelqu'un.</i> 9 <i>pût lui</i>
it is impossible 1 to persuade	<i>persuader,</i> 10 <i>de,</i> prep.
those 2 who 2 are 3 not	11 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 12 <i>sur mer.</i>
willing 3 to 4 be persuaded 4.	1 <i>impossible</i> , adj. 2 <i>ceux qui.</i>
	3 <i>vouloir</i> , v. 3. 4 <i>qu'on les</i>
	<i>persuade.</i>

R U L E III.

Such verbs as are joined to nouns used without any article govern the infinitive with the preposition *de* before it, as

<i>J'ai droit de les punir.</i>	I have a right to punish them.
<i>il a envie d'aller en France.</i>	he has a mind to go to France.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We have reason 1 to complain 2 of you.	1 <i>Sujet</i> , n. m. 2 <i>se plaindre</i> v. 6.
you 1 are in the wrong 1 to disinherit 2 a nephew 3	1 <i>vous avez tort.</i> 2 <i>deshériter</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>neveu</i> , n. m. 4 <i>qui.</i>
who 4 loves 5 you.	5 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1.
I never 1 gave 2 you any 3 cause 3 to hate 4 me.	1 <i>jamais</i> , adv. 2 <i>donner</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>sujet.</i> 4 <i>hàir</i> , v. 2.
have you a 1 mind 1 to learn 2 French 3?	1 <i>envie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>apprendre</i> , v. 6. 3 <i>François</i> , n. m.
have you any 1 reason 1 to be dissatisfied 2 with 3 my conduct 4?	1 <i>raison.</i> 2 <i>mécontent</i> , adj. 3 <i>de</i> , prep. 4 <i>conduite</i> , n. f.

R U L E IV.

The verb *être* joined to several adjectives, govern also the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as

I 2

je

172 EXERCISES upon the

*je suis heureux de savoir m'occuper.*

I am happy in knowing how to employ my time.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Trust 1 to him, he is not capable 2 of deceiving 3 you.

1 *Se fier*, v. 1. 2 *capable*, adj. 3 *tromper*, v. 1.

I am very curious 1 of knowing 2 whether 3 there 4 has been 4 a 5 sea-fight 5. he is going 1 to 2 a country 2, where 3 he is sure 4 of making 5 his fortune 6.

1 *curieux*, adj. 2 *savoir*, v. 3. 3 *si*, conj. 4 *il y a eu*. 5 *un combat naval*.

we are overjoyed 1 to see 2 you returned 3 in 4 good health 4.

1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *dans un pays*. 3 *où*, adv. 4 *sur*, adj. 5 *faire*, v. 5. 6 *fortune*, n. f.

are you sorry 1 to hear 2 that 3 he is still 4 alive 5?

1 *ravi*, adj. 2 *voir*, v. 3. 3 *retourner*, v. 1. 4 *en bonne santé*.

1 *fâché*, adj. 2 *apprendre*, v. 6. 3 *que*. 4 *encore*, adv. 5 *en vie*.

R U L E V.

When the verb *être* is placed between the pronoun *ce* and a noun, or an adjective, it governs the infinitive with *que* de before it, as

*C'est une folie que de se méconnoître.*

It is a folly to forget one's former condition.

*c'est être coupable que de ne pas protéger l'innocent.*

it is a crime not to protect the innocent.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

He 1 is happy 1 who 2 thinks 2 himself 3 so 3. it is an idle 1 fancy 1 to imagine 2 that 3 we 4 can impose upon God 4.

1 *C'est être heureux*. 2 *que de croire*. 3 *qu'on l'est*.

1 *chimère*, n. f. 2 *s'imaginer*, v. 1. 3 *que*. 4 *on peut en imposer à Dieu*.

R U L E VI.

*Croire*, to think; and *penser*, to think; which commonly govern the indicative with the conjunction *que*, may also govern a verb in the infinitive, if that verb has the same nominative



minative as they. For instance, instead of saying *vous croyez*, or *vous pensez que vous faites des merveilles*, you think that you are doing wonders, we may say *vous croyez*, or *vous pensez faire des merveilles*.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There are 1 christians 2 who 3 think that 4 they are doing God service 4, in 5 persecuting 6 their fellow 7 creatures 7.	1 <i>Il y a.</i> 2 <i>chrétien</i> , n. m. 3 <i>qui.</i> 4 <i>rendre service à Dieu.</i> 5 <i>en</i> , prep. 6 <i>persécuter</i> , v. 1. 7 <i>semblable</i> , n. m.
he thinks of making 1 his fortune 2 in 3 trade 3, but 4 he will find himself 5 mistaken 6.	1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>fortune</i> , n. f. 3 <i>dans le commerce.</i> 4 <i>mais</i> , conj. 5 <i>se trouver</i> , v. 1. 6 <i>tromper</i> , v. 1.

R U L E VII.

The verbs *je ne sai*, I don't know ; *j'ignore*, I don't know, and such like, govern the indicative, when they are followed by the conjunction *si*, whether ; as,

*Je ne sai si vous viendrez.* I don't know whether you will come.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We don't know 1 whether we 2 are to be 2 happy 3 or 4 unhappy 5.	1 <i>Savoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>nous serons.</i> 3 <i>heureux</i> , adj. 4 <i>ou</i> , conj. 5 <i>malheureux</i> , adj.
you don't know whether you 1 may live 1 till 2 to morrow 2.	1 <i>vous vivrez.</i> 2 <i>jusqu'à demain.</i>

R U L E VIII.

The verb *je vais* denotes our going to do a thing, as

*Je vais le faire,* I am just going to do it.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Are 1 you just going 1 to oppose 2 my designs 3?	1 <i>allez vous.</i> 2 <i>vous opposer à.</i> 3 <i>dessein</i> , n. m.
I am going 1 to make 2 my exercise 3 and my verses 4.	1 <i>aller</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 3 <i>thème</i> , n. m. 4 <i>vers</i> , n. m.



## RULE IX.

The verb *je viens*, denotes our having just done a thing, as

*Je viens d'arriver.*

I am just arrived.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You 1 cannot 1 speak 2 to 1 *vous ne sauriez.* 2 *parler.*  
the judge 3, because 4 *v. 1.* 3 judge, n. m. 4 *par-*  
he 5 is just set out 5 for 6 *ceque, conj.* 5 *il vient de*  
London 7. *partir.* 6 *pour, prep.* 7 *Lon-*  
*dres, n. m.*

we 1 were just arrived 1, 1 *nous venions d'arriver.* 2  
when 2 he began 3 his *quand, conj.* 3 *commencer,*  
speech 4. *v. 1.* 4 *discours, n. m.*

## RULE X.

The verb *penser*, used in the preterite, denotes what we were upon the point of doing and have not done, as

*Il pensa périr.*

He was just upon the point of perishing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

They say 1 that 2 your 1 *On dit.* 2 *que.* 3 *nièce, n. f.*  
niece 3 has 4 been at the 4 *a pensé mourir.*

I 1 have been at the point of 1 *j'ai pensé mourir.* 2 *mais,*  
death 1; but 2 God 3 be *conj. Dieu merci.* 4 *je me*  
thanked 3, I 4 am well 4. *porte bien.*

*Of the undeclined parts of Speech.*

These parts of speech, as it has been observed, are the *Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.* There is but little to be said upon the last. As to the three first, I have already been so particular upon each of them, that I must content myself with making two remarks in this place.

I shall observe first, that altho' the adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions are commonly divided into several classes, an adverb, a preposition, and a conjunction may belong to

two or more of its respective classes. For instance, the significative preposition *à* may also be ranked amongst the prepositions of *place*, *order*, *union*, and *end*.

It is a preposition of *place*, when it shews the place, as  
*Se placer à la tête de l'armée.* To place one's self at the head  
of the army.

It is a preposition of *order*, when it expresses the order of things, as

*Marcher deux à deux.* To walk two by two.

It is a preposition of *union*, when it denotes the circumstances of time, suitableness and motive, as

*à midi.* At noon.  
*à votre commodité.* at your leisure.  
*à votre considération.* for your sake.

Lastly, it is a preposition of *end*, when it denotes the aim or end, as

*Réduire à l'aumône.* To reduce to beggary.  
*de dix à douze.* from ten to twelve.

Secondly, I shall observe that the same word may keep the places of two or more parts of speech. For instance, the word *bien* is a noun in the following sentence, *viz.*

*Ce seigneur a un bien considérable.* This nobleman has a considerable estate.

And it is an adverb in the following one, *viz.*

*Si vos affaires ne vont pas bien, c'est la faute de ceux qui les conduisent.* If your affairs don't go right, it is the fault of those that manage them.

EXER.

# EXERCISES

EXTRACTED OUT OF

## THE HOLY SCRIPTURES.

### I. *The Creation 1 of the World 2.*

(A.) **I** N 1 the beginning 1 God 2 created 3 the heaven 4, the earth 5, and 6 all 7 the things 8 contained 9 therein 9. He created them in 10 six days 10, and rested 11 the 12 seventh day 12 : therefore 13 he blessed 14 that day and sanctified 15 it.

(B.) The Lord 1 God formed 2 the man 3 of the dust 4 of the ground 5, breathed 6 into 7 his nostrils 8 the breath 9 of life 10, made 11 him after 12 his own likeness 12 and called 13 him Adam.

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Création*, n. f. 2 *monde*, n. m.

13 *c'est pourquoi*. 14 *benir*, v. 2. 15 *sanctifier*, v. 1.

(A.) 1 *Au commencement*. 2 *Dieu*, n. m. 3 *créer*, v. 1. 4 *ciel*, n. m. 5 *terre*, n. f. 6 *Et*, conj. 7 *tout*, adj. 8 *chose*, n. f. 9 *qui y sont contenues*. 10 *en six jours*. 11 *se reposer*, v. 1. 12 *le septieme jour*.

(B.) 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *former*, v. 1. 3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *poussiere*, n. f. 5 *terre*, n. f. 6 *souffler*, v. 1. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *narine*, n. f. 9 *soufle*, n. m. 10 *vie*, n. f. 11 *faire*, v. 5. 12 *à son image*. 13 *nommer*, v. 1.

(C.) God

(C.) God said 1 afterwards 2, it is not good 3 that 4 the man should be alone 4, I will make him an help 5 meet 6 for him 6. He 7 therefore caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam 7, and he slept 8, and he took 9 one 10 of his ribs 11, made 12 a woman out of it 12 and brought 13 her to the man.

(D.) Adam, seeing 1 her, said, this 2 is now 2 bone 3 of my bones, and flesh 4 of my flesh. Therefore 5 shall a man leave 5 his father 6 and his mother 7 and shall cleave 8 unto 9 his wife 10, and 11 they shall be in one flesh 11. Adam and his wife were 12 both naked, and were not ashamed 12.

THE DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 Dire, v. 4. 2 ensuite, adv. 3 bon, adj. 4 quel homme soit seul. 5 aide, n. m. 6 semblable à lui. 7 il envoya donc à Adam un profond sommeil. 8 dormir, v. 2. 9 prendre, v. 6. 10 un, adj. 11 côte, n. f. 12 en fit une femme. 13 amener, v. 1.

(D.) 1 Voir, v. 3. 2 voici, adv. 3 os, n. m. 4 chair, n. f. 5 c'est pourquoi l'homme quittera. 6 pere, n. m. 7 mere, n. f. 8 s'attacher, v. 1. 9 à, prep. 10 femme, n. f. 11 et ils ne seront qu'une même chair. 12 étoient nus & ne rougiroient point.

II. The Fall 1 of our First 2 Parents 3.

(A.) God 1 put 2 Adam and Eve in 3 a delightful 5 garden 4, producing 6 all 7 kinds 8 of fruit 9. There 10 was also in the middle thereof 10 the tree 11 of knowledge 12 of good 13 and evil 14.

THE DICTIONARY.

1 Chute, n. f. 2 premier, adj. 3 parent, plur. ens, n. m. (A.) 1 Dieu, plur. Dieux, n. m. 2 mettre, v. 4. 3 dans, prep. 4 jardin, n. m. 5 délicieux, adj. 6 qui produisoit. 7 tout,

adj. 8 sorte, n. f. 9 fruit, n. m. 10 il y avoit aussi au milieu de ce jardin. 11 arbre, n. m. 12 connoissance, n. f. 13 bien, n. m. 14 mal, n. m.



(B.) God said 1 to Adam, *thou may'st* 2 *freely* 3 *eat* 4 *of* 5 *every tree* 5 *of the garden*, except 6 *that* 6 *of the knowledge of good and evil*; for 7 *in* 8 *the day* 8 *that* 9 *thou eatest thereof* 9, *thou shalt die* 10.

(C.) The serpent 1, which 2 was more subtle 3 than any 4 of the beasts 5 which the Lord 6 had made 7, said to the woman 8, *has God said*, *ye shall not eat of every tree in the garden?*

(D.) *We may*, answered 1 the woman, *eat of the fruit of the trees* 2 *of the garden*; but 3 *of the fruit* 5 *of the tree which* 6 *is in the midst of the garden*, God has said, *ye* 4 *shall not eat of it* 4, lest 8 *ye die* 8.

(E.) The serpent replied 1, *if* 2 *you eat of it*, *you shall not die*; but God knows 3 *that in the day ye eat of it*, *your eyes* 4 *shall be opened* 5, and *ye shall be as gods knowing* 6 *good and evil*.

(F.) The woman seeing 1 that the fruit of that tree was good 2 for food and pleasant to the eyes 2, eat of it, and gave 3 some to her husband 4 who 5 eat of it also 6.

(G.) Their eyes were immediately 1 opened; they perceived 2 they were naked 3; they blushed 4, and covered 5 their nakedness 6.

### THE DICTIONARY.

- (B.) 1 *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *pouvoir*, n. m. 6 *qui*, pron. 7 *milieu*, n. m. 8 *de peur que vous ne mouriez*.  
 v. 3. 3 *librement*, adv. 4  
*manger*, v. 1. 5 *du fruit de tous les arbres*. 6 *à l'exception de celui*. 7 *car*, conj. (E.) 1 *Répliquer*, v. 1. 2 *si*, conj. 3 *savoir*, v. 3. 4 *œil*, plur. yeux, n. m. 5 *ouvrir*, v. 2. 6 *connoître*, v. 5.  
 8 *le jour*. 9 *que vous en mangerez*. 10 *mourir*, v. 2. (F.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *bon à manger* & *agréable à la vue*. 3 *donner*, v. 1. 4 *mari*, n. m. 5 *qui*, pron. 6 *aussi*.  
 (C.) 1 *Serpent*, n. m. 2 *qui*, pron. 3 *fin*, adj. 4 *aucun*, pron. nom. 5 *animal*, plur. aux, n. m. 6 *seigneur*, n. m. 7 *faire*, v. 5. 8 *femme*, n. f. (G.) 1 *Sur le champ*. 2 *apercevoir*, v. 3. 3 *nud*, adj. 4 *rougir*, v. 2. 5 *couvrir*, v. 2. 6 *nudité*, n. f. (H.)  
 (D.) 1 *Répondra*, v. 6. 2 *arbre*, n. m. 3 *mais*, conj. 4 *vous ne mangerez pas*. 5 *fruit*,

(H.) The Lord God, to punish 1 their crime 2, cursed 3 the ground 4, condemned 5 the woman to bring 6 forth children in sorrow 6, and the man 7 to eat bread 8 in 9 the sweat 9 of his face 10, and turned 11 both of them out 11 of 12 the garden 12. Adam called 13 then his wife's name Eve 13, because 14 she 15 was to be 15 the mother 16 of all men.

The DICTIONARY.

(H.) 1 *Pour punir*. 2 *crime*, n. m. 3 *maudire*, v. 4. 4 *terre*, n. f. 5 *condamner*, v. 1. 6 *à enfanter avec douleur*. 7 *homme*, n. m. 8 *son pain*. 9 *à la sueur*. 10 *visage*, n. m. 11 *les chassa tous deux*. 12 *du jardin*. 13 *donna alors à sa femme le nom d'Eve*. 14 *parceque*, conj. 15 *elle devoit être*. 16 *mere*.

III. *Cain kills 1 his Brother 2 Abel.*

(A.) Adam had several 1 children 2, amongst 3 whom 4 we reckon 5 Cain and Abel. The first 6 was a husbandman 7, and the other 8 a shepherd 9.

(B.) In 1 process of time 1 it 2 came to pass 2, that Cain having brought 3 of the first fruits 6 of the earth 7, an offering 5 to the Lord 4, Abel presented 8 also 9 to him the fattest 10 of the firstlings 11 of his flock 12.

(C.) The Lord had 1 respect unto 1 Abel and to his offering; but 2 to Cain and to his offering he 3 had not respect 3.

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Tuer*, v. 1. 2 *frere*, n. m. 4 *Seigneur*, n. m. 5 *offrande*, n. f. 6 *fruit*, n. m. 7 *terre*, n. f. 8 *présenter*, v. 1. 9 *aussi*, conj. 10 *gras*, adj. 11 *premier né*, adj. 12 *part*. 12 *troupeau*, n. m. (A.) 1 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. 2 *enfant*, plur. ans, n. m. 3 *entre*, prep. 4 *lesquels*. 5 *compter*, v. 1. 6 *premier*, adj. 7 *laboureur*, n. m. 8 *autre*, pron. nom. 9 *berger*, n. m. (C.) 1 *Avoir égard à*. 2 *mais*, conj. 3 *il n'eut point d'égard*. 2 *il arriva*. 3 *apporter*, v. 1.

(D.) Cain was very 1 wrath 2, talked 3 with 3 his brother Abel; and when 4 they were in 5 the field 5, rose 6 up against 6 him and slew 7 him.

(E.) The Lord 1 said 2 unto Cain, *where 3 is Abel thy brother?* And he said, *I know 4 not; am I my brother's keeper 5?* The Lord said, *what hast thou done 6?* thy brother's blood 7 calls for 8 revenge 9. Thou art cursed 10; when 11 thou tillest 11 the ground 12, it shall not henceforth 14 yield 13 unto 15 thee her strength 15; thou shalt be a fugitive 16 and a vagabond 17 in 18 the earth.

(F.) Cain said unto the Lord, *my punishment 1 is 2 greater than I can bear 2.* As 3 I 4 am to be 4 a fugitive and a vagabond, it shall come to pass that 5 every one that findeth me 5 shall slay me.

(G.) The Lord said unto him, *whosoever 1 slayeth 1 Cain, vengeance 2 shall be taken on him seven fold 2.* He set 3 afterwards 4 a mark 5 upon 6 him, lest 7 any 8 finding him should kill him 8.

### The DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 Fort, adv. 2 *fâché*, adj. 3 *parler à*, v. 1. 4 *quand*, conj. 5 *dans un champ*. 6 *se jeter sur*, v. 1. 7 *tuer*, v. 1.

(E.) 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *dire*, v. 4. 3 *où*, adv. 4 *savoir*, v. 3. 5 *gardien*, n. m. 6 *faire*, v. 5. 7 *sang*, n. m. 8 *démander*, v. 1. 9 *vengeance*, n. f. 10 *maudire*, v. 4. 11 *quand tu cultiveras*. 12 *terre*, n. f. 13 *produire*, v. 4. 14 *à l'avenir*. 15

*pour toi*, autant qu'elle *pourra*, 16 *fugitif*, adj. 17 *vagabond*, adj. 18 *sur*, prep.

(F.) 1 *Châtiment*, n. m. 2 *surpasse mes forces*. 3 *comme*, conj. 4 *je dois être*. 5 *que celui qui me trouvera*.

(G.) 1 *Quiconque tuera*. 2 *sera puni au septuple*. 3 *mettre*, v. 4. 4 *ensuite*, adv. 5 *marque*, n. f. 6 *sur*, prep. 7 *de peur que*. 8 *celui qui le trouveroit ne le tuât*.



IV. *The Flood* 1.

(A.) God 1 seeing 2 that the wickedness 3 of men 4 was great 5 in 6 the earth 6, repented 7 that he had made 8 them. I will, said 9 he, destroy 10 man whom I have created 11 with 12 all 13 the reptiles 14, birds 15 and animals 16, for 17 it 18 repenteth me 18 that 19 I have made them 19.

(B.) But 1 Noah 2 found 3 grace 4 in 5 the eyes 5 of the Lord 6, who told 7 him, the earth is filled 8 with 9 iniquity 10; I will destroy the living 12 creatures 11; make thee an ark 13 of Gopher wood 14, into which 15 thou shalt come 16, thou, thy sons 17, thy wife 18, thy sons wives, and of the living creatures two 19 of every sort 19, male 20 and female 21; take 22 thou of 23 all food that is eaten 23, and 24 it shall be for food for thee and for them 24.

(C.) Noah did 1 all 2 that God had commanded him 2. He 3 was six hundred years old 3, when 4 he entered into 5 the ark with 6 his family 7 and the animals; and the Lord shut 8 them all in 8.

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Déluge*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *voir*, v. 3.

3 *méchanceté*, n. f. 4 *homme*,

n. m. 5 *grand*, adj. 6 *sur la*

*terre*. 7 *se repentir*, v. 2.

8 *faire*, v. 5. 9 *dire*, v. 2.

10 *détruire*, v. 4. 11 *créer*,

v. 1. 12 *avec*, prep. 13

*tout*, plur. *tous*, adj. 14 *rep-*

*tile*, n. m. 15 *oiseau*, plur.

*eaux*, n. m. 16 *animal*, plur.

*aux*, n. m. 17 *car*, conj.

18 *je me repens*. 19 *de les*

*avoir créés*.

(B.) 1 *Mais*, conj. 2 *Noé*, n.

m. 3 *trouver*, v. 1. 4 *grace*,

n. f. 5 *aux yeux*. 6 *Seigneur*,

n. m. 7 *dire*, v. 4. 8 *rem-*

*plir*, v. 2. 9 *de*, prep. 10

*iniquité*, n. f. 11 *créature*, n.

f. 12 *vivant*, adj. 13 *arche*,

n. f. 14 *de bois de Gopher*.

15 *dans laquelle*. 16 *entrer*,

v. 1. 17 *filis*, n. m. 18

*femme*, n. f. 19 *deux de chaque*

*sorte*. 20 *mâle*, n. m. 21

*femelle*. n. f. 22 *prendre*,

v. 6. 23 *de tout ce qui se*

*mange*. 24 *Et cela servira*

*de nourriture à toi Et à eux*.

(C.) 1 *Faire*, v. 5. 2 *tout ce que*

*Dieu lui avoit commandé*, 3

*il avoit six cens ans*. 4 *quand*,

conj. 5 *entrer dans*, v. 1. and

prep. 6 *avec*, prep. 7 *famille*,

n. f. 8 *les y enferma tous*.

(D.) The



(D.) The flood was forty 1 days 2 upon 3 the earth, the waters 4 increased 5, the highest 6 mountains 7 were covered 8, all the living creatures which were upon the face 9 of the ground 10 were destroyed 11; but the ark swam 12 upon the water, and those that were in it remained 13 alive 14.

(E.) At 1 the end 1 of hundred 2 and fifty 3 days God remembered 4 Noah and all those that were in 5 the ark with him; and 6 making a strong wind to pass over the earth 6, the waters assuaged 7 by 8 degrees 8.

(F.) When the ground was dry 1, God commanded 2 Noah to go forth out of 2 the ark. He had remained 4 shut up 5 therein 3 a 6 whole year 6. He obeyed 7, and immediately 9 built 8 an altar 10 to the Lord, upon 11 which 12 he offered 13 burnt-offerings 14.

### THE DICTIONARY.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(D.) 1 <i>Quarante</i>, adj. und. 2<br/>jour, n. m. 3 <i>sur</i>, prep. 4<br/>eau. plur. <i>eaux</i>, n. f. 5<br/><i>s'augmenter</i>, v. 1. 6 <i>haut</i>,<br/>adj. 7 <i>montagne</i>, n. f. 8<br/><i>couvrir</i>, v. 2. 9 <i>face</i>, n. f.<br/>10 <i>terre</i>, n. f. 11 <i>détruire</i>,<br/>v. 4. 12 <i>nager</i>, v. 1. 13<br/><i>rester</i>, v. 1. 14 <i>en vie</i>.<br/>1 <i>Au bout</i>. 2 <i>cent</i>, adj. und.<br/>3 <i>cinquante</i>, adj. und. 4 <i>se</i><br/><i>ressouvenir</i>, v. 2. 5 <i>dans</i>,</p> | <p>prep. 6 <i>Et envoyant un vent</i><br/><i>fort sur la terre</i>. 7 <i>s'abbaï-</i><br/><i>ser</i>, v. 1. 8 <i>peu à peu</i>.<br/>(F.) 1 <i>Sec</i>, <i>be</i>, adj. 2 <i>commanda</i><br/><i>à Noé de sortir de 3 y</i>, conj.<br/>pron. 4 <i>rester</i>, v. 1. 5 <i>enfer-</i><br/><i>mer</i>, v. 1. 6 <i>un an entier</i>. 7<br/><i>obéir</i>, v. 2. 8 <i>bâtir</i>, v. 2. 9<br/><i>sur le champ</i>. 10 <i>autel</i>, n. m.<br/>11 <i>sur</i>, prep. 12 <i>laquelle</i>,<br/>pron. nom. 13 <i>offrir</i>, v. 2.<br/>14 <i>holocauste</i>, n. m.</p> |
|--|---|

### V. The Tower 1 of Babel.

(A.) After 1 the flood, the inhabitants 2 of the earth 3 spoke 4 but one language 4; and 5 it came to pass that 5 they 6

### THE DICTIONARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1 <i>Tour</i>, n. f.<br/>(A.) 1 <i>Après</i>, prep. 2 <i>habitant</i>,<br/>plur. <i>ans</i>, n. m. 3 <i>terre</i>,</p> | <p>n. f. 4 <i>ne parloient qu'une</i><br/><i>même langue</i>. 5 <i>Et il arriva</i><br/><i>saïd</i></p> |
|---|---|

said one to another 6, let us build 7 us a city 8 and a tower whose top 9 may reach 10 unto 11 heaven 12, and let us make 13 us a name 14 before 15 we are scattered abroad 15 upon 19 the face 17 of 18 the whole earth 18.

(B.) The Lord 1 came down 2 to 3 see 4 the city and the tower, which 5 the children 6 of men 7 builded, and he said, behold 8, the people is one 8, and 9 they have all one 9 language 10; and 11 this they 11 begin 12 to 13 do 14. And now 15 nothing 16 will be restrained from them 16, which 17 they 18 have imagined to do 18. Let us then confound 19 their language, that 20 they may not understand 21 one 23 another's 23 speech 22.

(C.) So 1 the Lord scattered 2 them abroad 2 from 3 thence 3 upon the face of the earth, and they left off 3 to build the city.

(D.) Therefore 1 is 2 the name of it called 2 Babel, because 3 the Lord did there 4 confound the language of all 5 the earth; and from thence did the Lord scatter them upon the face of the whole earth.

## The DICTIONARY.

que. 6 ils se dirent les uns aux autres. 7 bâtir, v. 2. 8 ville, n. f. 9 sommet, n. m. 10 s'élevo. 11 jusque, prep. 12 ciel, n. m. 13 faire, v. 5. 14 nom, n. m. 15 avant que de nous separer. 16 sur, prep. 17 face, n. f. 18 de la terre.

(B) 1 Seigneur, n. m. 2 descendre, v. 6. 3 pour, prep. 4 voir, v. 3. 5 que, pron. 6 enfant, plur. ans, n. m. 7 homme, n. m. 8 ce peuple ne forme qu'une nation. 9 Et il n'a qu'une même. 10 langue,

n. f. 11 Et voici ce qu'il. 12 commencer, v. 1. 13 à, prep. 14 faire, v. 5. 15 à présent. 16 rien ne l'empêchera de faire. 17 ce que, pron. nom. 18 il aura envie de faire. 19 confondre, v. 6. 20 afin que. 21 entendre, v. 6. 22 langage, n. m. 23 les uns des autres.

(C.) 1 Ainsi. 2 disperser, v. 1. 3 de là. 4 cesser, v. 1.

(D.) 1 C'est pourquoi. 2 la tour fut appelée. 3 parce que, conj. 4 y, pron. conj. 5 tout, adj.

# VI. Abraham prepares 1 to 2 sacrifice 3 his son 3 Isaac.

(A.) God 1 tempted 2 Abraham and said 3 to him, *Abraham*; Abraham answered 4, *here 5 I am 5.*

(B.) God said, *take 1 now 2 thy only 3 son Isaac, whom 4 thou lovest 5, get 6 thee 6 into 7 the land 8 of Moriah 9, and offer 10 him there 11 for 12 a burnt-offering 12 upon 13 one 14 of the mountains 15 which 16 I will tell 17 thee of 17.*

(C.) Abraham rose up 1 early 2 in the morning 2, saddled 3 his ass 4, took 5 two 7 of his young 8 men 8 with 6 him, and Isaac his son, clave 9 the wood 10 for 11 the burnt-offering 12, and went 13 into 14 the place 15 of 16 which 16 God had told 17 him.

(D.) On 1 the third day 1, lifting up 2 his eyes 3, he saw 4 the place afar 5 off 5, and said to his servants 6, *Abide 7 you here 8 with the ass; I 9 and the lad 10 will 11 go 11 yonder 12, and 13 worship 14, and 15 come again to you 15.*

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Se préparer*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep.  
3 *sacrifier*, v. 1. 4 *fils*,  
n. m.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *éprouver*,  
v. 1. 3 *dire*, v. 4. 4 *répondre*,  
v. 6. 5 *me voici*.

(B.) 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 *main-  
tenant*, adv. 3 *unique*, adj.  
4 *que*, pron. 5 *aimer*, v. 1.  
6 *va t'en*. 7 *dans*, prep. 8  
*pays*, n. m. 9 *Moriah*, n. m.  
10 *offrir*, v. 2. 11 *y*, pron.  
conj. 12 *en holocauste*. 13  
*sur*, prep. 14 *un*, adj. 15  
*montagne*, n. f. 16 *que*. 17  
*montrer*, v. 1.

(C.) 1 *Se lever*, v. 1. 2 *de bon  
matin*. 3 *seller*, v. 1. 4 *âne*,

n. m. 5 *prendre*, v. 6. 6 *avec*,  
prep. 7 *deux*, adj. 8 *domesti-  
que*, n. m. 9 *fendre*, v. 6.  
10 *bois*, n. m. 11 *pour*, prep.  
12 *holocauste*, n. m. 13 *s'en  
aller*, v. 1. 14 *à*, prep. 15  
*endroit*, n. m. 16 *que*. 17  
*dire*, v. 4.

(D.) 1 *Le troisième jour*: 2 *lever*,  
v. 1. 3 *oeil*, plur. *yeux*, n.  
m. 4 *voir*, v. 3. 5 *de loin*.  
6 *domestique*, n. m. 7 *rester*,  
v. 1. 8 *ici*, adv. 9 *moi*,  
pron. nom. 10 *enfant*, n.  
m. 11 *nous irons*. 12 *là*,  
adv. 13 *pour*, prep. 14 *a-  
dorer*, v. 1. 15 *Et puis nous re-  
viendrons vous trouver*.

(E.)



(E.) Abraham took the wood of the burnt-offering, and laid 1 it upon Isaac his son. He himself 3 carried 2 the fire 4 and the knife 5.

(F.) As 1 they were going 2 together 3, Isaac said to Abraham, *my father* 4. Abraham answered, *here am I, my son*. Isaac said, *behold* 5 *the fire and the wood*; but 6 *where* 7 *is the lamb* 8 *for a* 9 *burnt-offering* 9? Abraham said, *God will provide* 10 *himself* 10 *a lamb for a burnt-offering*; and 11 so they went 11 both 12 of them 12 together 13.

(G.) When 1 they were come 2 to 3 the place God had told him of, Abraham built 5 an altar 6 there 4, laid 7 the wood in 7 order 7, bound 8 Isaac his son, laid him on 9 the altar upon the wood, stretched forth 10 his hand 11, and took the knife to 12 slay 13 his son.

(H.) And the angel 1 of the Lord 2 called 3 unto 3 him out 4 of 4 heaven 5, and said, *Abraham, Abraham*. Abraham answered, *here I am*.

(I.) The angel said, *lay not thy* 1 *band* 1 *upon the lad*, neither 2 *do thou any thing unto him* 2; for 3 *now I know* 4 *that* 5 *thou fearest* 6 *God*, seeing 7 *thou hast not withheld* 8 *thy son, thy only son from* 8 *me*.

# The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *Mettre*, v. 4. 2 *porter*, v. 1. 3 *lui-même*, pron. nom. 4 *feu*, n. m. 5 *couteau*, n. m.

(F.) 1 *Comme*, conj. 2 *marcher*, v. 1. 3 *ensemble*, adv. 4 *pere*, n. m. 5 *voici*, adv. 6 *mais*, conj. 7 *où*, adv. 8 *agneau*, n. m. 9 *l'holocauste*. 10 *se pourvoir de*, v. 3. 11 *Et ils s'avançoient*. 12 *tous les deux*. 13 *ensemble*, adv.

(G.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *arriver*, v. 1. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *y*, pron. conj. 5 *bâtir*, v. 2. 6 *autel*,

n. m. 7 *ranger*, v. 1. 8 *lier*, v. 1. 9 *sur*, prep. 10 *attendre*, v. 6. 11 *main*, n. f. 12 *pour*, prep. 13 *égorger*, v. 1.

(H.) 1 *Ange*, n. m. 2 *Seigneur*, n. m. 3 *appeller*, v. 1. 4 *du*, prep. and art. 5 *ciel*, n. m.

(I.) 1 *La main*. 2 *Et ne lui fais rien*. 3 *car*, conj. 4 *savoir*, v. 3. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *craindre*, v. 6. 7 *puisque*, conj. 8 *refuser*, v. 1.

(K)



(K.) Abraham lifted up 1 his eyes, and seeing behind 2 him 3 a ram 4 caught 5 in 7 a thicket 8 by 6 his horns 6, he took him, and offered him for 9 a burnt-offering 9 instead 10 of his son.

THE DICTIONARY.

(K.) 1 *Lever*, v. 1. 2 *derrière*, 6 *par les cornes*. 7 *dans*, prep.  
prep. 3 *lui*, pron. nom. 4 8 *buisson*, n. m. 9 *en bala-*  
*belier*, n. m. 5 *reténir*, v. 2. 10 *cause*. 10 *au lieu*.

VII. *The Children 1 of Israel are oppressed 2 by 3 the Egyptians 4. Moses 5 is born 5.*

(A.) After 1 the death 2 of Jacob and his children, there 3 arose 3 in 4 Egypt 5 a new 6 king 7, who 8, forgetting 9 the services 10 Joseph had done 11 that 12 country 12, resolved 13 to 14 oppress 15 the children of Israel, who had multiplied 17 very 16 much 16.

(B.) *Behold 1, said 2 he to his people 3, the children of Israel are more 4 and mightier 5 than 6 we 7. Come 8 on 8, let us deal 9 wisely 10 with them 10, lest 11 they multiply, and 12 it come to pass, that when there falleth out any war 12, they join 13 unto our enemies 14, and 15 so get them up out of the land 15.*

THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. *coup*, adv. 17 *se multiplier*,  
2 *opprimer*, v. 1. 3 *par*, v. 1.  
prep. 4 *Egyptien*, n. m. (B.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *dire*, v. 4.  
5 *naissance de Moïse*. 3 *peuple*, n. m. 4 *en plus*  
(A.) 1 *Après*, prep. 2 *mort*, n. grand nombre. 5 *puissant*,  
f. 3 *ils' éleva*. 4 *en*, prep. plur. *ans*. adj. 6 *que*, conj.  
5 *Egypte*, n. f. 6 *nouveau*, 7 *nous*, pron. nom. 8 *ab-*  
adj. 7 *roi*, n. m. 8 *qui*, lons. 9 *se conduire*, v. 4.  
pron. 9 *oublier*, v. 1. 10 10 *sagement à leur égard*. 11  
*service*, n. m. 11 *rendre à*, de peur que. 12 *Et que s'il ar-*  
v. 6. 12 *ce pays-là*. 13 *re-*rive une guerre. 13 *ils ne*  
*fondre*, v. 5. 14 *de*, prep. se joignent. 14 *ennemi*, n.  
15 *opprimer*, v. 1. 16 *beau-*m. 15 *Et qu'ils ne s'en*  
aillent hors du pays. (C.)

(C.) The Egyptians did set 1 task-masters 2 over 3 the Israelites 4 who 5 were forced 6 to 7 build 8 cities 9; but 10 the 11 more 11 they were afflicted 12, the more they multiplied and grew 13.

(D.) The Hebrew 2 midwives 1 having refused 3 to 4 kill 5 the males 6 of the Israelites at 7 their birth 7, the king 8 commanded 9 all 10 his people 11 to 12 destroy 13 them, and to throw 14 them into 15 the Nile 16.

(E.) Then 2 it 1 came to pass 1, that 3 a woman 4 of the tribe 5 of Levi conceived 6 and bare 7 a son 8; and when 9 she saw 10 that he was a 11 goodly child 11, she hid 12 him three 13 months 13.

(F.) When she could 1 no 2 longer 2 hide him, she took 3 an ark 4 of bull-rushes 5, daubed 6 it with 7 slime 8, and with pitch 9, laid 11 the child 12 therein 10, and laid 13 it in 14 the flags 15 by 16 the 17 river's brink 17, his sister 18

THE DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 *Etablir*, v. 2. 2 *surveiller*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 3 *sur*, prep. 4 *Israélite*, n. m. 5 *qui*. 6 *forcer*, v. 1. 7 *de*, prep. 8 *bâtir*, v. 1. 9 *ville*, n. f. 10 *mais*, conj. 11 *plus*, adv. 12 *affliger*, v. 1. 13 *devenir puissant*, v. 2. & adj. whose plural is *puissants*.

(D.) 1 *Sage femme*, plur. *sages femmes*, n. f. & adj. 2 *des Hébreux*. 3 *refuser*, v. 1. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *tuer*, v. 1. 6 *mâle*, n. m. 7 *au tems de leur naissance*. 8 *roi*, n. m. 9 *ordonner à*, v. 1. 10 *tout*, adj. 11 *peuple*, n. m. 12 *de*, prep. 13 *détruire*, v. 4.

14 *jetter*, v. 1. 15 *dans*, prep. 16 *Nils*, n. m.

(E.) 1 *Il arriva*. 2 *donc*. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *femme*, n. f. 5 *tribu*, n. f. 6 *concevoir*, v. 3. 7 *enfant*, v. 1. 8 *fils*, n. m. 9 *quand*. 10 *voir*, v. 3. 11 *beau*, adj. 12 *cacher*, v. 1. 13 *pendant trois mois*.

(F.) 1 *Pouvoir*, v. 3. 2 *plus*, adv. 3 *prendre*, v. 6. 4 *panier*, n. m. 5 *jonc*, n. m. 6 *enduire*, v. 4. 7 *de*, prep. 8 *bitume*, n. m. 9 *poix*, n. f. 10 *y*, pron. conj. 11 *mettre*, v. 4. 12 *enfant*, n. m. 13 *placer*, v. 1. 14 *dans*, prep. 15 *roseau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 16 *sur*, prep. standing

standing 19 afar off 20, to 21 wit 22 what 23 would be done to him 23.

(G.) And the king's daughter 1 came down 2 to 3 wash 4 herself 4 at 5 the river, and her maidens 6 walked 7 along 7 by 8 the river-side 9; and when she saw the ark amongst 10 the flags, she sent 11 one 12 of her maids 13 to 14 fetch it 14.

(H.) When she had opened 1 it, she saw the child; and behold 2 the babe 3 wept 4, and she had compassion 5 on 6 him, and said, *this 7 is one 7 of 8 the Hebrew's children 8.*

(I.) His sister said to her, *shall I go 1 and 2 call to you 2 a nurse 3 of 4 the Hebrew women 4, that 5 she may nurse 6 the child for you?*

(K.) The princess 1 said to her, *take 2 this child away 2, and nurse it for me, and I will give 3 thee thy 4 wages 4.*

(L.) The woman took 1 the child, and nursed it. The child grew 2. She brought 3 him to the king's daughter, who 4 adopted 5 him for 6 her son, and called 7 him *Moses 8*, because 9 she had saved 10 him from 11 being drowned 11.

### THE DICTIONARY.

*le bord du fleuve*, 18 *sœur*, n. f. 19 *se tenir*, v. 2. 20 *de loin*. 21 *pour*, conj. 22 *savoir*, v. 3. 23 *ce qui lui arriveroit*.

(G.) 1 *Fille*, n. f. 2 *descendre*, v. 6. 3 *pour*, prep. 4 *se laver*, v. 1. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *fille*, n. f. 7 *se promener*, v. 1. 8 *sur*, prep. 9 *bord*, n. f. 10 *parmi*, prep. 11 *en-oyer*, v. 1. 12 *un*, adj. 13 *suivante*, n. f. 14 *pour aller chercher*.

(H.) 1 *Ouvrir*, v. 2. 2 *voici que*. 3 *enfant*, n. m. 4 *pleurer*, v. 1. 5 *pitié*, n. f. 6 *de*,

prep. 7 *c'est un*. 8 *des enfants des Hébreux*.

(I.) 1 *Aller*, v. 1. 2 *vous chercher*. 3 *nourrice*, n. f. 4 *d'entre les femmes des Hébreux*. 5 *afin que*. 6 *allaiter*, v. 1.

(K.) 1 *Princesse*, n. f. 2 *emporter*, v. 1. 3 *donner*, v. 1. 4 *ton salaire*.

(L.) 1 *Prendre*, v. 6. 2 *grandir*, v. 2. 3 *apporter*, v. 1. 4 *qui*. 5 *adopter*, v. 1. 6 *pour*, prep. 7 *nommer*, v. 1. 8 *Moïse*, n. m. 9 *parceque*, conj. 10 *empêcher*, v. 1. 11 *d'être noyé*.



VIII. *The Israelites 1 are driven out 2 of Egypt 3.*

(A.) God 1 having afflicted 2 Egypt with 3 several 4 plagues 5, and king 6 Pharaoh 7 having nevertheless 8 refused 9 to 10 send 11 the children 12 of Israel out 13 of 13 his land 14, he at last 16 resolved 15 to 17 destroy 18 all 19 the first-born 19 of the Egyptians 20.

(B.) This design 1 was 2 no sooner put into execution 2 during 3 the night 4, but 5 Pharaoh rose up 6, and 7 all 8 his servants 9, and all the Egyptians. There 10 was 10 then 11 a great 12 cry 13 in 14 Egypt; for 15 there was not a house 16 where 17 there was not one 18 dead 19.

(C.) The king called for 1 Moses 2 and Aaron his brother 3 by 4 night 4, and said 5 to them, get up 6, get 7 you forth 7 from 8 amongst 8 my people 9, both 10 you and 11 the children of Israel, go 12 and serve 13 the Lord 14, as 15 you have

THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Israelite*, n. m. 2 *chasser*,  
v. 1. 3 *Egypte*, n. f.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *affliger*,  
v. 1. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *plusieurs*,  
adj. plur. 5 *plaie*, n. f.  
6. *roi*, n. m. 7 *Pharaon*,  
n. m. 8 *cependant*, conj.  
9 *refuser*, v. 1. 10 *de*, prep.  
11 *envoyer*, v. 1. 12 *en-*  
*fant* plur. *ans*, m. n. 13  
*bors de*. 14 *pays*, n. m.  
15 *refoudre*, v. 5. 16  
*enfin*, adv. 17 *de*, prep. 18  
*détruire*, v. 4. 19 *tous les*  
*premiers nés*. 20 *Egyptien*,  
n. m.

(B.) 1 *Desssein*, n. m. 2 *ne fut*  
*pas plutôt mis en exécution*. 3  
*durant*, prep. 4 *nuît*, n. f.

5 *que*, conj. 6 *se lever*,  
v. 1. 7 *avec*, prep. 8  
*tout*, plur. *tous*, adj. 9 *do-*  
*mestique*, n. m. 10 *il y eut*.  
11 *alors*, adv. 12 *grand*, adj.  
13 *cri*, n. m. 14 *en*, prep.  
15 *car*, conj. 16 *maison*,  
n. f. 17 *ou*, adv. 18 *un*,  
adj. 19 *mort*, n. m.

(C.) 1 *Faire venir*, v. 5. 2.  
*Moïse*, n. m. 3 *frere*, n. m.  
4 *pendant la nuit*. 5 *dire*,  
v. 4. 6 *se lever*, v. 1. 7  
*sortir*, v. 2. 8 *du milieu*  
*de*. 9 *peuple*, n. m. 10  
*tant*. 11 *que*. 12 *aller*,  
v. 1. 13 *servir*, v. 2.  
14 *Seigneur*, n. m. 15

*said*



*said. Take 16 your 17 flocks and your herds 17; be gone 18, and bless 19 me.*

(D.) The Egyptians were 1 urgent upon the people 1, that 2 they might send 3 them out 3 of the land 4 in 5 haste 5; for 6 they said, *we 7 be all dead men 7.*

(E.) Before 1 the children of Israel set out 1, the Lord gave 2 them favour 3 in 4 the sight of 4 the Egyptians, who 5 lent 6 them jewels 7 and raiment 8.

(F.) The number 1 of 2 the men who 2 left 3 Egypt amounted 4 to 5 six 6 hundred 6 thousand 6, besides 7 the children 8. A 9 mixt multitude 9 went up 10 also 11 with 12 them, and 13 flocks and herds, even very much cattle 13.

(G.) The Lord went 1 before 2 them by 3 day 3 in 4 a pillar 5 of a cloud 6, to 7 lead 8 them the way 9, and by 10 night 10 in a pillar of fire 11, to 12 give them light 12.

### THE DICTIONARY.

*comme, conj. 16 prendre, v. 6. 17 vos troupeaux de gros & de menu bétail. 18 allez vous en. 19 benir, v. 2.*

(D.) 1 *Pressoient le peuple. 2 afin de. 3 faire sortir, v. 5. 2. 4 pays, n. m. 5 à la hâte. 6 car. conj. 7 nous sommes tous morts.*

(E.) 1 *Avant le départ des enfans d'Israel 2. faire trouver, v. 5. 1. 3 grace, n. f. 4 devant, prep. 5 qui. 6. prêter, v. 1. 7 joyau, plur. aux, n. m. 8 habit, n. m.*

(F.) 1 *Nombre, n. m. 2 de ceux qui. 3 quitter, v. 1. 4 se*

*monter, v. 1. 5 à, prep. 6 six cens mille. 7 outre, prep. 8 enfant, plur. ans, n. m. 9 un grande multitude de gens de toute espece. 10. partir, v. 2. 11 aussi, conj. 12 avec, conj. 13 & ils emmenerent du gros & du menu bétail en abondance.*

(G.) 1 *Marcher, v. 1. 2 devant, prep. 3 pendant le jour. 4 dans, prep. 5 colonne, n. f. 6 nuée, n. f. 7. pour, prep. 8. montrer, v. 1. 9 chemin, n. m. 10 pendant la nuit. 11 feu, n. m. 12 pour les éclairer.*

IX. *The Passage 1 of the Red 3 Sea 2.*

(A.) When 1 it 2 was told the 2 king 3 of Egypt 4, that 5 the Israelites 6 were gone 7, his heart 8 and that 9 of his servants 10 were turned 11 against 12 them 12, and they said 13, *why 14 have we done this 14, that 15 we let Israel go 15 from 18 serving us 18.*

(B.) Then 1 Pharaoh 2 got 3 in 4 his chariot 5, took 6 his people 7 with 8 him, pursued 9 the children 10 of Israel, and found 11 them encamped 12 near the 13 sea 15 shore 14.

(C.) When the Egyptians 1 drew 2 nigh 2, the Israelites lifted up 3 their eyes 4, and perceiving 5 that 6 the Egyptians were marching 7 after 8 them, they 9 were sore afraid 9, and cried up 10 unto the Lord 11.

(D.) They said also 1 to Moses 2, *because 3 there were no graves in Egypt 3, hast thou taken 4 us away 4 to 5 die 6 in 7 the wilderness 8? Wherefore 9 hast thou dealt thus with us, to car-*

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Passage* n. m. 2 *mer*, n. f.  
3 *rouge*, adj.

(A.) 1 *Quand*. 2 *on eut rapporté*  
au. 3 *roi*, n. m. 4 *Egypte*, n.  
f. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *Israélite*, n.  
m. 7 *partir*, v. 2. 8 *cœur*,  
n. m. 9 *celui*, pron. nom.  
10 *domestique*, n. m. 11  
*changer*, v. 1. 12 *à leur*  
*égard*. 13 *dire*, v. 4. 14  
*qu'est-ce que nous avons fait*.  
15 *de*, prep. 16 *laisser aller*  
*Israël* 17 *de sorte qu'il ne*  
*nous servira plus*.

(B.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *Pharaon*,  
n. m. 3 *monter*, v. 1. 4 *sur*,  
prep. 5 *chariot*, n. m. 6  
*prendre*, v. 6. 7 *peuple*, n.  
m. 8 *avec*, prep. 9 *pour*

*suivre*, v. 4. 10 *enfant*,  
plur. ans, n. m. 11 *trou-*  
*ver*, v. 1. 12 *camper*, v. 1.  
13 *près du*. 14 *rivage*, n.  
m. 15 *mer*, n. f.

(C.) 1 *Egyptian*, n. m. 2 *s'ap-*  
*procher*, v. 1. 3 *lever*, v. 1.  
4 *les yeux*. 5 *s'apercevoir*, v.  
3. 6 *que*, conj. 7 *marcher*,  
v. 1. 8 *après*, prep. 9 *ils*  
*eurent grand' peur*. 10 *crier*,  
v. 1. 11 *Seigneur*, n. m.

(D.) 1 *Aussi*, conj. 2 *Moïse*,  
n. m. 3 *est-ce, parcequ'il n'y*  
*avait point de tombeaux en*  
*Egypte, que*. 4 *emmener*, v.  
1. 5 *pour*, prep. 6 *mourir*,  
v. 2. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *désert*,  
n. m. 9 *pourquoi nous as tu*

ry us forth out of Egypt 9? Is 10 not this 10 the 11 word that 11 we did tell 12 thee in 13 Egypt, saying, Let 14 us alone 15 that 16 we may serve 17 the Egyptians? For 18 it 19 had been better 19 for 20 us to 21 serve the Egyptians, than 22 we should die 22 in the wilderness.

(E.) Moses said unto the people, fear 1 ye not, stand 2 still 2, and see 3 the salvation 4 of the Lord 5, which 6 he will shew 7 you to day 8; for 9 the Egyptians 9 whom 10 you have seen 11 to-day, ye shall see 12 them again 12 no 13 more 13. The Lord shall fight 14 for 15 you, and 16 you shall hold your peace 16.

(F.) The Lord said to Moses, speak 1 unto the children of Israel, that 2 they go forward 3; but 4 lift 6 thou 5 up 6 thy rod 7, and stretch out 8 thy hand 9 over 10 the sea 11, and divide 12 it; and the children of Israel shall go 13 on 14 dry ground 14 through 15 the midst 15 of the sea. And I will harden 16 the hearts 17 of the Egyptians, and they shall follow 18 them; and I will get 19 me honour 19 upon 20 Pharaoh, and upon all 21 his host 22, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen 23, and the Egyptians shall know 24 that 25 I am the Lord.

### THE DICTIONARY.

*fait sortir ainsi d'Egipre?* 10  
n'est-ce pas. 11 ce que, pron.  
nom. 12 dire, v. 4. 13 en,  
prep. 14 laisser, v. 1. 15  
en repos. 16 afin que. 17  
servir, v. 2. 18 car, conj.  
19 il auroit mieux vallu.  
20 pour, prep. 21 de, prep.  
22 que de mourir.

(E.) 1 Craindre, v. 6. 2 s'arrê-  
ter, v. 1. 3 voir, v. 3. 4 dé-  
livrance, n. f. 5 Seigneur,  
n. m. 6 que, pron. 7 mon-  
trer, v. 1. 8 aujourd'hui,  
adv. 9 quant aux Egyptiens.  
10 que, pron. 11 voir,  
v. 3. 12 revoir, v. 3. 13  
plus, adv. 14 combattre, v.

4. 15 pour, prep. 16 &  
vous demeurerez tranquilles.

(F.) 1 Parler, v. 1. 2 que, conj.  
3 marcher, v. 1. 4 mais,  
conj. 5 toi, pron. nom.  
6 lever, v. 1. 7 verge, n. f.  
8 étendre, v. 6. 9 main, n. f.  
10 sur, prep. 11 mer, n. f.  
12 séparer, v. 1. 13 marcher,  
v. 1. 14 à sec. 15 au milieu.  
16 endurcir, v. 2. 17 coeur,  
n. m. 18 suivre, v. 4. 19  
être glorifié, v. p. 20 au  
sujet de. 21 tout, adj. 22  
armée, n. f. 23 cavalier,  
n. m. 24 savoir, v. 3. 25  
que, conj.

(G.)



(G.) The angel 1 of God 2, who 3 went 4 before 5 the camp 6 of 7 Israel 7, removed 8, and went 9 behind 10 them; and the pillar 11 of the cloud 12 went 13 from 14 before their face 14, and stood 15 behind them; and 16 it came 16 between 17 the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel, and it was a cloud of darkness 18 to them 19, but 20 it gave 21 light 22 by night 23 to these 24, so that 25 the one 26 came 27 not near 27 the other 28 all 29 the night 30.

(H.) Moses having stretched out his hands over the sea, the Lord caused 1 the sea to go back 1 by 3 a 4 strong 5 east wind 4 all 2 that night 2, and 6 made it dry land 6.

(I.) And the children of Israel went 1 into 2 the midst 2 of the sea upon 3 dry ground 3; and the waters 4 were 5 a wall unto them 5 on 6 their right hand 6 and on 7 their left 7.

(K.) The Egyptians pursued 1, and went in 2 after 3 them to the midst of the sea. In 4 the morning 6 watch 5, the Lord looked unto 7 their host through 8 the 8 pillar of fire 9, and

The DICTIONARY.

(G.) 1 *Ange*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*, n. m. 3 *qui*, pron. 4 *marcher*, v. 1. 5 *devant*, prep. 6 *camp*, n. m. 7 *des Israélites*. 8 *se retirer*, v. 1. 9 *aller*, v. 1. 10 *dérrière*, prep. 11 *colonne*, n. f. 12 *nuée*, n. f. 13 *s'en aller*, v. 1. 14 *de devant eux*. 15 *s'arrêter*, v. 1. 16 *Et se mit*, 17 *entre*, prep. 18 *ténèbres*, n. f. plur. 19 *à ceux-là*. 20 *mais*, conj. 21 *donner*, v. 1. 22 *lumière*, n. f. 23 *pendant la nuit*. 24 *à ceux-ci*. 25 *de sorte que*. 26 *les uns*. 27 *approcher de*, v. 1. 28 *autre*,

pron. nom. 29 *de toute*. 30 *nuit*, n. f.

(H.) 1 *Fit reculer la mer*. 2 *durant toute la nuit*. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *un vent d'est*. 5 *qui étoit violent*. 6 *Et la mit à sec*.

(I.) 1 *Entrer*, v. 1. 2 *au milieu*. 3 *à sec*. 4 *eau*, n. f. 5 *leur servoient de muraille*. 6 *à droite*. 7 *à gauche*.

(K.) 1 *Les poursuivirent*. 2 *entrer*, v. 1. 3 *après*, prep. 4 *vers*, prep. 5 *veille*, n. f. 6 *matin*, n. m. 7 *regarder*, v. 1. 8 *au travers de la*. 9 *feu*, n. m. 10 *mettre en déroute*, v. 4.

K

of

(G.)



of the cloud, and troubled 10 them; and having ordered 11 Moses to 12 stretch forth his hand over the sea, he did 13 it, and the waters returned 14, and covered 15 the chariots, the horsemen, and all the host of Pharaoh, so that 16 there 17 remained not so much as one of them 17.

(L.) But 1 the children of Israel walked 2 upon 3 dry land 3 in the midst of the sea, and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand and on their left.

(M.) Thus 1 the Lord saved 2 Israel that 3 day 3 out 4 of the hand 4 of the Egyptians; and Israel, seeing 5 the Egyptians dead 6 upon 7 the sea-shore 8, feared 9 the Lord, and believed 10 the Lord and his servant 11 Moses.

The DICTIONARY

prep. and n. f. 11 com- (M.) 1 Ainsi. 2 délivrer, v. 1.  
mander à, v. 1. 12 de, 3 ce jour-là. 4 des mains. 5  
prep. 13 faire, v. 5. 14 voir, v. 3. 6 mourir, v. 2.  
se réunir, v. 2. 15 cou- 7 sur; prep. 8 rivage, n. m.  
vrir, v. 2. 16 de sorte que. 9 craindre, v. 6. 10 croire,  
17 il n'en resta pas un seul. v. 5. 11 serviteur, n. m.  
(L.) 1 Mais, conj. 2 marcher,  
v. 1. 3 à sec.

X. The Children 1 of Israel murmuring 2 in 3 the Wilderness 4 for 5 want of Bread 5, God 6 sends 7 them Quails 8 and Manna 9.

(A.) The Israelites 1 being in the wilderness, and finding 2 themselves 2 without 3 bread 4, murmured 5 against 6

The DICTIONARY.

(A.) 1 Enfant, plur. ans, n. m. v. 1. 8 caille, n. f. 9  
2 murmurer, v. 1. 3 dans, manne, n. f.  
prep. 4 désert, n. m. 5 par- (A.) 1 Israélite, n. m. 2 se trou-  
cequ'ils n'ont point de pain. ver, v. 1. 3 sans, prep. 4  
6 Dieu, n. m. 7 envoyer, pain, n. m. 5 murmurer, v. 2.  
6 contre, prep. 7 Moïse, n.  
Moses

Moses 7 and Aaron. The Lord 8, to 9 put 10 an 11 end 11 to their complaints 12, said 13 to Moses, *Speak* 14 to the children of Israel saying, at even 15 ye shall eat 16 flesh 17, and 18 in the morning 18 ye shall be filled 19 with 20 bread, and ye shall know 21 that 22 I am the Lord your God.

(B.) And 1 it came to pass 1, that 2 at even 3 the 4 quails came up and covered 4 the camp 5, and in 6 the morning 6 there 7 lay 7 round 9 about 9 the host 10 on 8 the ground 8 a round 12 thing 11 as 13 small as 13 the hoar frost 14.

(C.) The children of Israel, knowing not what 1 it was, called 2 it manna; and Moses said unto them, *This* 3 is 3 bread which 4 the Lord has given 5 unto you to 6 eat 7; gather 8 of it 9 an omer 10 for 11 every man 11.

(D.) The children of Israel gathered it, some 1 more 2, some 3 less 4; and when 5 they did mete 6 it, he 7 that 8 gathered 9 much 9 had 10 nothing over 10, and he that gathered little 11, had 12 no lack 12.

THE DICTIONARY.

m. 8 Seigneur, n. m. 9  
pour, prep. 10 mettre, v.  
4. 11 fin, n. f. 12 plainte,  
n. f. 13 dire, v. 4. 14 parler,  
v. 1. 15 ce soir. 16 manger,  
v. 1. 17 viande, n. f. 18  
Et demain au matin. 19  
rassasier, v. 1. 20 de, prep.  
21 savoir, v. 3. 22 que,  
conj.

(B.) 1 Et il arriva. 2 que, conj.  
3 vers le soir. 4 des cailles  
vinrent couvrir. 5 camp, n.  
m. 6 le lendemain au matin.  
7 il y eut. 8 sur la terre. 9  
autour de. 10 armée, n. f.  
11 chose, n. f. 12 ronde,

adj. aussi petite que. 14 gelle  
blanche, n. f. and adj.

(C.) 1 Ce que, pron. nom. 2  
appeller, v. 1. 3 voila. 4 que,  
pron. 5 donner, v. 1. 6 à,  
prep. 7 manger, v. 1. 8  
ramasser, v. 1. 9 en, pron.  
conj. 10 omer, n. m. 11  
par tête.

(D.) 1 Les uns. 2 plus, adv. 3  
les autres. 4 moins, adv. 5  
quand. 6 mesurer, v. 1. 7  
celui, pron. nom. 8 qui. 9  
en ramassa beaucoup. 10 n'en  
avoit pas plus qu'il ne lui en  
falloit. 11 peu, adv. 12 n'en  
avoit pas moins.

# 196      E X E R C I S E S upon the

(E.) Moses 1 said, let 2 no man leave of it 2 till the 3 morning 4. Some 5 of the Israelites 5 harkned 6 not unto him; they left 8 of it 7, it 9 bred worms 9 and 10 stank 10; and Moses was 11, wroth 11 with 12 them.

(F.) It 1 came to pass 1 that 2 on 3 the sixth day 3 they gathered twice 4 as much bread 4, viz. 5 two 6 omers for 7 one man 7. Moses said to them, keep 8 a part 10 of 9 it 9 for 11 to-morrow 12 which 13 is a 14 sabbath unto the Lord 14, wherein 15 you 16 are to do 16 no 17 manner 18 of work 19. They did 20 as 21 they were commanded 21 and it 22 did not stink 22, neither 23 was there any worm therein 23.

(G.) Moses said, eat that 1 to day 2, for 3 to day ye 4 shall find none 4 in 5 the fields 6. Six days 8 ye shall gather it 7, but 9 on 10 the seventh day 10, which 11 is the sabbath, there 12 shall be none 12.

(H.) There came to pass that there 2 went out some of the people 2 on 1 the seventh day 1 to 3 gather it, and they 4

## The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 Moïse, n. m. 2 que personne n'en garde. 3 jusqu'au 4 matin, n. m. 5 quelques Israélites. 6 obéir, v. 2. 7 en, pron. conj. 8 laisser, v. 1. 9 il s'y engendra des vers. 10 la manne pua. 11 fut fâché. 12 contre, prep.

(F.) 1 Il arriva. 2 que, conj. 3 le sixieme jour. 4 deux fois autant de pain qu'à l'ordinaire. 5 c'est-à-dire. 6 deux, adj. 7 par tête. 8 garder, v. 1. 9 en, pron. conj. 10 partie, n. f. 11 pour, prep. 12 demain. 13 qui, pron. 14 le sabbath du Seigneur. 15 dans lequel. 16 vous ne devez

faire. 17 aucun, pron. adj. 18 sorte, n. f. 19 ouvrage, n. m. 20 faire, v. 5. 21 comme on leur avoit commandé. 22 la manne ne pua point. 23 Et on n'y trouva point de vers.

(G.) 1 La, pron. 2 aujourd'hui, adv. 3 car, conj. 4 vous n'en trouverez point. 5 dans, prep. 6 champ, n. m. 7 la. 8 pendant six jours. 9 mais, conj. 10 le septieme jour. 11 qui, pron. 12 il n'y en aura point.

(H.) 1 Au septieme jour. 2 quelques uns d'entre le peuple sortirent. 3 pour, prep. 4 ils n'en trouverent point. 5 pendant found



found none 4. The children of Israel did eat manna forty 5 years 5, until 6 they came 7 unto 8 the borders 9 of the land 10 of Canaan. This kind 11 of bread 12 was like 13 coriander-15-seed 14, white 16, and the 17 taste of it was like wafers 17 made 18 with 19 honey 20.

## The DICTIONARY.

quarante ans. 6 jusqu'à ce  
que. 7 arriver, v. 1. 8 sur,  
prep. 9 frontiere, n. f. 10  
terre, n. f. 11 sorte, n. f.  
12 pain, n. m. 13 comme.  
14 graine, n. f. 15 co-

riandre, n. m. 16 & blanche.  
17 & elle avoit le goût de  
beignets. 18 faire, v. 5.  
19 avec, prep. 20 miel,  
n. m.

# XI. The Israelites murmur 1 for 2 water 2 at 3 Rephidim.

(A.) The children 1 of Israel having pitched 2 in 3 Rephidim, there 4 was there no water for them 4 to 5 drink 6, and they chid 7 with 8 Moses 9, and said 10, give 11 us water that 12 we may 13 drink. Moses said unto them, Why 14 chide you with me? wherefore 15 do you tempt 16 the Lord 17?

(B.) The people 1 being 2 thirsty 2, said, wherefore 3 is this that 3 thou hast brought 4 us up 4 out 5 of 5 Egypt 6, to 7 kill 8 us 11, and our children and our 12 cattle 12 with 9 thirst 10?

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Murmurer, v. 1. 2 faute  
d'eau. 3 à, prep.

(A.) 1 Enfant, plur. ans n. m.  
2 camper, v. 1. 3 à, prep.  
4 il n'y avoit point d'eau.  
5 à, prep. 6 boire, v. 5. 7  
se fâcher, v. 1. 8 contre,  
prep. 9 Moïse, n. m. 10  
dire, v. 4. 11 donner, v. 1.  
12 afin que. 13 pouvoir,  
v. 3. 14 pourquoi, adv.

15 pourquoi. 16 tenter, v. 1.

17 Seigneur, n. m.

(B.) 1 Peuple, n. m. 2 ayant  
soif. 3 pourquoi. 4 faire sor-  
tir, v. 5. 2. 5 de, prep.  
6 Égypte, n. f. 7 pour, prep.  
8 faire mourir, v. 5. 2. 9  
de, prep. 10 soif, n. f. 11  
nous, pron. nom. 12 nos  
troupeaux.



(C.) And Moses cried 1 unto 2 the Lord 3, saying, What 4 shall I do 5 unto this people? they be almost 6 ready 7 to 8 stone 9 me.

(D.) The Lord said unto Moses, go on 1 before 2 the people, and take 3 with 4 thee of 5 the elders of Israel 5, and thy rod 8 wherewith 9 thou smotest 10 the river 11, take in 6 thy hand 7 and go 12. Behold, I will stand 13 before 15 thee there 14 upon 16 the rock 17 in 18 Horeb, and thou shalt smite 19 the rock, and there 20 shall come water out of it 20, that 21 the people may 22 drink.

(E.) Moses did so 1 in 2 the sight 2 of the elders 3 of Israel. Water immediately 5 came 4 out 4 of the rock, and the people had 6 enough of it 6, for 7 themselves 8, their children and their cattle 9.

### THE DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 Crier, v. 1. 2 vers, ler, v. 1. 13 se tenir, v. 2.  
prep. 3 Seigneur, n. m. 4 14 là, adv. 15 devant,  
que, pron. nom. 5 faire, prep. 16 sur, prep. 17  
v. 5. 6 presque, adv. 7 prêt, rocher, n. m. 18 dan,  
adj. 8 de, prep. 9 lapider, prep. 19 frapper, v. 1. 20  
v. 1. il en sortira de l'eau. 21

(D.) 1 Passer, v. 1. 2 devant, afin que. 22 pouvoir, v. 3.  
prep. 3 prendre, v. 6. 4 (E.) 1 ainsi, adv. 2 à la vue.  
avec, prep. 5 quelques uns 3 ancien, n. m. 4 sortir,  
des anciens d'Israël. 6 v. 2. 5 aussi-tôt. 6 en eut  
en, prep. 7 main, n. f. assez. 7 pour, prep. 8 lui-  
8 baguette, n. f. 9 avec la-même, pron. nom. 9 bétail,  
quelle. 10 frapper, v. 1. n. m.  
11 rivière, n. f. 12 s'en al-

### XII. The Walls 1 of Jericho 2 fall down 3.

(A) Jericho being straitly 1 shut up 2 because 3 of the 3 children 4 of Israel, the Lord 5 said 6 unto Joshua 7, 1

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 Muraille, n. f. 2 Jéricho, 4 enfant, plur. ans, n. m.  
n. m. 3 tomber, v. 1. 5 seigneur, n. m. 6 dire,  
(A.) 1 Soigneusement, adv. 2 v. 4. 7 Josué, n. m. 8  
fermer, v. 1. 3 à cause des. have

have given 8 into 9 thy hands 10 Jericho. Ye shall compass 14 that city 15, all 11 ye 11 men 12 of war 13, once 6 a day 16 for 17 six 18 days 19. Seven 20 priests 21 shall bear 22 before 23 the ark 24 seven trumpets 25 of rams 27 horns 26. The seventh 28 day ye shall compass the city seven times 29, and the priests shall blow 30 with 31 the trumpets.

(B.) When 1 ye hear 2 the sound 3 of the trumpet, all 4 the people 5 shall 6 shout with a great shout 6; the wall of the city shall fall down, and the people shall ascend up 7 every 8 man 8 straight 9 before him 10.

(C.) Joshua repeated 1 the words 2 of the Lord to the children of Israel. They did 3 what 4 they 5 were commanded to do 5. As 6 soon as 6 they shouted with a great shout, the walls of Jericho fell down. The Israelites 7 went up 8 into 9 the city, every man straight before him, and took 10 it.

(D.) There was in 1 Jericho a 2 harlot 2 who 3 had concealed 4 the spies 5 whom 6 Joshua had sent 7 to 8 view 9 the country 10. These two 11 young 12 men 13 had pro-

THE DICTIONARY.

*mettre*, v. 4. 9 *entre*, prep.  
10 *main*, n. f. 11 *vous tous*.  
12 *homme*, n. m. 13 *guerre*,  
n. f. 14 *faire le tour de*,  
v. 5. n. m. and art. 15 *ville*,  
n. f. 16 *une fois par jour*, 17  
*durant*, prep. 18 *six*, adj.  
19 *jour*, n. m. 20 *sept*,  
adj. und. 21 *prêtre*, n. m.  
22 *porter*, v. 1. 23 *devant*,  
prep. 24 *arche*, n. f. 25  
*trompette*, n. f. 26 *corne*, n. f.  
27 *bélier*, n. m. 28 *septième*,  
adj. 29 *fois*, n. f. 30 *sonner*,  
v. 1. 31 *de*, prep.

(B.) 1 *Quand* 2 *entendre*, v.  
6. 3 *son*, n. m. 4 *tout*, adj.  
5 *peuple*, n. m. 6 *jettera un*

*grand cri de réjouissance*. 7  
*monter*, v. 1. 8 *chacun*,  
pron. nom. 9 *tout droit*. 10  
*soi*.

(C.) *Répéter*, v. 1. 2 *parole*,  
n. f. 3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *ce que*,  
pron. nom. 5 *on leur com-*  
*manda de faire*. 6 *dès qu'ils*.  
7 *Israélite*, n. m. 8 *monter*,  
v. 1. 9 *dans*, prep. 10  
*prendre*, v. 6.

(D.) 1 *à*, prep. 2 *une femme*  
*de mauvaise vie*. 3 *qui*,  
pron. 4 *cacher*, v. 1. 5  
*espion*, n. m. 6 *que*, pron.  
7 *envoyer*, v. 1. 8 *pour*,  
prep. 9 *examiner*, v. 1. 10  
*pays*, n. m. 11 *deux*, adj.

missed 14 to 15 save 16 her with 17 her family 18. She and her relations 19 were 20 no sooner sent 20 to the camp 21, but 22 the children of Israel according to 23 the order 24 they had received 25 from 26 God 27, destroyed 28 all 29 that was 29 in 30 the city, men, women 31 and children, and burnt 32 it.

## The DICTIONARY.

12 *jeune*, adj. 13 *homme*, n. m. 22 *que*, conj. 23 *selon*, prep. 24 *ordre*, n. m. 25 *recevoir*, v. 3. 26 *de*, prep. 27 *Dieu*, n. m. 28 *détruire*, v. 4. 29 *tout ce qui étoit*. 30 *dans*, prep. 31 *femme*, n. f. 32 *pas plutôt envoyés*. 21 *camp*, bruler, v. 1.

### XIII. *Joshua* 1 rescues 2 *Gideon* 3 and stops 4 the Sun 5 and Moon 6.

(A) The five 1 kings 2 of the Amorites 3, hearing 4 that 5 the Gibeonites 6 had made 7 peace 8 with 9 the children 10 of Israel, gathered 11 themselves together 11 and went 12 to encamp 13 before 14 *Gideon*, and 15 made war against it 15.

(B.) The men 1 of that city 2 sent 3 to *Joshua*, saying 4, Slack 5 not thy hands 6 from 7 thy servants 8; come up 9 to 11

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Josué*, n. m. 2 *délivrer*, v. 1. 12 *aller*, v. 1. 13 *camper*, v. 1. 14 *devant*, prep. 15 *Et lui firent la guerre*. 1. 3 *Gabaôn*, n. m. 4 *arrêter*, v. 1. 5 *soleil*, n. m. 6 *lune*, n. f. (A.) 1 *cing*, adj. und. 2 *roi*, n. m. 3 *Amorrien*, n. m. 4 *apprendre*, v. 6. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *Gabaonite*, n. m. 7 *faire*, v. 5. 8 *paix*, n. f. 9 *avec*, prep. 10 *enfant*, plur. ans, n. m. 11 *s'assem-* bler, v. 1. 12 *aller*, v. 1. 13 *camper*, v. 1. 14 *devant*, prep. 15 *Et lui firent la guerre*. (B.) 1 *Habitant*, plur. ans, n. m. 2 *ville*, n. f. 3 *envoyer*, v. 1. 4 *dire*, v. 4. 5 *retirer*, v. 1. 6 *main*, n. f. 7 *de*, prep. 8 *serviteur*, n. m. 9 *monter*, v. 1. 10 *promptement*, adv. 11 *vers*,



us quickly 10 and save 12 us, for 13 all 14 the kings of the Amorites are gathered together against 15 us.

(C.) So 2 Joshua ascended 1 from 3 Gilgal 4, he 5 and all 6 the people of war 6 with 7 him, and all 8 the mighty men of valour 8.

(D.) And the Lord 1 said unto Joshua, fear 2 them not; for I have delivered 3 them into 4 thy hands; there 5 shall not a man of them stand before thee 5.

(E.) Joshua therefore 2 came 1 unto 4 them suddenly 3; and the Lord slew 6 a part 6 of them 5 at 7 Gibeon and put 8 the rest 9 to 10 flight 10. As 11 they fled 11, he cast down 12 great 13 stones 14 from heaven 15 upon 16 them and a great 17 number 18 of 19 them 19 died 20.

(F.) Joshua then 1 said in 2 the sight 2 of Israel, Sun 3, stand 4 thou still 4 upon 5 Gibeon, and thou 6 moon 7 in 8 the valley 9 of Ajalon. And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed 10, until 11 the people 12 had avenged themselves 13 upon 14 their enemies 15.

THE DICTIONARY.

prep. 12 *surver*, v. 1. 13 *car*, conj. 14 *tout*, plur. *tous*, adj. 15 *contre*, prep.

(C.) 1 *Monter*, v. 1. 2 *donc*. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *Guilgal*, n. m. 5 *lui*, pron. nom. 6 *tout* le peuple propre à la guerre. 7 *avec*, prep. 8 *tous* les hommes forts & courageux.

(D.) 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *craindre*, v. 6. 3 *livrer*, v. 1. 4 *entre*, prep. 5 *il n'y aura aucun d'eux qui puisse te résister*.

(E.) 1 *Marcher*, v. 1. 2 *donc*. 3 *au plus vite*. 4 *contre*, prep. 5 *en*, pron. conj. 6 *tua une partie*. 7 *à*;

prep. 8 *mettre*, v. 4. 9 *reste*, n. m. 10 *en fuite*.

11 *comme ils s'enfuyoient*. 12 *faire tomber*, v. 5. 1. 13 *gras*, se, adj. 14 *Pierre*, n. f. 15 *du ciel*. 16 *sur*, prep. 17 *grand*, adj. 18 *nombre*, n. m. 19 *d'entre eux*. 20 *mourir*, v. 2.

(F.) 1 *Donc*. 2 *en présence*. 3 *soleil*, n. m. 4 *s'arrêter*, v. 1. 5 *sur*, prep. 6 *toi*, pron. nom. 7 *lune*, n. f. 8 *dans*, prep. 9 *vallée*, n. f. 10 *na bruega point*. 11 *jusqu'à ce que*. 12 *peuple*, n. m. 13 *se venger*, v. 1. 14 *de*, prep. 15 *ennemi*, n. m.

(G.)



(G.) The greatest 1 part of the Amorites perished 2 that 3 day 3 with 4 their five kings, and 5 there were but few 5 that 6 escaped 7 death 8, by 9 entering 9 into 10 fenced 11 cities.

### THE DICTIONARY.

(G.) 1 *Grand*, adj. 2 *périr*, pron. 7 *éviter*, v. 1. 8 v. 2. 3 *ce jour-là*. 4 *avec*, mort, n. f. 9 *en entrant*. 10 prep. 5 & *il n'y en eût* dans, prep. 11 *murer*, v. 1. *qu'un petit nombre*. 6 *qui*,

### XIV. Gideon 1 defeats 2 the Midianites 3 with 4 Trumpets, 5 Pitchers 6 and Lamps 7.

(A.) The children 1 of Israel did 2 evil 3 in 4 the fight 4 of the Lord 5, who 6 delivered 7 them into 8 the hands 9 of Midian 10. After 11 they had been oppressed 12 seven 13 years 13, he took 14 pity 15 of them and resolved 16 to 17 save 18 them.

(B.) Gideon was pitched upon 1 to 2 be their leader 2 against 3 their enemies 4. This great 5 man 6 having gathered together 7 a great number 8 of his countrymen 9,

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Gédon*, n. m. 2 *défaire*, v. v. 1. 13 *pendant sept ans*  
5. 3 *Madianite*, n. m. 14 *avoir*, v. aux. 15 *pitié*  
4 *avec*, prep. 5 *trompette*, n. f. 16 *résoudre*, v. 5.  
n. f. 6 *cruche*, n. f. 7. 17 *de*, prep. 18 *sauver*,  
*lampe*, n. f. v. 1.

(A.) 1 *Enfant*, plur. ans, n. (B.) 1 *Choisir*, v. 2. 2 *pour*  
m. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *le mal*. les conduire. 3 *contre*, prep.  
4 *en présence*. 5 *Seigneur*, 4 *ennemi*, n. m. 5 *grand*,  
n. m. 6 *qui*, pron. 7 *livrer*, adj. 6 *homme*, n. m. 7  
v. 1. 8 *entre*, prep. 9 *main*, assembler, v. 1. 8 *nombre*,  
n. f. 10 *Madian*, n. m. n. m. 9 *compatriote*, n. m.  
11 *après que*. 12 *opprimer*,

the Lord said 10 to him, the people 11 that 12 are 12 with thee, are 13 too many 13 for 14 me to give 14 the Midianites into their hands, lest 15 Israel vaunt themselves 16 against 17 me; saying, my own hand has saved 18 me. Now 19 therefore 20 go to 21, and proclaim 22, saying 22, whosoever 23 is fearful 24 and afraid 25, let him return 26.

(C.) There 4 returned 4 of the people twenty 1 two 2 thousand 3, and there 5 remained 5 ten 6 thousand. The Lord then 7 said to Gideon, the people are yet 8 too many; bring 9 them down 9 into 10 the water 11; I will try 13 them for 14 thee there 12; and that 15 of whom 16 I say unto 17 thee 17, this 18 shall go with thee, the same shall go with thee; and of 19 whomsoever 19 I say unto thee, this 20 shall not go with thee, the same shall not go.

(D.) So 1 Gideon brought down 1 the people unto the water, and the Lord said unto him, every 2 one that lappeth of the water 2 with his 3 tongue 3, as 4 a dog 5 lappeth, him shalt thou set 6 by 7 himself 7, likewise 8 every 9 one that boweth down upon his knees 9 to 10 drink 11.

# The DICTIONARY.

10 dire, v. 4. 11 people, n. m. 12 qui est. 13 est en trop grand nombre. 14 pour que je livre. 15 de peur que. 16 se glorifier, v. 1. 17 contre, prep. 18 délivrer, v. 1. 19 maintenant, adv. 20 donc, conj. 21 aller, v. 1. 22 dis à haute voix. 23 quiconque, pron. nom. 24 craintif, adj. 25 peureux, adj. 26 s'en retourner, v. 4.

(C.) 1 Vingt, adj. und. 2 deux, adj. 3 mille, adj. und. 4 s'en retournerent. 5 il en resta. 6 dix, adj. 7 alors, adv. 8 encore, adv. 9 faire

descendre, v. 5. 6. 10 vers, prep. 11 eau, n. f. 12 y, pron. conj. 13 essayer, v. 1. 14 pour, prep. 15 celui, pron. nom. 16 dont, pron. 17 te, pron. conj. 18 celui-ci, pron. nom. 19 celui dont. 20 celui-là, pron. nom.

(D.) Gideon fit donc descendre. 2 quiconque lappera l'eau. 3 la langue. 4 comme, conj. 5 bien, n. m. 6 mettre, v. 4. 7 à part. 8 pareillement, adv. 9 tous ceux qui plieront le genou. 10 pour, prep. 11 boire, v. 5.

(E.) The number 1 of them that 2 lapped 3, putting 4 their hand 5 to their mouth 6, were 7 three hundred men 7, but 8 all 9 the rest 10 of the people bowed 11 down upon their knees 11 to drink water.

(F.) And the Lord said unto Gideon, *by 2 the three 3 hundred 4 men 5 that lapped will I save 1 you, and deliver 6 the Midianites into thy hands; and let 7 all the other people go 7 every 8 man 8 unto 9 his place 9.*

(G.) Gideon sent 1 the rest of the Israelites every 2 man 2 to his tent 3, retained 4 the three hundred men, went 5 with them to meet 6 the enemy 7; and having put 8 in 9 every man's hand 9 a trumpet and an empty 10 pitcher with a lamp within 11 the pitcher, he said to them, *when 12 I come 13 to 14 the outside of 14 the Midianites's camp 15, it 16 shall be that as I do, so shall ye do 16.*

(H.) When Gideon and his three hundred men came 1 to the outside of the camp, he blew 2 his trumpet, broke 3 his pitcher, and held 4 his lamp in 5 his left 6 hand.

(I.) Then 1 the three hundred men did 2 the same 3; and the Midianites were afrighted 4, cried 5 and fled 6;

### THE DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *Nombre*, n. m. 2 *qui*, pron. 3 *lapper*, v. l. 4 *en* portant. 5 *main*, n. f. 6 *bouche*, n. f. 7 *fut de trois* cens hommes. 8 *mais*, conj. 9 *tout*, adj. 10 *reste*, n. m. 11 *plia le genou*.

(F.) 1 *délivrer*, v. l. 2 *par*, prep. 3 *trois*, adj. 4 *cent*, plur. cens, adj. 5 *homme*, n. m. 6 *livrer*, v. l. 7 *que* tout le peuple s'en aille. 8 *chacun*, pron. nom. 9 *en* son lieu.

(G.) 1 *Renvoyer*, v. l. 2 *chacun*, pron. nom. 3 *tente*,

n. f. 4 *retenir*, v. 4. 5 *aller*, v. l. 6 *à la rencontre de*. 7 *ennemi*, n. m. 8 *mettre*, v. 4. 9 *à la main de chacun* d'eux. 10 *vide*, adj. 11 *dans*, prep. 12 *quand*. 13 *je serai arrivé*. 14 *près du*. 15 *camp*, n. m. 16 *vous ferez comme je serai*.

(H.) 1 *Arriver*, v. l. 2 *sonner de*, v. l. 3 *briser*, v. l. 4 *tenir*, v. 2. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *gauche*, adj.

(I.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *la même chose*. 4 *épouvanter*, v. l. 5 *crier*, v. l. 6



and the Lord set 7 every 9 man's 10 sword 8 against 11 his fellow 12, so that 13 the enemies killed 14 one another 14. Those that fought for 15 their safety 16 in 17 the flight 18 were all taken 19 and killed 20 by 21 the children of Israel.

The DICTIONARY.

*s'enfuir*, v. 2. 7 *tourner*,  
v. 1. 8 *épée*, n. f. 9 *chaque*,  
adj. 10 *soldat*, n. m. 11  
*contre*, prep. 12 *compagnon*,  
n. m. 13 *de sorte que*. 14

*s'entretenir*, v. 1. 15 *cher-*  
*cher*, v. 1. 16 *sûreté*, n. f.  
17 *dans*, prep. 18 *fuite*,  
n. f. 19 *prendre*, v. 6. 20  
*tuer*, v. 1. 21 *par*, prep.

XV. *David* 1 kills 2 *Goliath* 3.

(A.) The Philistines 1, being the most inveterate 3 ene-  
mies 2 of the Israelites 4, they were almost 5 continually 6  
at war 7 with 8 them. Having once 9 gathered together 10  
their forces 11, they marched 12 against 13 them, and  
pitched 14 between 15 Shochoh 16 and Azekah 17.

(B.) King 1 Saul 2 and the children 3 of Israel were then 4  
gathered together and pitched by 5 the valley 6 of Elah.

(C.) The Philistines stood 1 on 2 a mountain 3 on 4 the  
one side 4 and Israel stood on a mountain on 5 the other  
side 5; and there was a valley between them.

The DICTIONARY.

1 *David*, n. m. 2 *tuer*, v. 1.  
3 *Goliath*, n. m.

*entre*, prep. 16 *solo*, n. m.  
17 *Azéca*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Philistin*, n. m. 2 *en-*  
*nemi*, n. m. 3 *invétéré*,  
adj. 4 *Israélite*, n. m. 5  
*presque*, adv. 6 *toujours*,  
adv. 7 *en guerre*. 8 *avec*,  
prep. 9 *une fois*. 10 *assem-*  
*bler*, v. 1. 11 *force*, n. f.  
12 *marcher*, v. 1. 13 *contre*,  
prep. 14 *camper*, v. 1. 15

(B.) 1 *Roi*, n. m. 2 *Saül*,  
n. m. 3 *enfant*, plur. *ans*,  
n. m. 4 *alors*, adv. 5 *près*  
*de*. 6 *vallée*, n. f.

(C.) 1 *être*, v. aux. 2 *sur*,  
prep. 3 *montagne*, n. f.  
4 *d'un côté*. 5 *de l'autre*  
*côté*.

(D.)



(D.) And there 1 went out 1 of the camp 2 of the Philistines a champion 3 named 4 Goliath, whose 5 height 6 was six 7 cubits and a span 7.

(E.) When 1 he was in 2 the hearing of Israel 2, he cried out 3 and said 4 to them, why 5 are you come out 6 to 7 set 8 your battle 9 in 10 array 11? Am not I a Philistine and you servants 12 to Saul 12? Choose 13 a man 15 for 14 you 14, and let him come down 16 to 17 me. If 18 he kills 19 me, we shall be your servants 20, but 21 if I 22 prevail against him 22, and 23 kill him 23, you shall serve 24 us.

(F.) Saul and the children 1 of Israel, considering 2 the height and strength 3 of that man, were afraid 4 of him; and tho' 5 he came out 6 for 7 several 8 days 9 to 10 challenge 11 them, none 12 durst 13 go out 14 against 15 him.

(G.) At 1 that time 1 David was sent 2 by 3 his father 4 to 5 carry 6 provisions 7 to his three 8 brothers 9 that 10

### THE DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 *Il sortit.* 2 camp, n. 3 *champion*, n. m. 4 *nommer*, v. 1. 5 *dont*, pron. 6 *hauteur*, n. f. 7 *de six coudées & une palme.*

(E.) 1 *Quand.* 2 *à portée d'être entendu par les Israélites.* 3 *s'écrier*, v. 1. 4 *dire*, v. 4. 5 *pourquoi*, adv. 6 *sortir*, v. 2. 7 *pour*, prep. 8 *ranger*, v. 1. 9 *armée*, n. f. 10 *en*, prep. 11 *bataille*, n. f. 12 *serviteurs de Saül*, 13 *choisir*, v. 2. 14 *vous*. 15 *homme*, n. m. 16 *descendre*, v. 6. 17 *vers*, prep. 18 *si*, conj. 19 *tuer*, v. 1. 20 *esclave*, n. m. 21 *mais*, conj. 22 *je suis plus fort que*

*lui.* 23 *Et que je le tue.* 24 *servir*, v. 2.

(F.) 1 *Enfant*, plur. ans, n. m. 2 *considérer*, v. 1. 3 *force*, n. f. 4 *avoir peur*, v. aux. and n. f. 5 *quoique*, conj. 6 *sortir*, v. 2. 7 *pendant*, prep. 8 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. 9 *jour*, n. m. 10 *pour*, prep. 11 *faire un défi*, v. 5. and n. m. 12 *aucun d'eux*. 13 *ôser*, v. 1. 14 *sortir*, v. 2. 15 *contre*, prep.

(G.) 1 *En ce tems-là.* 2 *envoyer*, v. 1. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *père*, n. m. 5 *pour*, prep. 6 *porter*, v. 1. 7 *provision*, n. f. 8 *trois*, adj. 9 *frère*, n. m. 10 *qui*, pron. 11 *were*

were in Saul's army 11. When 12 he was there; the 13 Philistine happened to come out 13 of his camp; and David hearing 14 his challenge 15, said to those who were near 16 him, that 17 he would fight 18 him, if the king 19 gave 20 him leave 21 so 22 to do 22.

(H.) These words 1 being reported 2 to Saul, he sent for 3 David; and seeing 4 that he was very 5 young 6 and weak 7, he said to him, *thou art not able 8 to 9 go 10 against this Philistine, to 11 fight 11 with 12 him; for 13 thou 14 art but 14 a youth 15, and he 16 a 17 man of war 17 from 18 his youth 19.*

(I.) David said to Saul, *thy servant 1 kept 2 his father's sheep 3; and when 4 a lion 5 or 6 a bear 7 came 8 to take 9 a lamb 10 out 11 of my flock 11, I went out 12 after 13 him, smote 14 him, and delivered 15 the lamb out 16 of 16 his mouth 17; and when he arose 18 against me, I caught 19 him by 20 his 21 beard 21, smote him and slew 22 him. I hope 23*

## THE DICTIONARY.

*armée*, n. f. 12 *lorsque*. 13  
il arriva que le Philistin  
sortit. 14 *entendre*, v. 6.  
15 *dés*, n. m. 16 *pres de*.  
17 *que*, conj. 18 *se battre*  
*contre*, v. 4. and prep. 19 *roi*,  
n. m. 20 *donner*, v. 1. 21  
*permission*, n. f. 22 *de le*  
*faire*.

(H.) 1 *Parole*, n. f. 2 *rap-*  
*porter*, v. 1. 3 *envoyer*  
*chercher*, v. 1. 1. 4 *voir*, v. 3.  
5 *très*, adv. 6 *jeune*, adj.  
7 *foible*, adj. 8 *capable*, adj.  
9 *de*, prep. 10 *aller*, v. 1.  
11 *pour combattre*. 12 *contre*,  
prep. 13 *car*, conj. 14  
15 *n'est qu'un*. 15 *jeune*

*homme*, adj. and n. m. 16  
lui est. 17 *guerrier*, n. m.  
18 *dés*, prep. 19 *jeunesse*,  
n. f.

(I.) 1 *Serviteur*, n. m. 2 *gar-*  
*der*, v. 1. 3 *brébis*, n. f.  
4 *quand*. 5 *lion*, n. m. 6 *ou*,  
conj. 7 *ours*, n. m. 8  
*venir*, v. 2. 9 *prendre*, v. 6.  
10 *agneau*, n. m. 11 *de mon*  
*troupeau*. 12 *sortir*, v. 2.  
13 *après*, prep. 14 *frapper*,  
v. 1. 15 *délivrer*, v. 1. 16  
*de*, prep. 17 *gueule*, n. f.  
18 *se lever*, v. 1. 19 *prendre*,  
v. 6. 20 *par*, prep. 21 *la*  
*barbe*. 22 *tuer*, v. 1. 23

that

that 24 this uncircumcised 25 Philistine shall be as 26 the lion and the bear, seeing 27 that 27 he has defied 28 the armies 29 of the living 31 God 30.

(K.) Saul said to David, go, and the Lord 1 be with 2 thee. David took his staff 3 and his sling 4; and having chosen 5 five 6 smooth 8 stones 7 out 9 of a brook 9, he drew near 10 the Philistine, put 11 a stone in his sling, slang 12 it, smote him in 13 his forehead 13, and 14 made him fall upon his face to the earth 14. He then 16 run 15 to his enemy 17, took his sword 18, slew him, and 19 cut off his head 19.

(L.) When the Philistines saw 1 that 2 their champion was dead 3, they fled 4; and the children of Israel having pursued 5 them, made 7 a great 8 slaughter 9 of 6 them 6.

### THE DICTIONARY.

- |                                |   |                            |  |
|--------------------------------|---|----------------------------|--|
| <i>espérer</i> , v. 1.         | 24 <i>que</i> ,                             | 11 <i>mettre</i> , v. 4.   | 12 <i>lancer</i> ,                         |
| conj.                          | 25 <i>incirconci</i> , adj.                 | v. 1.                      | 13 <i>au front</i> .                       |
| 26 <i>comme</i> .              | 27 <i>vû que</i> .                          | 28                         | 14 <i>Et le fit tomber sur le visage</i> . |
| <i>désier</i> , v. 1.          | 29 <i>armée</i> , n. f.                     | 15 <i>courir</i> , v. 2.   | 16 <i>alors</i> ,                          |
| 30 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.         | 31 <i>vivant</i> ,                          | adv.                       | 17 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m.                   |
| part. act.                     |   | 18                         | 19 <i>Et lui coupa la tête</i> .           |
| (K.) 1 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m. | 2 <i>avec</i> ,                             | (L.) 1 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. | 2 <i>que</i> .                             |
| prep.                          | 3 <i>bâton</i> , n. m.                      | 4                          | 3 <i>mourir</i> , v. 2.                    |
| 4                              | 5 <i>choisir</i> , v.                       | 5                          | 4 <i>s'enfuir</i> ,                        |
| 5                              | 6 <i>fronde</i> , n. f.                     | 6                          | 5 <i>poursuivre</i> , v. 4.                |
| 6                              | 7   | 7                          | 6 <i>en</i> , pron. conj.                  |
| 7                              | 8 <i>caillou</i> , plur. <i>oux</i> , n. m. | 8                          | 7 <i>faire</i> ,                           |
| 8                              | 9 <i>uni</i> , adj.                         | 9                          | 8 <i>grand</i> , adj.                      |
| 9                              | 10 <i>dans un ruisseau</i> .                | 10                         | 9 <i>carnage</i> , n. m.                   |
| 10                             | 11 <i>s'avancer</i> , v. 1.                 |                            |  |

### XVI. The queen 1 of Sheba 2 admires 3 Solomon's 5 wisdom 4.

(A) The queen of Sheba, having heard 1 of the fame 2 of Solomon, came 3 to Jerusalem 4, with 5 a grand 6 retinue 7,

### THE DICTIONARY.

- |   |                          |                             |                            |
|---|--------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 <i>Reine</i> , n. f.                  | 2 <i>Séba</i> , n. f.    | 2 <i>réputation</i> , n. f. | 3 <i>venir</i> ,           |
| 3 <i>admirer</i> , v. 1.                | 4 <i>Sagesse</i> ,       | v. 2.                       | 4 <i>Jérusalem</i> , n. f. |
| n. f.                                   | 5 <i>Salomon</i> , n. m. | 5 <i>avec</i> , prep.       | 6 <i>grand</i> , adj.      |
| (A) 1 <i>entendre parler</i> , v. 6. 1. |                          | 7 <i>train</i> , n. m.      | 8 <i>pour lui</i>          |
|   |                          |                             | in                         |



in 8 order to prove him with 8 hard 10 questions 9. Solomon answered 11 them 12 all 12; and there was nothing 13 hid 14 from him 14 which 15 he told her not 15.

(B.) When 1 the queen of Sheba saw 2 his wisdom, the house 3 that 4 he had built 5, the meat 6 of his table 7, the 8 sitting of his servants 8, the attendance 9 of his ministers 10, and their apparel 11, his cup-bearers 12 and their apparel, and his 13 ascent by which he went up into the 13 house 14 of the Lord 15, there 16 was no more spirit in her 16.

(C.) And she said 1 to the king 2, it 8 was a true report 8 which 3 I heard 4 in 5 my 6 own land 6 of thy acts 7, and of thy wisdom; howbeit 9 I believed 10 not their words 11 until 12 I came 13, and my eyes 14 had seen it; and behold 15 the 16 one half 16 of the greatness 17 of thy wisdom was 18 not told me 18; for 19 thou exceedest 20 the 21 fame that I heard 21.

(D.) Happy 1 are thy 2 men 3, and happy are these servants 4 who 5 stand 6 continually 7 before 8 thee 9, and hear 10 thy wisdom.

THE DICTIONARY.

*proposer des.* 9 *question*, n. f. 10 *difficile*, adj. 11 *répondre*, v. 6. 12 *à toutes ces questions*. 13 *rien*, n. m. 14 *qu'il n'entendit*. 15 *Et qu'il ne lui dit*.

(B.) 1 *quand*. 2 *voir*, v. 3. 3 *maison*, n. f. 4 *que*, pron. 5 *bâir*, v. 2. 6 *les mets*. 7 *table*, n. f. 8 *l'ordre selon lequel ses officiers étoient assis à table*. 9 *assiduité*, n. f. 10 *ministre*, n. m. 11 *habillement*, plur. *ens*, n. m. 12 *échançon*, n. m. 13 *l'escalier par lequel il montoit au*. 14 *temple*, n. m. 15 *seigneur*, n. m. 16 *elle fut toute étonnée*.

(C.) *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *roi*, n. m. 3 *ce que*, pron. nom. 4 *en-*

*tendre dire*, v. 6. 4. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *mon pays*. 7 *action*, n. f. 8 *étoit véritable*. 9 *cependant*, conj. 10 *croire*, v. 5. 11 *discours*, n. m. 12 *jusqu'à ce que*. 13 *venir*, v. 2. 14 *œil*, plur. *yeux*, n. m. 15 *voici*. 16 *la moitié*. 17 *grandeur*, n. f. 18 *m'a été cachée*. 19 *car*, conj. 20 *excéder*, v. 1. 21 *tout ce que j'ai oui de toi*.

(D.) 1 *heureux*, adj. 2 *tes*. 3 *domestique*, n. m. 4 *officier*, n. m. 4 *qui*, pron. 6 *être*, v. aux. 7 *continuellement*, adv. 8 *devant*, prep. 9 *toi*, pron. nom. 10 *entendre*, v. 6.

(E.)



(E.) Blessed 1 be the Lord thy God, who 2 delighted 3 in 4 thee, so 5 set 6 thee on 7 his throne 8, to 9 be king 9 for 10 the Lord thy God. Because 11 thy God loved 12 Israel, therefore 13 made he thee 13, king 14 over 15 them, to 16 do 17 judgment and justice 17.

(F.) And she gave 1 the king an 2 hundred and twenty 2 talents 3 of gold 4, great 5 abundance 6 of 7 spices 7, and precious 9 stones 8.

(G.) And king Solomon gave unto the queen of Sheba whatsoever 1 she asked 2, besides 3 that 4 which 4 Solomon gave her of 5 his own accord 5; so 6 she turned 7 and went 8 to 9 her 10 own country 10, she 11 and her servants 12.

### THE DICTIONARY.

- (E.) 1 *bénir*, v. 2. 2 *qui*, plur. *ens*, n. m. 4 *or*, n. m. 5  
 pron. 3 *se plaire*, v. 5. *grand*, adj. 6 *quantité*, n.  
 4 *en*, prep. 5 *pour*, prep. f. 7 *des drogues aromatiques*.  
 6 *établir*, v. 2. 7 *sur*, prep. 8 *Pierre*, n. f. 9 *précieux*,  
 8 *trône*, n. m. 9 *afin que* *euse*, adj.  
*tu sois roi*. 10 *pour*, prep. (G.) 1 *tout ce que*. 2 *demande*,  
 11 *parceque*, conj. 12 *aimer*, v. l. 3 *autre*, prep. 4 *ce*  
 v. l. 13 *il l'a fait*. 14 *que*, pron. nom. 5 *de son*  
*roi*, n. m. 15 *sur*, prep. *plein gré*. 6 *ensuite*. 7 *s'en*  
 16 *pour*, prep. 17 *leur* *retourner*, v. l. 8 *s'en aller*,  
*rendre justice*. v. l. 9 *dans*, prep. 10  
 (F.) 1 *donner au*, v. l. prep. and *son pays*. 11 *elle*, pron.  
 art. 2 *cent vingt*. 3 *talent*, nom. 12 *serviteur*, n. m.

### XVII. *Elisba* 1 multiplies 2 the widow's 4 oil 3.

(A) There 3 cried 3 a certain 1 woman 2 unto 4 *Elisba* 4, saying 5, thy servant 6 my husband 7 is dead 8, and thou know-

### THE DICTIONARY.

- 1 *Elisée*, n. m. 2 *multiplier*, v. l. n. f. 3 *cria*. 4 *vers Elisée*.  
 3 *veuve*, n. f. 4 *veuve*, n. f. 5 *dire*, v. l. 6 *serviteur*, n. m.  
 (A.) 1. *certain*, adj. 2 *femme*, 7 *mari*, n. m. 8 *mourir* v. l.

# Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH. 217

of 9 that 10 thy servant did fear 11 the Lord 12; and the 13 creditor 13 is come 14 to take 15 my two 16 sons 17 so 18 he bondsman 18.

(B.) And Elisha said unto her, what 1 shall I do 2 for 3 thee 4? tell 5 me, what hast thou in 6 the house 6? and she said, thy handmaid 7 has 8 not any thing 8 in the house, save 9 a pot 10 of oil.

(C.) Then he said, go 1 and 2 borrow 2 empty 4 vessels 3 of all 5 thy neighbours 6, borrow 7 not a few 7; and when 8 thou 9 art come in 9, thou shalt shut 10 the door 11 upon 12 thee, and upon thy sons, thou 13 shalt pour out 13 unto 14 all those vessels, and thou shalt set aside 15 those 16 that 16 are full 17.

(D.) The woman went from 1 him, shut the door upon her and upon her sons who 2 brought 3 the vessels to her, and she poured out.

(E.) And it 2 came to pass 2, when 1 the vessels were full, that 3 she said unto her son, bring me yet 4 a vessel. And he said unto her, there 5 is not a vessel more 5. And the oil stayed 6.

## The DICTIONARY.

9 savoir, v. 3. 10 que, conj. 11 craindre, v. 6. 12 seigneur, n. m. 13 son créancier. 14 venir, v. 2. 15 prendre, v. 6. 16 deux, adj. 17 fils, n. m. 18 pour en faire des esclaves.

(B.) 1 que, pron. nom. 2 faire, v. 5. 3 pour, prep. 4 toi, pron. nom. 5 dire, v. 4. 6 à la maison. 7 servante, n. f. 8 n'a. 9 que, conj. 10 pot, n. m.

(C.) 1 aller, v. 1. 2 emprunter, v. 1. 3 vase, n. m. 4 vuide, adj. 5 tout, plur.

ious, adj. 6 voisin, n. m. 7 n'en empruntés pas un petit nombre. 8 quand. 9 tu seras rentrée chez toi. 10 fermer, v. 1. 11 porte, n. f. 12 sur, prep. 13 tu verseras de l'huile. 14 dans, prep. 15 faire ôter, v. 5. 1. 16 ceux qui. 17 plein, adj.

(D.) 1 quitter, v. 1. 2 qui, pron. 3 apporter, v. 1.

(E.) 1 quand. 2 il arriva. 3 que, conj. 4 encore, adv. 5 il n'y a plus de vase. 6 s'arrêter, v. 1.

(F.)

(F.) Then 1 she came, and told 2 the 3 man 3 of God 4 what 5 had happened 6; and he said, *sell 7 the oyl, and pay 8 thy debt 9, and live 10 thou 11 and thy children 12 of the rest 13.*

## THE DICTIONARY.

(F.) 1 *alors*, adv. 2 *dire*, n. f. 10 *viuere*, v. 4. 11 v. 4. 3 *à l'homme*. 4 *Dieu*, toi, pron. nom. 12 *enfant*, n. m. 5 *ce que*, pron. nom. plur. *ans*, n. m. 13 *reste*, 6 *arriver*, v. 1. 7 *vendre*, n. m. 8 *payer*, v. 1. 9 *dette*,

XVIII. *Elisha 1 causes 2 iron 3 to swim 2.*

(A.) The sons 1 of the prophets 2 said 3 unto Elisha, *behold 4 now 5, the place 6 where 7 we dwell 8 with 9 thee 10 is too 11 strait 12 for 13 us. Let us go 14, we pray 15 thee, unto Jordan 16, and 17 take thence every man 17 a beam 18, and let us make 19 a place there 20, where we may 21 dwell; and he answered 22, go ye.*

(B.) One 1 said, *be 2 content 2, I pray thee, and go 3 with thy servants 4; and he answered, I 5 will go 5.*

(C.) So 1 he went 2 with them; and when 3 they came 4 to Jordan, they cut down 5 wood 6; but 7 as 8 one was

## THE DICTIONARY.

1. *Elisée*, n. m. 2 *faire nager*, v. 5. 1. 3 *fer*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *enfant*, plur. *ans*,

n. m. 2 *prophete*, n. m.

3 *dire*, v. 4. 4 *voir* v. 3.

5 *maintenant*, adv. 6 *endroit*, n. m. 7. *où*, adv.

8 *demeurer*, v. 1. 9 *avec*,

prep. 10 *toi*, pron. nom.

11 *trop*, adv. 12 *étroit*, adj.

13 *pour*, prep. 14 *aller*,

v. 1. 15 *prier*, v. 1. 16

*jourdain*, n. m. 17 *Et que*

*chacun de nous 9 prenne.*

18 *une piece de bois.* 19

*faire*, v. 5. 20 *y*, pron,

conj. 21 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 22

*répondre*, v. 6.

(B.) 1 *l'un d'eux*. 2 *ne te fâ-*

*ches pas.* 3 *venir*, v. 2.

4 *serviteur*, n. m. 5 *Je le*

*veux bien.*

(C.) 1 *ainsi*, conj. 2 *aller*, v. 1.

3 *quand*. 4 *venir* v. 2. 5

*couper*, v. 1. 6 *bois*, n. m.

7 *mais*, conj. 8 *comme,*

*felling*



selling 9 a beam, the ax-head 10 fell 11 into 12 the water 13; and he cried 14 and said, *alas* 15 *master* 16; for 17 it 18 was borrowed 18.

(D.) And the man 1 of God 2 said, *where* fell it? and he shewed 3 him the place. And he cut down a stick 4, and cast 5 it in thither 5, and the iron did swim 6. Take 7 it up 7, said Elisha; and the man put 8 out his hand 8, and took it.

THE DICTIONARY.

conj. 9 *abatre*, v. 4. 10 *emprunté*.  
*le fer de la coignée*. 11 (D) 1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*,  
*tomber*, v. 1. 12 *dans*, prep. n. m. 3 *monter*, v. 1. 4  
13 *eau*, n. f. 14 *crier*, v. 1. *morceau de bois*. 5 *l'y jetta*.  
15 *bélas!* 16 *mon maître*. 6 *nager*, v. 1. 7 *prends le*.  
17 *car*, conj. 18 *il l'avoit* 8 *étendit la main*.

XIX. *Hezekiah* 1 *receiving* 2 *a message of death* 2, by 3 *prayer* has 3 *his life* 4 *lengthened* 5.

(A.) *Hezekiah*, king 1 of *Judah* 2, being 3 *sick* unto death 3, the prophet 4 *Isaiah* 5 came 6 to him 6, and said 7, *thus* 8 *saieth the Lord*, sit 9 *thy bouse* 10 in 11 order 12, for 13 *thou shalt die* 14, and not live 15.

(B.) Then *Hezekiah* turned 1 his face 2 to 3 the wall 4, and prayed unto 5 the Lord 6, saying, *I beseech* 7 *thee*, O

THE DICTIONARY:

1 *Exéchias*, n. m. 2 *étant* *menacé de mort*. 3 *obtient* *mettre*, v. 4. 10 *maison*,  
*par ses prières que*. 4 *vie*, n. f. 11 *en*, prep. 12  
n. f. 5 *sera prolongée*. 13 *car*, conj. *ordre*, n. m. 14 *mourir*, v. 2. 15 *vivre*,  
(A.) 1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *juda*, v. 4.  
n. m. 3 *étant très malade*. (B.) 1 *tourner*, v. 1. 2 *vi-*  
4 *prophète*, n. m. 5 *Isaïe*, n. *sage*, n. m. 3 *vers*, prep.  
m. 6 *vint le trouver*. 7 *dire*, 4 *muraille*, n. f. 5 *prier*,  
v. 4. 8 *voilà ce que*. 9 v. 1. 6 *seigneur*, n. m. 7  
Lord,



# 214 EXERCISES upon the

Lord, remember 8 now 9 how 10 I have walked 11 before 12 thee 13 in 14 truth 15, and with 16 a perfect 18 heart 17, and have done 19 that 20 which 20 is good 21 in 22 thy sight 22; and he wept 23 fore 24.

(C.) And 1 it came to pass 1 before 2 Isaiah was gone 3 into 4 the 5 middle court 5, that 2 the word 6 of the Lord came 7 to him 7, saying,

(D.) Turn again 1 and tell 2 Hezekiah, thus saith the Lord, the God 3 of David 4 thy father 5, I have heard 6 thy prayer 7; I have seen 8 thy tears 9; I will heal 10 thee; on 11 the third day 11 thou shalt go up 12 to the house 13 of the Lord.

(E.) And I will add 1 unto thy days 2 fifteen 3 years 4; and I will deliver 5 thee and Jerusalem 6 out 7 of the hands 7 of the king 8 of Assyria 9.

(F.) And Isaiah said, take 1 a lump 2 of figs 3. And they took and laid it 4 on 5 the boy 6, and he recovered 7.

## THE DICTIONARY.

- |                            |                 |                       |                      |
|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| prier, v. 1.               | 8 se ressou-    | dire à, v. 4.         | 3 Dieu, n. m.        |
| venir, v. 2.               | 9 mainte-       | 4 David, n. m.        | 5 pere,              |
| nant, adv.                 | 10 comme        | n m.                  | 6 exaucer, v. 1.     |
| marcher, v. 1.             | 11              | priere, n. f.         | 8 voir, v. 3.        |
| want, prep.                | 12 de-          | 9 pleur, n. f.        | 10 guérir,           |
| nom.                       | 13 toi. pron.   | v. 2.                 | 11 dans trois jours. |
| vérité, n. f.              | 14 dans, prep.  | 12 aller, v. 1.       | 13 temple,           |
| 16 avec, prep.             | 15              | n. m.                 |                      |
| 17 coeur, n. m.            | 18 parfait,     | (E.) 1 ajouter, v. 1. | 2 jour,              |
| adj.                       | 19 faire, v. 5. | n. m.                 | 3 quinze, adj. und.  |
| 20 ce                      | que, pron. nom. | 21 bon,               | an, n. m.            |
| adj.                       | 22 à tes yeux.  | 23                    | 5 délivrer, v. 1.    |
| pleurer, v. 1.             | 24 amere-       | 6 Jérusalem, n. f.    | 7 des                |
| ment, adv.                 |                 | 8 roi, n. m.          | 9 Affi-              |
| (C.) 1 Or il arriva.       | 2 qu'a-         | rie, n. f.            |                      |
| want.                      | 3 entrer, v. 1. | (F.) prendre, v. 6.   | 2 masse,             |
| dans, prep.                | 5 la cour. du   | n. f.                 | 3 figue, n. f.       |
| milieu.                    | 6 parole, n. f. | 4 mettre,             | v. 4.                |
| lui fut adressée.          | 7               | 5 sur, prep.          | 6 ulcere,            |
| (D.) s'en retourner, v. 1. | 2               | n. f.                 | 7 guérir, v. 2.      |
|                            |                 | (G.) And              |                      |

(G.) And Hezekiah said unto Isaiah, *what 1 shall be the sign 2 that 3 the Lord 4 will heal 5 me, and that I shall go up 7 into 8 the house 9 of the Lord the 6 third day 6?*

(H.) And Isaiah said, *to 1 prove 2 you that 3 the Lord will do 4 the thing 5 that 6 he has spoken 7, shall the shadow 8 go forward 9 ten 10 degrees 10, or 11 go back 12 ten degrees?*

(I.) And Hezekiah answered 1, *it 2 is a light thing 2 for 3 the shadow to 4 go down 5 ten degrees; nay 6, but let the shadow 6 return 7 backward ten degrees.*

(K.) And Isaiah cried 1 unto 2 the Lord, and the Lord brought 3 the shadow ten 4 degrees 4 backward 3, by 5 which it had gone down 5 in 6 the dial 7 of Ahaz 8.

THE DICTIONARY.

(G.) 1 *quel*, pron. 2 *signe*, n. m. 3 *que*, pron. 4 *seigneur*, n. m. 5 *guérir*, v. 2. 6 *dans trois jours*. 7 *monter*, v. 1. 8 *au*. 9 *temple*.

(H.) 1 *pour*, prep. 2 *prouver*, v. 1. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *faire*, v. 5. 5 *chose*, n. f. 6 *dont*, pron. 7 *parler*, v. 1. 8 *ombre*, n. f. 9 *avancer*, v. 1. 10 *de dix degrés*. 11 *ou*, conj. 12 *reculer*, v. 1.

(I.) 1 *répondre*, v. 6. 2 *il est facile*. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *avancer*, v. 1. 6 *Je souhaitte donc que l'ombre*. 7 *reculer*, v. 1.

(K.) 1 *crier*, v. 1. 2 *vers*, prep. 3 *faire reculer*, v. 5. 4 *des dix degrés*. 5 *qu'elle avoit parcourus*. 6 *sur*, prep. 7 *quadrant*, n. m. 8 *Achaz*, n. m.

XX. *Shadrach* 1, *Mesbach* 2, and *Abednego* 3  
are cast 4 into 5 a burning 7 furnace 6, and come  
out 9 of it 8 unburnt 10.

(A.) Nebuchadnezzar 1 king 2 of Babylon 3, hav-  
ing made 4 an image 5 of gold 6, whose 7 height 8 was  
threescore 9 cubits 9, and 10 the breadth thereof 10 six 11  
cubits 11, set 12 it up 12 in 13 a plain 14, near 15 Babylon,  
the capital 16 of his empire 17, and ordered 18 his sub-  
jects 19 to 20 worship 21 it.

(B.) Shadrach, Mesbach, and Abednego, who 1 had 2  
been set over the 2 affairs 3 of the province 4 of Babylon,  
being in 5 the 5 number 6 of those 7 who 8 refused 9 to 10  
fall down 11 before 12 the idol 13, were accused 14 of dis-  
obedience 15, and brought 16 before the king, who in 17  
his rage and fury 17 spoke 18 thus 19 to them.

### THE DICTIONARY.

1. *Chédrac*, n. m. 2 *Mébach*,  
n. m. 3 *Abednégo*, n. m.  
4 *jetter*, v. 1. 5 *dans*, prep.  
6 *fournaise*, n. f. 7 *brulant*,  
adj. 8 *en*, pron. conj. 9  
10 *sortir*, v. 2. 10 *sans avoir*  
*reçu aucun mal*.

(A.) 1 *Nabucodonosor*, n. m.  
2 *roi*, n. m. 3 *Babilone*.  
4 *faire*, v. 5. 5 *statue*,  
n. f. 6 *or*, n. m. 7 *dont*,  
pron. 8 *hauteur*, n. f. 9  
10 *de soixante coudées*. 10 *Et*  
11 *la largeur*. 11 *de six cou-*  
12 *dées*. 12 *mettre*, v. 4. 13  
13 *dans*, prep. 14 *plaine*, n. f.  
15 *près de*. 16 *capitale*,  
n. f. 17 *empire*, n. m. 18

*commander à*, v. 1. and prep.  
19 *sujet*, n. m. 20 *de* prep.  
21 *adorer*, v. 1.

(B.) 1 *qui*, pron. 2 *avoient*  
*été chargés des*. 3 *affaire*,  
n. f. 4 *province*, n. f. 5  
6 *du*, prep. 6 *nombre*, n. m.  
7 *de ceux*. 8 *qui*. 9 *re-*  
10 *fuser*, v. 1. 10 *de*, prep.  
11 *se prosterner*, v. 1. 12  
12 *devant*, prep. 13 *idole*,  
n. f. 14 *accuser*, v. 1. 15  
15 *désobéissance*, n. f. 16 *ame-*  
16 *ner*, v. 1. 17 *dans la rage*  
17 *Et la fureur dont il étoit*  
18 *possédé*. 18 *parler*, v. 1.  
19 *ainsi*, adv.

(C.) *Li*

(D.)



(C.) Is it true 1, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego? Do ye not serve 2 my gods 3, nor worship the 4 golden image 4 which 5 I have set up 6? Now 7 if 8 at 9 the time ye hear 9 the sound 10 of all 11 kinds 12 of musical 14 instruments 13, ye fall down and worship it, well 15; but 16 if ye worship not, ye shall be cast into 17 the midst 17 of a burning furnace; and who 18 is that God 18 that 19 shall deliver 20 you out of 21 my hands 22?

(D.) Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego answered 1 and said 2 to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we 3 are not careful 3 to 4 answer thee in 5 this matter 6. Our 7 God whom 7 we serve 8, is able 9 to 10 deliver us from 11 the burning furnace, and he will deliver us out of thy hand, O king. But if 12 not 12, be 13 it known unto thee 13 that 14 we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which 15 thou hast set up.

(E.) Nebuchadnezzar, hearing 1 these words 2, commanded 3 the 3 most mighty 5 men 4 that 6 were in 7 his army 8 to 9 bind 10 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, and to cast them into a burning furnace. It was so 11 hot 11

THE DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 vrai, adj. 2 que vous ne servez pas. 3 Dieu, plur. dieux, n. m. 4 la statue d'or. 5 que. 6 élever, v. 1. 7 maintenant, adv. 8 si, conj. 9 au moment que vous entendrez. 10 son, n. m. 11 tout, adj. 12 sorte, n. f. 13 instrument, plur. ens, n. m. 14 de musique. 15 vous serez pardonnés. 16 mais, conj. 17 au milieu. 18 qui est le dieu. 19 qui. 20 délivrer, v. 1. 21 de, prep. 22 main, n. f.

(D-) répondre, v. 6. 2 dire,

v. 4. 3 nous ne nous soucions pas. 4 de, prep. 5 sur, prep. 6 sujet, n. m. 7 le dieu que. 8 servir, v. 2. 9 capable, adj. 10 de, prep. 11 de, prep. 12 s'il ne nous délivre pas. 13 sache. 14 que, conj. 15 que, pron.

(E.) 1 entendre, v. 6. 2 parole, n. f. 3 commander aux, v. 1. and art. 4 homme, n. m. 5 fort, adj. 6 qu'il y eut. 7 dans, prep. 8 armée, n. f. 9 de, prep. 10 lier, v. 1. 11 si chaude. 12 que, conj.

L

that



# 218 EXERCISES upon the

that 12 the flame 13 of the fire 14 slew 15 the execution-  
ers 16. As 17 to the 17 three 18 young 19 men 19, they  
walked 20 in 21 the midst 21 of the fire and 22 received no  
hurt 22.

(F.) Nebuchadnezzar surpris'd 1 at 2 this wonderful 4  
event 3, came near 5 to 6 the mouth 7 of the furnace, and  
said, *Shadrach, Mesbach, and Abed-nego, ye servants 8 of 9*  
*the most high God 9, come forth 10 and come 11 hither 12.*

(G.) When 1 they came out 2 of the furnace, there 3  
was not 3 an hair 4 of their head 5 sing'd 6, nor 7 were  
their coats changed 7, nor 8 the smell of fire had pass'd 8  
on 9 them.

(H.) Then 1 Nebuchadnezzar said, *blest 2 be the God of*  
*Shadrach, Mesbach, and Abed-nego, who 3 has sent 4 his an-*  
*gel 5 and deliver'd his servants 6 that 7 have trust'd 8 in 9*  
*him, and have changed 10 the king's word 11, and yielded 12*  
*their bodies 13, that 14 they might not serve 14 nor 15 worship*  
*any 16 God, except 17 their own God 17.*

## THE DICTIONARY.

13 flame, n. f. 14 feu, n. m.

15 tuer, v. 1. 16 bourreau,

plur. *eaux*, n. m. 17 quant

*aux*. 18 trois, adj. 19 jeunes

*gens*. 20 marcher, v. 1. 21

*au milieu*. 22 sans recevoir

*aucun mal*.

(F.) 1 surprendre, v. 6. 2 de,

prep. 3 événement, n. m.

4 extraordinaire, adj. 5

s'approcher, v. 1. 6 de,

prep. 7 embouchure, n. f.

8 serviteur, n. m. 9 du très

haut. 10 sortir, v. 2. 11

venir, v. 2. 12 ici, adv.

(G.) 1 quand, conj. 2 sortir,

v. 2. 3 il n'y eut pas, 4

cheveu, plur. *eux*, n. m.

5 tête, n. f. 6 de bruit.

7 leurs habits n'étoient point

changés. 8 Et l'odeur du

feu n'avoit point passé. 9

sur, prep

(H.) 1 alors, adv. 2 benir,

v. 2. 3 qui, pron. 4 en-

voyer, v. 1. 5 ange, n. m.

6 serviteur, n. m. 7 qui.

8 avoir espérance, v. aux.

and n. f. 9 en, prep. 10

changer, v. 1. 11 parole,

n. f. 12 abandonner, v. 1.

13 corps, n. m. 14 afin de

ne servir. 15 ni, conj. 16

aucun, adj. 17 à l'exception

du leur.

(I.) There-

(I.) Therefore 1 I make 2 a decree 3 that 4 every 5 man 5 who 6 speak 6 any 7 thing amiss 7 against 8 the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, shall be cut 9 in pieces 9 and his house 10 destroyed 11, because 12 there 13 is no other God 13 that 14 can 15 deliver after 16 this sort 16.

(K.) Then the king promoted 1 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego.

THE DICTIONARY.

(I.) 1 *c'est pourquoi*. 2 *10 maison*, n. f. 11 *dé-*  
*faire*, v. 5. 3 *édit*, n. m. *truire*, v. 4. 12 *parceque*,  
4 *par lequel il est ordonné que*. conj. 13 *il n'y a point*  
5 *tout homme*. 6, *qui dira*. *d'autre dieu*. 14 *qui*. 15  
7 *quelque chose de mal*. 8 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 16 *de cette*  
*contre*, prep. 9 *mettre en* *maniere*.  
*pieces*, v. 4. prep. and n. f. (K.) 1 *avancer*, v. 1.

XXI. Daniel 1 is cast 2 into 3 the 4 den of lions 4.

(A.) It pleased 1 king 2 Darius 3 to 4 set 5 over 6 his kingdom 6 an 7 hundred and twenty 7 princes 8, and over 9 these 9 three 10 presidents 11, of whom 12 Daniel was the first 13. This good 14 man 15 was preferred 16 above 17 the 17 presidents and princes, because 18 an 19 excellent spirit was in him 19.

THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Daniel*, n. m. 2 *jetter*, v. 9 *au dessus d'eux*. 10 *trois*,  
1. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *la* adj. 11 *gouverneur*. n. m.  
*fosse aux lions*. 12 *dont*, pron. 13 *premier*,  
(A.) 1 *Il plut au*. 2 *roi*, n. m. adj. 14 *honnête*, adj. 15  
3 *Darius*, n. m. 4 *de*, prep. *homme*, n. m. 16 *élever*,  
5 *établir*, v. 2. 6 *pour gou-* v. 1. 17 *au dessus des*. 18  
*verner son royaume*. 7 *cent* *parceque*, conj. 19 *il avoit*  
*vingt*. 8 *satrape*, n. m. *beaucoup de capacité*.

(B.) The presidents and princes sought 1 to 2 find 3 occasion 4 against 5 him 5 concerning 6 the 6 kingdom 7; but 8 seeing 9 that 10 he was faithful 11, they said 12 to 13 one another 13, *we shall not find any* 14 occasion 14 against 15 Daniel, except 16 *we find it against him* 16, concerning 17 the law 18 of his God 19.

(C.) They waited upon 1 the king and said 2 to him, king Darius live 3 for 4 ever 5. *We have consulted* 6 together 7 and made 8 a decree 9 that 10 *whosoever* 11 shall ask 12 any thing 13 of any 14 god, or man, save 15 of thee 15, O king, he shall be cast 16 into 17 the 18 den of lions 18.

(D.) Now 1, O king, establish 2 the decree 3, and sign 4 the writing 5; that 6 it 7 be not changed 7, according to 8 the law 9 of the Medes 10 and Persians 11, which 12 altereth 13 not 13.

(E.) Darius signed the decree; and as soon as 1 Daniel heard 2 what 3 had been done 4, he went 5 into 6 his

# The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1. *tâcher*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep. 3. *trouver*, v. 1. 4 *quelque occasion*. 5 *de l'accuser*. 6 *au sujet du*. 7 *royaume*, n. m. 8 *mais*, conj. 9 *voyant*. 10 *que*, conj. 11 *fidele*, adj. 12 *se dire*, v. 4. 13 *les uns aux autres*. 14 *rien à dire*. 15 *contre*, prep. 16 *amoin que nous ne l'accusons*. 17 *sur*, prep. 18 *loi*, n. f. 19 *Dieu*, n. m.

(C.) 1 *aller trouver*, v. 1. 1. 2 *dire*, v. 4. 3 *vivre*, v. 4. 4 *pour*, prep. 5. *toujours*, adv. 6 *consulter*, v. 1. 7 *ensemble*, adv. 8 *faire*, v. 5. 9 *édit*, n. m. 10 *par*

*lequel il est ordonné que*. 11 *celui qui*. 12 *demander*, v. 1. 13 *quelque chose*. 14 *quelque*, adj. 15 *amoin que ce ne soit à toi*. 16 *jetter*, v. 1. 17 *dans*, prep. 18 *la fosse aux lions*.

(D.) 1 *maintenant*, adv. 2 *confirmer*, v. 1. 3 *ordonnance*, n. f. 4 *signer*, v. 1. 5 *écrit*, n. m. 6 *afin que*. 7 *on n'y change rien*. 8 *selon*, prep. 9 *loi*, n. f. 10 *Mede*, n. m. 11 *Perse*, n. m. 12 *qui*, pron. 13 *est irrévocable*.

(E.) 1 *Dèsque*. 2 *apprendre*, v. 6. 3 *ce que*. 4 *faire*, v. 5. 5 *entrer*, v. 1. 6 *dans*, house



house 7; and his windows 8 being open 9 towards 10 Jeru-  
salem 11, he kneeled 12 upon his knees 12 three 13 times  
a day 13, prayed to 14 his God and gave 15 him thanks 15  
as 16 he had done before 17.

(F.) The presidents and princes having found him pray-  
ing 1 and 2 making supplication before 2 his God, went  
to 3 the king, and said, *Daniel, O king, regardeth 4 not thee 4,*  
*nor 5 the decree that 6 thou hast signed, but maketh his petition 7*  
*three times a day.*

(G.) When 1 Darius heard these words 2, he 3 was fore  
displeased 3 with 4 himself 5, and 6 set his heart on Daniel  
to deliver him 6, but his presidents and princes insisting 7  
that 8 the 9 law of the Medes and Persians was, that 9 no  
10 decree, which the king establisheth, may be changed 10,  
he 11 commanded, and they brought Daniel 11, and 12 cast  
him 12 into the den of lions.

(H.) Now 1 the king spake 2 and said unto Daniel, *thy 3*  
*God 3, whom 4 thou servest 5 continually 6, will deliver 7 thee.*

THE DICTIONARY.

prep. 7 *maison*, n. f. 8  
*fenêtre*, n. f. 9 *ouvrir*, v. 2.  
10 *vers*, prep. 11 *Jeru-*  
*salem*. 12 *se mettre à*  
*genoux*, v. 4. prep. and n.  
m. 13 *trois fois par jour*.  
14 *prier*, v. 1. 15 *rendre*  
*graces*, v. 6. and n. f.  
16 *comme*, conj. 17. *aupa-*  
*ravant*, adv.

(F.) 1 *en priere*. 2 *Et deman-*  
*dant des graces à*. 3 *aller*  
*trouver*, v. 1. 1. 4 *ne se soucie*  
*ni de toi*. 5 *ni*, conj. 6 *que*,  
pron. 7 *priere*, n. f.

(G.) *quand*, conj. 2 *parole*,

n. f. 3 *il fut très fâché*. 4  
*contre*, prep. 5 *lui-même*,  
pron. nom. 6 *Et fit tous ses*  
*efforts pour délivrer Daniel*.  
7 *soutenant*. 8 *que*, conj.  
9 *selon la loi des Medes Et*  
*des Perses*. 10 *On ne pouvoit*  
*faire de changement à aucun*  
*édit du Roi*. 11 *il ordonna*  
*qu'on lui amenât Daniel*. 12  
*Et qu'on le jettât*.

(H.) 1 *alors*, adv. 2 *parler*,  
v. 1. 3 *le dieu*. 4 *que*,  
pron. 5 *servir*, v. 2. 6  
*sans cesse*. 7 *délivrer*, v. 1.



(I.) And 1 a stone was brought 1 and 2 laid 2 upon 3 the mouth 4 of the den 5; and the king sealed 6 it with 7 his own signet 8, and with the signet of his lords 9; that 10 the purpose might not be changed 10 concerning 11 Daniel.

(K.) Then 1 Darius went to 2 his palace 3, passed 4 the night 5 fasting 6, neither 7 were instruments of musick brought before him 7, and his 8 sleep 8 went 9 from 10 him 11.

(L.) Very 1 early in the morning 1 he went to the den of lions, and with 2 a lamentable 4 voice 3, he said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant 4 of the living 5 God, is thy God, whom 6 thou servest continually, able 7 to 8 deliver thee from 9 the 9 lions?

(M.) Daniel answered 1, O king, live for ever. My God has sent 2 his angel 3, and hath shut 4 the lions mouths 5 that 6 they have not hurt me 6: for 7 as much as 7 before 9 him innocency 8 was found in me 8; and also 10 before thee, O king, have I done no hurt 11.

### The DICTIONARY.

(I.) 1 *Et on apporta une pierre.*  
2 *qui fut mise.* 3 *sur,* prep.  
4 *embouchure,* n. f. 5 *fosse,*  
n. f. 6 *sceller,* v. 1. 7 *de,*  
prep. 8 *seau,* n. m. 9 *sa-*  
*trape,* n. m. 10 *afin que*  
*rien ne fût changé.* 11 *touchant,* prep.

(K.) 1 *alors,* adv. 2 *aller,*  
v. 1. 3 *palais,* n. m. 4  
*passer,* v. 1. 5 *nuit,* n. f.  
6 *sans prendre de nourriture.*  
7 *On ne lui fit point venir*  
*les instrumens de musique.* 8  
*le sommeil.* 9 *s'éloigner,* v.  
1. 10 *de,* prep. 11 *lui,*

pron. nom.

(L.) 1 *le lendemain de grand*  
*matin.* 2 *de,* prep. 3 *voix,*  
n. f. 4 *triste,* adj. 4 *servi-*  
*teur,* n. m. 5 *vivant,* adj.  
6 *que,* pron. 7 *capable,* adj.  
8 *de,* prep. 9 *des.*

(M.) 1 *répondre,* v. 6. 2 *en-*  
*voyer,* v. 1. 3 *ange,* n. m.  
4 *fermer,* v. 1. 5 *gueule,*  
n. f. 6 *de sorte qu'ils ne*  
*m'ont fait aucun mal.* 7  
*parceque.* 8 *j'ai été trouvé*  
*innocent.* 9 *devant,* prep.  
10 *même,* conj. 11 *mal,*  
n. m.

(N.) Daniel

(N.) Daniel having been taken out 1 of the den, the king ordered 2 his accusers 4 to 3 be thrown into it 3, which 5 was immediately 7 executed 6, and the lions 8 brake 9 all 10 their bones 11 in 9 pieces 9, the moment 12 they 13 came at the 13 bottom 14 of the den.

THE DICTIONARY.

(N.) 1 *retirer*, v. 1. 2 *ordonner*, v. 1. 3 *qu'on y jettât*. 4 *accusateur*, n. m. 5 *ce* 6 *exécution*, v. 1. 7 *sur le champ*. 8 *lion*, n. m. 9 *mètres en* 10 *tout*, plur. *tous*, adj. 11 *ou*, n. m. 12 *au moment*. 13 *qu'ils arrivèrent au*. 14 *fond*, n. m.

XXII. *The wise-men 1 come to 2 Christ 3 and worship 4 him.*

(A.) When 1 Jesus was born 1 in 2 Bethleem 3 of Judea 4, in 5 the days 5 of king 6 Herod 7, there 8 came wise-men 8 from the 9 east 10 to 11 Jerusalem 12, saying 13, *where 14 is he 15 that 16 is born 17 king of the Jews 18? for 19 we have seen 20 his star 21 in 22 the east, and are come 23 to 24 worship him.*

THE DICTIONARY.

1 *mage*, n. m. 2 *venir trouver*, v. 2. 1. 3 *Jésus Christ*, n. m. 4 *adorer*, v. 1. 5 *à*, prep. 12 *Jérusalem*. 13 *dire*, v. 4. 14 *où*, adv. 15 *celui*, pron. nom. 16 *qui*, pron. 17 *naître*, v. 5. 18 *juif*, n. m. 19 *car*, conj. 20 *vair*, v. 3. 21 *étoile*, n. f. 22 *en*, prep. 23 *venir*, v. 2. 24 *pour*, prep. (A.) 1 *Jésus étant né*. 2 *à*, prep. 3 *Béthléem*. 4 *Judée*, n. f. 5 *au tems*. 6 *roi*, n. m. 7 *Hérode*, n. m. 8 *des mages vinrent*. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *orient*, n. m. 11

(B.) When 1 Herod had heard these things 1, he was troubled 2, and all 3 Jerusalem 3 with 4 him 5; and when 6 he had gathered 6 all the chief 7 priests 8 and scribes 9 of the people 10, he demanded 12 of 11 them 11 where Christ 13 should 14 be born 14.

(C.) And they said unto him, in 1 Bethleem of Judea 2, for 3 thus it is written 3; and thou 4, Bethleem, in 5 the land 6 of Judah 7, art not the least 8 amongst 9 the princes 10 of Juda 11, for out 12 of thee 12 shall come 13 a governor 14 that 15 shall rule 16 my people Israel 17.

(D.) Then 1 Herod, when 2 he had privily called the wise-men 2, enquired 3 diligently 4 what 5 time 5 the 6 star appeared to them 6; and he sent 7 them to Bethleem, and said, go 8, and search 9 diligently 10 for 11 the young child 11; and when 12 you have found him 12, bring 13 me word again 13, that 14 I 15 may come, and worship him also 15.

### THE DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 Hérode ayant entendu ces choses. 2 troubler, v. 1. 3 Et toute la ville de Jérusalem. 4 avec, prep. 5 lui, pron. nom. 6 ayant assemblé. 7 principal, plur. aux, adj. 8 sacrificateur, n. m. 9 scribe, n. m. 10 peuple, n. m. 11 leur, pron. plur. 12 demander, v. 1. 13 le Christ, n. m. 14 devoit naître.

(C.) 1 à, prep. 2 Judée, n. f. 3 car il est écrit. 4 toi, pron. nom. 5 dans, prep. 6 terre, n. f. 7 Juda, n. m. 8 moindre, adj. 9 entre, prep. 10 les premières villes.

11 de Juda. 12 de toi. 13 sortir, v. 2. 14 conducteur, n. m. 15 qui, pron. 16 gouverner, v. 1. 17 Israël, n. m.

(D.) 1 alors, adv. 2 ayant fait venir en secret les mages. 3 s'enquérir, v. 2. 4 exactement, adv. 5 du tems que. 6 l'étoile leur étoit apparue. 7 envoyer, v. 1. 8 aller, v. 1. 9 s'informer, v. 1. 10 avec soin. 11 du petit enfant. 12 quand vous l'aurez trouvé. 13 venez me le dire. 14 afin que. 15 j'aille aussi l'adorer.

(E.) When

(E.) When 1 they had heard 2 the king, they departed 3 ; and the star which 4 they saw 5 in the east, went 6 before 7 them, 'till 8 it came and stood 8 over 9 where 9 the 10 young child was 10.

(F.) When they saw 1 the star, they 2 rejoiced with exceeding great joy 2 ; and when 3 they were come 3 into 4 the house 5, they saw the young child with Mary 6 his mother 7, and fell down 8 and worshipped him ; and 9 when they had opened 9 their treasures 10, they presented 11 unto him gold 12, frankincense 13 and myrrh 14.

(G.) And being warned 1 in 2 a dream 2, that 3 they should not return 3 to 4 Herod, they departed 5 into 6 their 7 own 7 country 8 another 9 way 9.

The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *quand*, conj. 2 *entendre*, v. 6. 3 *s'en aller*, v. 1. 4 *que*, pron. 5 *ils avoient vue*. 6 *marcher*, v. 1. 7 *devant*, prep. 8 *jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrêta*. 9 *sur le lieu où*. 10 *étoit le petit enfant*.

(F.) 1 *voir*, v. 3. 2 *ils en eurent une fort grande joie*. 3 *étant entrés*. 4 *dans*, prep. 5 *maison*, n. f. 6 *Marie*, n. f. 7 *mere*, n. f. 8 *se prosterner*, v. 1. 9 *Et après avoir ouvert*. 10 *trésor*, n. m. 11 *présenter*, v. 1. 12 *or*, n. m. 13 *encens*, n. m. 14 *mirrhe*, n. f.

(G.) 1 *avertir*, v. 2. 2 *en songe*. 3 *de ne pas retourner*. 4 *vers*, prep. 5 *se retirer*, v. 1. 6 *dans*, prep. 7 *leur*, pron. adj. 8 *pays*, n. m. 9 *par un autre chemin*.



XXIII. *Christ 1 fasteth 2, is tempted 3, and overcometh 4.*

(A.) Jesus 1 was led up 2 of 3 the spirit 4 into 5 the wilderness 6, to 7 be tempted of 8 the devil 9; and when 10 he had fasted 11 forty 12 days 13 and forty nights 14 he 15 was afterward an hungred 15.

(B.) Then 1 the tempter 2 came 3 to 4 him, and said 5, if 6 thou be the son 7 of God 8, command 9 that 10 these stones 11 be made 12 bread 13.

(C.) Jesus answered 1, it is written 2, man 3 shall not live 4 by bread 5 alone 6, but 7 by 8 every word 8 that 9 proceedeth out 10 of the mouth 11 of God.

(D.) Then the devil took 1 him up 1 into 2 the holy 3 city 4, and sat 5 him on 6 the pinnacle 7 of the temple 8, and

## THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus Christ*, n. m. 2 *Jeuner*, v. 1. 3 *tenter*, v. 1. 4 *remporter la victoire*, v. 1. and n. f.

(A.) 1 *Jésus*, n. m. 2 *conduire*, v. 4. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *esprit*, n. m. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *désert*, n. m. 7 *pour*, prep. 8 *par*, prep. 9 *diable*, n. m. 10 *quand*, conj. 11 *jeuner*, v. 1. 12 *quarante*, adj. und. 13 *jour*, n. m. 14 *nuit*, n. f. 15 *enfin il eut faim*.

(B.) 1 *alors*, adv. 2 *tentateur*, n. m. 3 *s'approcher*, v. 1. 4 *de*, prep. 5 *dire*, v. 4. 6 *si*, conj. 7 *fi*, n.

m. 8 *Dieu*, n. m. 9 *ordonner*, v. 1. 10 *que*, conj. 11 *pierre*, n. f. 12 *se changer*, v. 1. 13 *en pain*.

(C.) 1 *répondre*, v. 6. 2 *écrire*, v. 4. 3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *vivre*, v. 4. 5 *de pain*. 6 *seul*, adj. 7 *mais*, conj. 8 *de toute parole*. 9 *qui*, pron. 10 *sortir*, v. 2. 11 *bouche*, n. f.

(D.) 1 *transporter*, v. 1. 2 *dans*, prep. 3 *saint*, adj. 4  *cité*, n. f. 5 *mettre*, v. 4. 6 *sur*, prep. 7 *pinnacle*, n. m. 8 *temple*, n. m. 9 *se*

faid

said to him, if thou be the son of God, cast thyself 9 down 10 ; for 11 it is written, he 12 shall give his angels charge concerning thee 12 ; and in 14 their hands 15 they shall bear 13 thee up 13, lest 16 thou 17 dash thy foot 17 against 18 a stone 19.

(E.) Jesus said to him, it is written again 1, thou shalt not tempt the Lord 2, thy God.

(F.) Again 1 the devil took him up into 2 an 3 exceeding high 3 mountain 4, shewed 5 him all 6 the kingdoms 7 of the earth 8 and their glory 9 and said to him, I will give 10 thee all these things 11, if thou wilt fall down 12 and worship 13 me.

(G.) Jesus said to him, get 1 thee 1 hence 2, satan 3 ; for it is written, thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and 4 thou shalt only serve him 4. Then 5 the devil left 6 him ; and the angels 7 came 8 and 9 ministered unto him 9.

# The DICTIONARY.

jetter, v. 1. 10 en bas. 11 car, conj. 12 il commandera à ses anges d'avoir soin de toi. 13 porter, v. 1. 14 dans, prep. 15 main, n. f. 16 de peur. 17 que tu ne te heurtes le pied. 18 contre, prep. 19 quelque pierre.

(E.) 1 encore, adv. 2 seigneur, n. m.

(F.) 1 ensuite, adv. 2 sur, prep. 3 une très haute. 4 montagne, n. f. 5 montrer,

v. 1. 6 tout, plur. tous, adj. 7 royaume, n. m. 8 terre, n. f. 9 gloire, n. f. 10 donner, v. 1. 11 chose, n. f. 12 se prosterner, v. 1. 13 adorer, v. 1. (G.) 1 se retirer, v. 1. 2 d'ici. 3 Satan, n. m. 4 Et tu ne serviras que lui seul. 5 alors, adv. 6 quitter, v. 1. 7 ange, n. m. 8 venir, v. 2. 9 Et le servirent.

XXIV. *John Baptist 1 is beheaded 2.*

(A.) Herod 1 the tetrarch 2, hearing 3 of the fame 4 of Jesus 5, said 6 to his servants 7, *this 8 is John the Baptist 8 whom 9 I have beheaded; he is risen 10 from 11 the 11 dead 12, therefore 13 mighty 14 works 14 do 15 shew forth themselves 15 in 16 him.*

(B.) For 1 Herod had 2 laid hold on 2 John 3, bound 4 him, and put 5 him in 6 prison 7 for 8 Herodias 9 sake 8, his brother 11 Philip's 12 wife 10. For John had said unto him, *it 13 is not lawful for thee 13 to 14 have her.*

(C.) He 1 would have been glad 1 to 2 put 3 him to 4 death 4, but 5 he feared 6 the multitude 7, because 8 they 9 counted him 9 as 10 a prophet 11.

(D.) When 1 Herod's birth day was kept 1, the daughter 2 of Herodias danced 3 before 4 the assembly 5, and pleased 6

## THE DICTIONARY.

1 *Jean Baptiste*, n. m. 2 *décapiter*, v. 1.

(A.) 1 *Hérède*, n. m. 2 *tétrarque*, n. m. 3 *entendre parler*, v. 6. 1. 4 *réputation*, n. f. 5 *Jésus*, n. m. 6 *dire*, v. 4. 7 *serviteur*, n. m. 8 *c'est Jean Baptiste*. 9 *que*, pron. 10 *ressusciter*, v. 1. 11 *des*, prep. and art. 12 *mort*, n. m. 13 *c'est pourquoi*. 14 *merveille*, n. f. 15 *se montrer*, v. 1. 16 *en*, prep.

(B.) 1 *car*, conj. 2 *se saisir*, v. 2. 3 *Jean*, n. m. 4 *lier*, v. 1. 5 *mettre*, v. 4. 6

*en*, prep. 7 *prison*, n. f. 8 *accuse de*. 9 *Hérodias*, n. f. 10 *femme*, n. f. 11 *frère*, n. m. 12 *Philippe*, n. m. 13 *il ne l'est pas permis*. 14 *de*, prep.

(C.) 1 *il auroit été bien aise*. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *mettre*, v. 4. 4 *à mort*. 5 *mais*, conj. 6 *craindre*, v. 6. 7 *peuple*, n. m. 8 *parceque*, conj. 9 *il le regardoit*. 10 *comme*. 11 *prophète*, n. m.

(D.) 1 *comme on célébroit le jour de la naissance d'Hérode*. 2 *filles*, n. f. 3 *danser*, v. 1. 4 *devant*, prep. 5 *les* 6 *Herod*

Herod. Whereupon 7 he promised 8 with 9 an oath 9 to 10 give 11 her whatsoever 12 she would ask 13.

(E.) And 1 she 2 being before instructed 2 of 3 her mother 4, said, *give me here* 5 *John Baptist's head* 6 in 7 a charger 8.

(F.) And the king 1 was sorry 2; nevertheless 3 for 4 the oath sake 4, and them 5 who 6 sat 7 with 9 him at 8 meat 8, he commanded 10 it 11 to be given her 11. And 12 he sent, and beheaded 12 John in the prison 13.

(G.) And his head was brought 1 in a charger and given to the damsel 2, who 3 carried 4 it to her mother.

(H.) And his disciples 1 came 2, took up 3 the body 4, and buried 5 it.

## The DICTIONARY.

*convives.* 6 *plaire*, v. 5. 7

*de sorte que.* 8 *promettre*, v.

4. 9 *avec serment.* 10 *de*,

prep. 11 *donner*, v. 1. 12 *tout*

*ce que.* 13 *demande*, v. 1.

(E.) 1. *or.* 2 *cette fille étant*

*auparavant instruite.* 3 *par*,

prep. 4 *mere*, n. f. 5 *ici*,

adv. 6 *tête*, n. f. 7 *dans*,

prep. 8 *plat*, n. m.

(F.) 1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *fâché*, adj.

3 *cependant*, conj. 4 *à cause*

*du serment.* 5 *Et de ceux.*

6 *qui*, pron. 7 *étaient.* 8

*à table.* 9 *avec*, prep. 10

*commande*, v. 1. 11 *qu'on*

*la lui donnoit.* 12 *Et il en-*

*voya décapiter.* 13 *prison*,

n. f.

(G.) 1 *Apporter*, v. 1. 2 *de-*

*moiselle*, n. f. 3 *qui*, pron.

4 *porter*, v. 1.

(H.) 1 *disciple*, n. m. 2 *ve-*

*nir*, v. 2. 3 *emporter*, v. 1.

4 *corps*, n. m. 5 *enterrer*,

v. 1.



XXV. Five 1 thousand 1 fed 2 with 3 five 4 loaves 5 and two 6 fishes 7.

(A.) When 1 Jesus heard 1 that 2 John 3 had been beheaded 4, he went 5 into 6 a desert 7 place 7, where 8 a great 9 multitude 10 followed 11 him on 12 foot 12 out 13 of 13 the cities 14. As 15 there were amongst 16 them several 17 sick 18, he was moved 19 with 20 compassion 21 toward 22 them, and healed 23 them.

(B.) When 1 it was evening 1, his disciples 2 came 3 to him, saying 4, *this 5 is a desert place 5, and the time 6 is now 7 past 8; send 9 the multitude 10 away 9 that 11 they may go 12 into 13 the villages 14, and 15 buy themselves 15 victuals 16.*

(C.) Jesus said to them, *they need 1 not depart 2. give 3 ye them to 4 eat 5.* They said to him, *we 6 have here but 6 five 7 loaves and two fishes.* He said, *bring 8 them hither 9 to me.*

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 cinq mille personnes. 2 rassasier, v. 1. 3 avec, prep. 4 cinq, adj. und. 5 pain, n. m. 6 deux, adj. 7 poisson, n. m.

(A.) 1 Jesus ayant appris. 2 que, conj. 3 Jean, n. m. 4 décapiter, v. 1. 5 aller, v. 1. 6 dans, prep. 7 désert, n. m. 8 où, adv. 9 grand, adj. 10 multitude, n. f. 11 suivre, v. 4. 12 à pied. 13 des. 14 ville, n. f. 15 comme, conj. 16 parmi, prep. 17 plusieurs, adj. plur. 18 malade, n. m. 19 toucher, v. 1. 20 de, prep. 21 compassion, n. f. 22 envers, prep. 23

guérir, v. 2.

(B.) 1 comme il se faisoit tard. 2 disciple, n. m. 3 venir, v. 2. 4 dire, v. 4. 5 cet endroit-ci est désert. 6 tems, n. m. 7 maintenant, adv. 8 passer, v. 1. 9 renvoyer, v. 1. 10 cette multitude de gens. 11 afin que. 12 aller, v. 1. 13 dans, prep. 14 village, n. m. 15 pour s'acheter. 16 vivres, n. m. plur.

(C.) 1 avoir besoin, v. aux. and n. m. 2 s'en aller, v. 1. 3 donner, v. 1. 4 à, prep. 5 manger, v. 1. 6 nous n'avons ici que. 7 cinq, adj. und. 8 apporter, v. 1. 9 ici, adv.

(D.) And

(D.) And he commanded 1 the multitude to 2 sit down 3 on 4 the grass 5, took 6 the five loaves and the two fishes, and looking up 7 to heaven 8, he blessed 9, brake 10, and gave them to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude.

(E.) And they did eat 1, and were filled 2; and they took up 3 the 7 fragments that remained 7 twelve 4 baskets 5 full 6; and they 8 that 9 had eaten 10 were about 11 five thousand 12 men 13, besides 14 women 15 and children 16.

## The DICTIONARY.

- (D.) 1 *commander*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *asseoir*, v. 3. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *herbe*, n. f. 6 *prendre*, v. 6. 7 *lever les yeux*, v. 1. and n. m. 8 *ciel*, n. m. 9 *bénir*, v. 2. 10 *rompre*, v. 6. 5 *panier*, n. m. 6 *plein*, adj. 7 *des morceaux qui restoient*. 8 *ceux*, pron. nom. 9 *qui*, pron. 10 *manger*, v. 1. 11 *environ*, adv. 12 *mille*, adj. und. 13 *homme*, n. m. 14 *sans*, prep. 15 *femme*, n. f. 16 *enfant*, plur. ans, n. m. (E.) 1 *manger*, v. 1. 2 *raffasier*, v. 1. 3 *ramasser*, v. 1. 4 *douze*, adj. und.

XXVI. *Christ* 1 teacheth 2 out 3 of 3 *Peter's* 5 ship 4. *A* miraculous 7 draught 6 of fishes 8.

(A.) As 1 the people 2 pressed upon 3 *Christ*, to 4 hear 5 the word 6 of *God* 7, he stood 8 by 9 the lake 9 of *Gennefareth* 10, and saw 11 two 12 ships standing 13 by the lake 13;

## The DICTIONARY.

- 1 *Jésus Christ*, n. m. 2 *en-* n. m. 3 *presser*, v. 1. 4 *seigner*, v. 1. 3 *du*, prep. pour, prep. 5 *entendre*, v. 6. 6 *parole*, n. f. 7 *Dieu*, n. m. 8 *se tenir*, v. 2. 9 *sur le bord du lac*. 10 *Génézareth*. 11 *appercevoir*, v. 3. 12 *deux*, adj. 13 *qui* but (A.) 1 *comme*, conj. 2 *peuple*,

but 14 the fishermen 15 were gone out 17 of 16 them 16, and were washing 18 their nets 19.

(B.) He entred 1 into 2 one 3 of the ships, which 4 was Simon's 5, and prayed 6 him that 7 he would thrust out 7 a little 8 from the land 9; and he sat down 10, and taught 11 the people out of the ship.

(C.) Now 1 when 2 he had left speaking 2, he said 3 to Simon, lanch out 4 into 5 the deep 5, and let down 6 your nets 7 for 8 a draught 8. Simon said to him, master 9, we have toiled 10 all 11 the night 12, and have taken 14 nothing 13; nevertheless 15 at 16 thy word 17 I will let down the net 18.

(D.) When 1 they had done 2 this, they enclosed 3 a great 4 multitude 5 of fishes; and their net brake 6. And they beckoned 7 to their partners 8 who 9 were in the other 10 ship, that 11 they should come and help them 11. They came 12 and filled 13 both 14 the ships 14, so 15 that 15 they began 16 to 17 sink 18.

### The DICTIONARY.

étoient près du rivage. 14 or.  
15 pêcheur, n. m. 16 en,  
pron. conj. 17 sortir, v. 2.  
18 laver, v. 1. 19 filet,  
n. m.

(B.) 1 entrer, v. 1. 2 dans,  
prep. 3 un, adj. 4 qui,  
pron. 5 à Simon. 6 prier,  
v. 1. 7 de l'éloigner. 8 un peu.  
9 rivage, n. m. 10 s'as-  
seoir, v. 3. 11 enseigner,  
v. 1.

(C.) 1 Et, conj. 2 quand il  
eût cessé de parler. 3 dire,  
v. 4. 4 faites avancer le  
bateau. 5 en pleine eau.  
6 jeter, v. 1. 7 filet, n. m.  
8 pour pêcher. 9 maître, n. m.  
10 travailler, v. 1. 11 tout,

adj. 12 nuit, n. f. 13 rien,  
n. m. 14 prendre, v. 6.  
15 cependant, conj. 16 sur,  
prep. 17 parole, n. f. 18  
filet, n. m.

(D.) 1 quand, conj. 2 faire,  
v. 5. 3 prendre, v. 6. 4  
grand, adj. 5 quantité, n.  
f. 6 rompre, v. 6. 7 faire  
signe, v. 5. and n. m. 8  
camarade, n. m. 9 qui,  
pron. 10 autre, adj. 11 de  
venir les aider. 12 venir,  
v. 2. 13 remplir, v. 2. 14  
les deux bateaux. 15 de  
forte que. 16 commencer, v.  
1. 17 à, prep. 18 s'enfon-  
cer, v. 1.

(E.)

# Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH. 233

(E.) When Simon Peter saw 1 it, he fell down 2 at 3 Jesus knees 4, saying, *depart* 5 from 6 me, O Lord 7, for 8 I am a 9 sinful man 9. For he was astonished 10 at 11 the draught 11 of the fishes which 12 they had taken, as 13 well as 13 those 14 who 15 were with 16 him.

(F.) Jesus said to Simon, *fear* 1 not; for henceforth 2 thou shalt catch 3 men 4; and when they had brought 5 their ships to 6 land 7, they forsook 8 all 9, and followed 10 him.

## The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 voir, v. 3. 2 se jeter, v. 1. 3 aux, prep. and art. 4 genou, plur. 5 oux, n. m. 6 de, prep. 7 seigneur, n. m. 8 car, conj. 9 un pêcheur. 10 étonner, v. 1. 11 à la vue. 12 que, pron. 13 aussi bien que. 14 ceux, pron. nom.	15 qui, pron. 16 avec, prep. (F.) 1 craindre, v. 6. 2 à l'avenir. 3 prendre, v. 6. 4 homme, n. m. 5 amener, v. 1. 6 à, prep. 7 terre, n. f. 8 abandonner, v. 1. 9 tout, n. m. 10 suivre, v. 4.
---	--

## XXVII. The Centurion's 2 faith 1. Christ 3 healeth 4 his servant 5.

(A.) Christ having entered 1 Capernaum 2, a centurion 3, whose 4 servant was sick 5 and ready 6 to 7 die 8, sent 9 to him the elders 10 of the Jews 11, beseeching 12 him that 13 he would come and heal 13 his servant.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 foi, n. f. 2 centurion, n. m. 3 Jésus Christ, n. m. 4 guérir, v. 2. 5 domestique, n. m. (A.) 1 entrer, v. 1. 2 dans Capernaüm. 3 centurion, n. m. 4 dont, pron. 5	malade, adj. 6 prêt, adj. 7 à, prep. 8 mourir, v. 2. 9 envoyer, v. 1. 10 ancien, n. m. 11 Juif, n. m. 12 prier, v. 1. 13 de venir guérir.
---	---

(B.) When



(B.) When 1 these men 2 came 3 to 4 Jesus, they besought 5 him instantly 6, saying 7, that 8 *he was worthy for whom he should do this* 8; for 9 *he loveth* 10 our nation 11, and he hath built 12 us a synagogue 13.

(C.) Then 2 Jesus went 1 with 3 them; and when he was not far 4 from 4 the house 5, the centurion sent friends 6 to him, saying to him, trouble 7 not thyself 7, for 8 *I am not worthy that thou shouldest enter* 9 under 10 my roof 10. Wherefore 11 neither thought I myself worthy 11 to 12 come 13 unto 14 thee 14; but 15 say in 16 a word 17, and my servant 18 shall be healed 19.

(D.) When 1 Jesus heard these things 1, he 2 marvelled at him 2, and said to the people 3 that 4 followed 5 him, *I say unto you, I have not found* 6 so 7 great 8 faith 9, no 10, not in Israel 10.

(E.) And they 1 that 2 were sent 3 returning 4 to the house, found the servant whole 7, that 5 had been sick 6.

# THE DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 *quand*, conj. 2 *gens*, n. m. plur. 3 *arriver*, v. 1. 4 *près de*. 5 *prier*, v. 1. 6 *inflamment*, adv. 7 *dire*, v. 4. 8 *qu'il méritoit qu'on lui rendit ce service*. 9 *car*, conj. 10 *aimer*, v. 1. 11 *nation*, n. f. 12 *bâtir*, v. 2. 13 *synagogue*, n. f.

(C.) 1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *donc*. 3 *avec*, prep. 4 *loin de*. 5 *maison*, n. f. 6 *ami*, n. m. 7 *s'incommoder*, v. 1. 8 *car*, conj. 9 *je ne mérite pas que tu entres*. 10 *dans ma maison*. 11 *c'est pourquoi aussi je ne me suis pas jugé*

*digne*. 12 *de*, prep. 13 *venir*, v. 2. 14 *te trouver*. 15 *mais*, conj. 16 *dire*, v. 4. 17 *parole*, n. f. 18 *domestique*, n. m. 19 *guérir*, v. 2.

(D.) 1 *Jésus ayant entendu ces choses*. 2 *il l'admira*. 3 *peuple*, n. m. 4 *qui*, pron. 5 *suivre*, v. 4. 6 *trouver*, v. 1. 7 *aussi*. 8 *grand*, adj. 9 *foi*, n. f. 10 *même en Israël*.

(E.) 1 *ceux*, pron. nom. 2 *qui*. 3 *avoient été envoyés*. 4 *retourner*, v. 1. 5 *qui*. 6 *malade*, adj. 7 *guéri*, p. p.

XXVIII. *Jairus's 2 daughter 1 raised 3 from the dead 3.*

(A.) A 1 ruler of the synagogue 1, called 2 *Jairus*, came to 3 *Jesus*, fell down 4 at 5 his feet 6, and besought 7 him that 8 he would come 8 into 9 his house 10, to 11 cure 12 his only 14 daughter 13 who 15 was a dying 15.

(B.) *Jesus* consented 1 to 2 go 3 with 4 him; and as 5 they went along 6, there 7 came 7 one 8 from 9 the ruler of the synagogues house 9, saying 10 to his master 11, *thy daughter is dead 12, trouble 13 not the master 14.*

(C.) *Jesus* hearing 1 this 2, said 3 to the ruler of the synagogue, *fear 4 not, believe 5 only 6, and thy daughter shall 7 be made whole 7.*

(D.) And when 1 he came 2 to the house, he 3 suffered no man to go in 3, save 4 *Peter 5, James 6, John 7, and the father 8 and mother 9 of the girl 10.*

THE DICTIONARY.

1 *filie*, n. f. 2 *Jairus*, n. m.

3 *ressusciter*, v. 1.

(A.) 1 *un chef de synagogue*. 2

*nommé*, p. p. 3 *venir trou-*

*ver*, v. 2. 1. 4 *se jeter*, v.

1. 5 *à*, prep. 6 *pied*, n.

m. 7 *prier*, v. 1. 8 *de vou-*

*loir bien venir*. 9 *dans*,

prep. 10 *maison*, n. f. 11

*pour*, prep. 12 *guérir*, v. 2.

13 *filie*, n. f. 14 *unique*,

adj. 15 *qui se mouroit*.

(B.) 1 *consentir*, v. 2. 2 *de*,

prep. 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *avec*,

prep. 5 *comme*. 6 *s'avan-*

*cer*, v. 1. 7 *il vint*. 8 *une*

*personne*. 9 *de chez le chef*

*de la synagogue*. 10 *qui dit*.

11 *maître*, n. m. 12 *mon-*

*rir*, v. 2. 13 *incommoder*,

v. 1. 14 *maître*, n. m.

(C.) *entendre*, v. 6. 2 *ceci*,

pron. nom. 3 *dire*, v. 4. 4

*craindre*, v. 6. 5 *croire*, v.

5. 6 *seulement*, adv. 7 *sera*

*guérie*.

(D.) 1 *quand*, conj. 2 *venir*,

v. 2. 3 *il ne laissa entrer*

*personne*. 4 *excepté*, conj.

5 *Pierre*, n. m. 6 *Jacques*,

n. m. 7 *Jean*, n. m. 8 *pere*,

n. m. 9 *mere*, n. f. 10 *filie*,

n. f.

(E.)

(E.) They all 2 wept 1 and bewailed 3 her; but 4 he said, *weep* 5 not 5; *she is not dead, but sleepeth* 6; and they laughed 7 him to 7 scorn 7, knowing 8 that 9 she was dead.

(F.) And he put 1 them all out 1, took 2 the girl by 3 the hand 4, and called 5, saying, *maid* 6, *arise* 7. And her spirit 8 came again 9; and she arose 10 straightway 11: And he commanded 12 to 13 give 14 her meat 15.

(G.) And her parents 1 were astonished 2; but he charged 3 them that 4 they should tell no man 4 what 5 was done 5.

### The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *pleurer*, v. 1. 2 *tout*, plur. tous, adj. 3 *plaindre*, v. 6. 4 *mais*, conj. 5 *ne pleurez point*. 6 *dormir*, v. 2. 7 *se moquer de*, v. 1. 8 *savoir*, v. 3. 9 *que*, conj.

(F.) 1 *faire sortir*, v. 1. 2. 2 *prendre*, v. 6. 3 *par*, prep. 4 *main*, n. f. 5 *et* il l'appella. 6 *filles*, n. f.

7 *se lever*, v. 1. 8 *esprit*, n. m. 9 *revenir*, v. 2. 10 *se lever*, v. 1. 11 *à l'instant*. 12 *ordonner*, v. 1. 13 *de*, prep. 14 *donner*, v. 1. 15 *à manger*.

(G.) 1 *parent*, plur. *ens*, n. m. 2 *étonner*, v. 1. 3 *commander*, v. 1. 4 *de ne dire à personne*. 5 *ce qui étoit arrivé*.

### XXIX. *Christ* 1 *washes* 2 *his disciples* 4 *feet* 3.

(A.) Before 1 the 2 feast of the passover 2, Jesus having ended 3 his supper 4, rose 5 from 6 table 7, laid aside 8 his

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus Christ*, n. m. 2 *laver*, v. 1. 3 *pied*, n. m. 4 *disciple*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *avant*, prep. 2 *la*

*fête de pâque*. 3 *achever*, v. 1. 4 *de souper*. 5 *se lever*, v. 1. 6 *de*, prep. 7 *table*, n. f. 8 *ôter*, v. 1. 9

garments,

garments 9, took 10 a towel 11, girded 12 himself 12, poured 13 water 14 into 15 a basin 16, and began 17 to 18 wash his disciples feet, and to wipe 19 them with 20 the towel wherewith 21 he was girded 22.

(B.) When 1 he came 2 to Simon 3 Peter 4, Peter said 5 unto him, Lord 6, dost thou wash my feet? Jesus answered 7, what 10 I do 11 thou knowest 8 not now 9; but 12 thou 13 shalt know 13 hereafter 14.

(C.) Peter said unto him, thou shalt never 1 wash my feet. Jesus answered him, if I wash thee not, thou 2 hast no part 2 with me.

(D.) Simon Peter said unto him, Lord, not 1 my 2 feet 2 only 1, but 3 also 3 my 4 hands 4 and my 5 head 5. Jesus said to him, be 6 that 6 is washed 7, needeth 8 not, save to wash his feet 8, for 9 he is clean 10 every whit 11; and ye are clean, but not 12 all 12. For he knew 13 who 14 should betray him 14; therefore 15 said he, ye are not all 16 clean.

## The DICTIONARY.

*habit*, n. m. 10 *prendre*, v. 6. 11 *serviette*, n. f. 12 *s'en ceignit*. 13 *verser*, v. 1. 14 *eau*, n. f. 15 *dans*, prep. 16 *bassin*, n. m. 17 *commencer*, v. 1. 18 *à* prep. 19 *essuyer*, v. 1. 20 *avec*, prep. 21 *dont*. 22 *ceindre*, v. 6.

(B.) *quand*, conj. 2 *venir*, v. 2. 3 *Simon*, n. m. 4 *Pierre*, n. m. 5 *dire*, v. 4. 6 *seigneur*, n. m. 7 *répondre*, v. 6. 8 *savoir*, v. 3. 9 *à présent*. 10 *ce que*, pron. nom. 11 *faire*, v. 5. 12 *mais*, conj.

13 *tu le sauras*. 14 *dans la suite*.

(C.) 1 *Jamais*, adv. 2 *tu n'auras point de part*.

(D.) 1 *non seulement*. 2 *les pieds*. 3 *mais aussi*. 4 *les mains*. 5 *la tête*. 6 *celui qui*. 7 *purifier*, v. 1. 8 *à seulement besoin qu'on lui lave les pieds*. 9 *car*, conj. 10 *net*, adj. 11 *partout*, adv. 12 *non pas tous*. 13 *savoir*, v. 3. 14 *qui étoit celui qui devoit le trahir*. 15 *c'est pourquoi*. 16 *tout*, plur. *tous*, adj.

(E.)



(E.) So 1 after he had washed their feet 1, and 2 had taken 2 his garments, and 3 was set down again 3, he said unto them, know ye what I have done to you? ye call 4 me master 5 and lord; and ye say well 6; for so 7 I am 7. If 8 I 10 then 9, your 11 lord and master 11, have washed your feet, ye also 13 ought 12 to 14 wash one another's feet 14: for I 15 have given you an example 15, that 16 ye should do as 17 I have done to you.

### THE DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 ainsi donc après qu'il leur eût lavé les pieds. 2 qu'il eût repris. 3 Et qu'il se fut remis à table. 4 appeller, v. 1. 5 maître, n. m. 6 bien, adv. 7 Je le suis. 8 si, conj. 9 donc. 10 moi, pron. nom. 11 qui suis votre seigneur Et votre maître. 12 devoir, v. 3. 13 aussi. 14 vous laver les pieds les uns aux autres. 15 Je vous ai montré l'exemple. 16 afin que. 17 comme, conj.

### XXX. Judas 1 betrays 2 Jesus 3.

(A.) One 1 of the twelve 2 apostles 3, called 4 Judas Iscariot 5, went unto 6 the chief 7 priests 8, and said 9 unto them, what 10 will you give 11 me, and I will deliver 12 Jesus unto you? and 13 they covenanted with him for 13 thirty 14 pieces 15 of silver 16.

(B.) One day 1 that 2 Jesus was at 3 a place 4 named 5 Gethsemane, a great 6 multitude 7 came 8 from 9 them 9

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 Judas, n. m. 2 trahir, v. 1. 13 Et ils convinrent de lui donner. 14 trente, adj. und. 15 piece, n. f. 16 argent, n. m. (A.) 1 un, adj. 2 d'auze, adj. und. 3 apôtre, n. m. 4 appeller, v. 1. 5 Iscariot, n. m. 6 aller trouver, v. 1. 1. 7 principal, plur. aux, adj. 8 sacrificeur, n. m. 9 dire, v. 4. 10 que, pron. nom. 11 donner, v. 1. 12 livrer, v. 1. (B.) 1 Jour, n. m. 2 que. 3 à, prep. 4 endroit, n. m. 5 nommer, v. 1. 6 grand, adj. 7 troupe de gens. 8 venir, v. 2. 9 de leur part. with

with 10 swords 11 and staves 12 in 13 order to seize him 13. Judas was with them; and he had given them a sign 14, saying, *whomsoever* 15 *I shall kiss* 16, *that* 17 *same is Jesus* 17, *hold* 18 *him fast* 18.

(C.) When 1 he was near 2 Jesus, he said unto him, *bail* 3, *master* 4; and he killed 5 him. Jesus said unto him, *friend* 6, *wherefore* 7 *art thou come?* Then came they, and laid 8 hands 9 on 10 Jesus, and took 11 him.

The DICTIONARY.

10 *avec*, prep. 11 *épée*, n. 3 *je te salue*. 4 *maître*,  
f. 12 *bâton*. n. m. 13 *pour* n. m. 5 *baiser*, v. 1. 6  
*se saisir de lui*. 14 *signal*, n. m. 7 *pourquoi*, adv.  
n. m. 15 *celui que*. 16 *bai-* 8 *mettre*, v. 4. 9 *main*, n. f.  
*ser*, v. 1. 17 *c'est Jésus*. 10 *sur*, prep. 11 *se saisir*  
18 *saisissez vous de lui*. de, v. 2. and prep.  
(C.) 1 *quand*, conj. 2 *près de*.

XXXI. *Jesus* 1 *is crucified* 2.

(A.) Jesus being condemned 1 to 2 be crucified 3, the soldiers 4 of the governor 5 of the Jews 6 took 7 him into 8 the common 9 hall 9, stripped 10 him, put on 11 him a scarlet 13 robe 12, put 14 a crown of thorns upon 14 his 15 head 15, and a reed 16 in 17 his right 19 hand 18, bowed 20

The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jesus*, n. m. 2 *crucifier*, v. 1. 11 *revêtir de*, v. 2. and  
v. 1. 12 *robe*, n. f. 13 *d'écari-*  
(A.) 1 *condamner*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep. 14 *lui mirent une cou-*  
3 *crucifier*, v. 1. 4 *ronne d'épine sur*. 15 *la tête*.  
5 *soldat*, n. m. 6 *gouverneur*, 16 *roseau*, n. m. 17 *à*,  
n. m. 6 *juif*, n. m. 7 *me-* prep. 18 *la main*. 19  
ner, v. 1. 8 *dans*, prep. 9 *droit*, adj. 20 *fléchir*, v. 2.  
10 *prétoire*, n. m. 10 *dépeuiller*,

the

240 EXERCISES upon the  
the knee 21 before 22 him, and mocked 23 him, saying 24,  
hail 25, king 26 of the Jews.

(B.) They also 2 spit 1 on 3 him 4, took 5 the reed and  
smote 6 him on 7 the head 7; and after 8 they had mocked  
him, they 9 took the robe off from him 9, put 10 his own  
raiment on him 10, and led 11 him away 11 to 12 crucify  
him.

(C.) There 3 were 3 also 3 two 1 malefactors 2 led 3  
with 4 him to 5 be put 6 to death 7; and when 8 the foldiers  
were come 9 to 10 a place 10 called 11 Calvary 12, they  
crucified him and 13 the malefactors 13, one 14 on his  
right 14, and 15 the other on his left 15.

(D.) Then 1 Jesus said 2 father 3, forgive 4 them 4; for 5  
they know 6 not what 7 they do 8; and they 9 parted 9 his  
raiments, & 10 cast lots 10.

(E.) The people 1 stood 2 beholding 2; and 3 the rulers 3

#### THE DICTIONARY.

21 genou, n. m. 22 devant,  
prep. 23 se moquer de, v.  
1. and prep. 24 dire,  
v. 4. 25 nous te saluons.  
26 roi, n. m.

(B.) 1 cracher, v. 1. 2 aussi.  
3 sur, prep. 4 lui, pron.  
nom. 5 prendre, v. 6. 6  
frapper, v. 1. 7 sur la  
tête. 8 après que. 9 ils lui ô-  
tèrent la robe. 10 le reve-  
tirent de ses propres vêtements.  
11 emmener, v. 1. 12 pour,  
prep.

(C.) 1 deux, adj. 2 malfaiteur,  
n. m. 3 furent aussi menés.  
4 avec, prep. 5 pour, prep.  
6 mettre à, v. 4. 7 mort, n. f.

8 quand, conj. 9 arriver,  
v. 1. 10 au lieu. 11 ap-  
peller, v. 1. 12 calvaire,  
n. m. 13 Et crucifierent avec  
lui les malfaiteurs. 14 l'un  
à sa droite. 15 Et l'autre  
à sa gauche.

(D.) 1 alors, adv. 2 dire, v. 4.  
3 mon pere. 4 pardonne leur.  
5 car, conj. 6 savoir, v. 3.  
7 ce que pron. nom. 8  
faire, v. 5. 9 ils firent plu-  
sieurs parts de. 10 Et les  
tirent au fort.

(E.) 1 peuple, n. m. 2 se te-  
noit debout, en le regardant.  
3 Et les chassa de la sinagoge.

derided



derided 4 him saying, *he has saved 5 others 6, let him save himself 7, if 8 he be Christ 9 the chosen 10 of God 11.*

(G.) The soldiers also mocked him, coming to 1 him, offering 2 him vinegar 3 and saying, *if thou be the king of the Jews, save 4 thyself 4.* They put also over 5 him 5 (his superscription 6, *this 7 is the king of the Jews.*

(H.) One 1 of the malefactors, who 2 were crucified with him, railed on 3 him, saying, *if thou be Christ, save thyself and 4 us 4;* but 5 the other 6 rebuked 7 him, saying, *dost thou not fear 8 God, seeing 9 thou art in 10 the same condemnation 11?* We 12 indeed justly 12; but this man 13 has 14 done nothing amiss 14.

(I.) He said unto Jesus, Lord 1, remember 2 me, when 3 thou comest 3 into 4 thy kingdom 5; and Jesus said unto him, verily 6 I say unto thee, to day 7 thou shalt be with me in 8 paradise 9.

(K.) It 1 was 1 about 2 the sixth 3 hour 4, and 5 there

## The DICTIONARY.

4 *se moquer de*, v. 1. 1 5  
sauver, v. 1. 6 autre, n.  
m. 7 lui-même, pron. nom.  
8 si, conj. 9 le Christ. 10  
élu, n. m. 11 Dieu, n. m.

(G.) 1 s'approcher de, v. 1.  
2 offrir, v. 2. 3 vinaigre, n. m.  
4 sauve toi toi-même. 5  
au dessus de sa tête. 6 in-  
scription, n. f. 7 celui-ci,  
pron. nom.

(H.) 1 l'un. 2 qui, pron. 3  
railler, v. 1. 4 Et nous  
sauve aussi. 5 mais, conj.  
6 l'autre. 7 reprendre, v. 6.  
8 craindre, v. 6. 9 vu que.

10 sous, prep. 11 candanua-  
tian, n. f. 12 pour nous, nous  
souffrons justement. 13 homme,  
n. m. 14 n'a point fait de  
mal.

(I.) 1 seigneur, n. m. 2 se  
souvenir de, v. 2. 3 quand  
tu seras arrivé. 4 dans,  
prep. 5 royaume, n. m.  
6 en vérité. 7 aujourd'hui,  
adv. 8 dans, prep. 9 pa-  
radis, n. m.

(K.) 1 ceci arriva. 2 vers,  
prep. 3 sixième, adj. 4  
heure, n. f. 5 il y eut.



# 212 EXERCISES upon the

was 5 a darkness 6 all 7 over the earth 7 until 8 the ninth 9 hour 10. When 11 Jesus had said 11 with 12 a loud voice 12, *father* 13, into 16 *thy hands* 17 *I commend* 14 my *Spirit* 15; he gave up 18 the ghost 19.

(L) Now 1 when the centurion saw 1 what 2 was done 3, he glorified 4 God, saying, *certainly* 5 *this* 6 *was a righteous* 8 *man* 7. And all 9 the people 9, that 10 came 11 together 11 to that sight 12, beholding 13 the things 14 which 15 were done 16, *imote* 17 their breast 17 and 18 returned 18 home 19.

## The DICTIONARY.

6 *des ténèbres*. 7 *par toute la terre*. 8 *jusqu'à*. 9 *neveu*, *adj.* 10 *heure*, n. f. 11 *Jésus ayant dit*. 12 *à haute voix*. 13 *mon père*. 14 *remettre*, v. 4. 15 *âme*, n. f. 16 *dans*, prep. 17 *main*, n. f. 18 *rendre*, v. 6. 19 *esprit*, n. m.

(L) 1 *Le centurion ayant vu*. 2 *ce que*, pron. nom. 3 *il étoit arrivé*. 4 *glorifier*, v.

1. 5 *certainement*, adv. 6 *celui-ci*, pron. nom. 7 *homme*, n. m. 8 *juste*, adj. 9 *tous ceux*. 10 *qui*, pron. 11 *étoient venus*. 12 *spectacle*, n. m. 13 *voir*, v. 3. 14 *chose*, n. f. 15 *qui*, pron. 16 *s'étoient passées*. 17 *se frapperent la poitrine*. 18 *Et s'en retournerent*. 19 *chez eux*.

MVSEVM  
BRITAN  
NICVM

XXXII.

XXXII. *Jesus 1 is buried 2.*

(A.) When 1 the even was come 1, there 2 came 2 a rich 4 man 3 of Arimathea 5, named 6 Joseph 7, who 8 also himself was 8 Jesus disciple 9. He 10 went to 10 Pilate 11, and 12 begged 12 the body 13 of Jesus; then 15 Pilate commanded 14 the 16 body to be delivered 16.

(B.) When 1 Joseph had taken 1 the body, he wrapped 2 it in 3 a clean linnen cloth 3, and laid 4 it in 5 his 11 own 11 tomb 6, which 7 he had hewn out 8 in 9 the rock 10; and he rolled 12 a great 13 stone 14 to 15 the door 15 of the sepulchre 16 and departed 17.

(C.) Now 1 the next day 1 that 2 followed the day of the preparation 2, the 3 chief priests 3 and the Pharisees 4 came 5 together 6 unto 7 Pilate 7, saying 8,

(D.) Sir 1, we remember 2 that 3 that deceiver 4, said 5,

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus*, n. m. 2 *est mis dans le tombeau.*

(A.) 1 *le soir étant arrivé.* 2 *il vint.* 3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *riche*, adj. 5 *Arimathie*, n. f. 6 *nommer*, v. 1. 7 *Joséph*, n. m. 8 *qui étoit aussi.* 9 *disciple*, n. m. 10 *il alla trouver.* 11 *Pilate*, n. m. 12 *Et lui demanda.* 13 *corps*, n. m. 14 *ordonner*, v. 1. 15 *donc.* 16 *qu'on le lui remit.*

(B.) 1 *Joséph ayant emporté.* 2 *envelopper.* 3 *dans un linceul blanc.* 4 *mettre*, v. 4. 5 *dans*, prep. 6 *le tombeau.*

7 *que*, pron. 8 *creuser*, v. 1. 9 *dans*, prep. 10 *roc*, n. m. 11 *pour lui même.* 12 *rouler*, v. 1. 13 *grand*, adj. 14 *pierre*, n. f. 15 *à l'entrée.* 16 *sépulcre.* 17 *s'en aller*, v. 1.

(C.) 1 *le lendemain.* 2 *qui étoit le jour d'après la préparation.* 3 *les principaux d'entre les prêtres.* 4 *pharisen*, n. m. 5 *aller*, v. 1. 6 *en corps.* 7 *trouver Pilate.* 8 *et lui dirent.*

(D.) 1 *seigneur*, n. m. 2 *se souvenir*, v. 2. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *séducteur*, n. m. 5 *dire*, v.

whilst 6 he was yet 7 alive 8, after 9 three 10 days 11 I will rise 12 again 12. Command 13, therefore 14 that 15 the sepulchre be made sure 15 until 16 the 16 third 17 day, lest 18 his disciples 19 come 20 by night, and steal him away and say 20 unto the people 21, he is risen from 22 the dead 22; so 23 the last error shall be worse than 23 the first 24.

(E.) Pilate said unto them, ye have a watch 1, go 2 your way 2, make 3 it as sure as you can 3. So 5 they went 4 and made 6 the sepulchre sure 6, sealing 7 the stone 8 and 9 setting a watch 9.

### THE DICTIONARY.

4. 6 lorsque. 7 encore, adv.  
8 en vie. 9 dans, prep. 10  
trois, adj. 11 jour, n. m.  
ressusciter, v. 1. 13 com-  
mander, v. 1. 14 donc, adv.  
15 qu'on garde le sépulcre.  
16 jusqu'au. 17 troisième,  
adj. 18 de peur que. 19  
disciple, n. m. 20 ne viennent  
l'enlever de nuit & ne disent.  
21 peuple, n. m. 22 des

morts. 23 la dernière erreur  
seroit pire que. 24 première,  
adj.

(E) 1 garde, n. f. 2 s'en aller,  
v. 1. 3 faites le garder aussi  
bien que vous pourrez. 4 s'en  
aller, v. 1. 5 donc, adv.  
6 s'assurer du, v. 1. prep.  
and art. 7 en apposant leur  
sceau sur. 8 pierre. n. f. 9  
& posant des gardes.

### XXXIII. Jesus 1 riseth 2 from 3 the dead 4.

(A.) In 1 the end 2 of the sabbath 3, as 4 it began to dawn towards the first day of the week 4, came 8 Mary 5 Magdalene 6 and the other 7 Mary to see 9 the sepulchre 10.

(B.) And 1 behold there was 1 a great 2 earthquake 3; for 4 the angel 5 of the Lord 6 descended 7 from 8 heaven 9,

### THE DICTIONARY.

1 Jesus, n. m. 2 ressusciter,  
v. 1. 3 des, prep. and art.  
4 mort, n. m.

(A.) 1 à, prep. 2 fin, n. f.  
3 sabbath, n. m. 4 comme le  
premier jour de la semaine  
commençoit à paroître. 5 Ma-  
rie, n. f. 6 Magdalaine, n. f. 7

autre, adj. 8 aller, v. 1. 9  
voir, v. 3. 10 sépulcre, n. m.

(B.) 1 & il se fit. 2 grand,  
adj. 3 tremblement de terre.  
4 car, conj. 5 ange, n. m.  
6 seigneur, n. m. 7 des-  
cendre, v. 6. 8 du, prep.  
and art. 9 ciel, n. m. 10  
and



and rolled back 10 the 11 stone from the door 11 and sat 12 upon 13 it 13.

(C.) And his countenance 1 was like 2 lightning 3, and his raiment 4 white 5, as snow 5 for 6 fear of him the keepers did shake 6 and 7 became as dead 7 men.

(E.) And the angel said 1 to the women 2, fear 3 not ye, for I know 4 that 5 ye seek 6 Jesus, who 7 was crucified 7. He is not here 8; for he is risen as 9 he said 9; come 10, see 11 the place 12 where 13 the 14 Lord laid 14, and 15 go quickly, and tell 15 his disciples 16 that 17 he is risen from the dead; and 18 behold he goeth 18 before 21 you 21 into 19 Galilee 20, there 22 shall ye see him 22, so 23, I have told you 23.

(F.) They departed 1 quickly 2 from 3 the sepulchre, with 4 fear 5 and with great 6 joy 7, and did run 8 to bring 9 his 11 disciples 11 word 10. And 12 behold, Jesus met them, saying 12, all 13 hail 13;

(G.) And 1 they came 1, and held 2 him by the feet 2,

THE DICTIONARY.

*renverser*, v. 1. 11 la pierre de l'entrée. 12 s'asseoir, v. 3. 13 dessus.

(C.) 1 visage, n. m. 2 comme, conj. 3 un éclair. 4 vêtement, n. m. 5 aussi blanc que la neige. 6 ses gardes en furent saisis d'une si grande frayeur. 7 qu'ils devinrent comme morts.

(E.) 1 dire, v. 4. 2 femme, n. f. 3 craindre, v. 6. 4 savoir, v. 3. 5 que, conj. 6 chercher, v. 1. 7 qui a été crucifié. 8 ici, adv. 9 comme il l'avoit dit. 10 venir, v. 2. 11 voir, v. 3. 12 lieu, n. m. 13 où, adv. 14 on avoit mis le seigneur.

15 hâtez vous d'aller dire à. 16 disciple, n. m. 17 que, conj. 18 il s'en va. 19 en, prep. 20 Galilée, n. f. 21 où il sera avant vous. 22 vous l'y verrez. 23 c'est de quoi je vous avertis.

(F.) 1 sortir, v. 2. 2 aussitôt. 3 du, prep. and art. 4 avec, prep. 5 crainte, n. f. 6 grand, adj. 7 jois, n. f. 8 courir, v. 2. 9 porter, v. 1. 10 cette nouvelle. 11 à ses disciples. 12 mais Jésus vint au devant d'elles & leur dit. 13 je vous salue.

(G.) 1 & elles s'approchèrent de lui. 2 lui embrassèrent les pieds. 3 adorer, v. 4. 4



and worshipped 3 him. Then 4 Jesus said unto them, be 5 not afraid 5, go 6 tell 7 my brethren 8 that 9 they go 9 into 10 Galilee: there 11 shall they see me 11.

## THE DICTIONARY

alors, adv. 5 ne craignez

rien. 6 aller, v. 1. 7 dire à,

v. 4. and prep. 8 frere, n.

m. 9 qu'ils aillent. 10 en,

prep. 11 ils me verront là.

XXXIV. Jesus 1 sendeth 2 his disciples 3 to 4 baptize 5 and teach 6 all 7 nations 7.

(A.) Jesus being risen 1 from 2 the dead 2, some 3 of the watch 3 came 4 unto the city 5, and shewed 6 unto the chief 7 priests 8 all 9 the things 10 that 11 were 12 done 12.

(B.) And 1 when they were assembled 1 with 2 the elders 3, and 4 had taken counsel 4, they gave 5 large 6 money 6 unto the soldiers 7, saying 8, say 9 ye, that 10 his disciples came 11 by 12 night 12 and 13 stole him away 13 while 14 we slept 15; and if 16 this 17 come 18 to 19 the governor's 21 ears 20, we will persuade 22 him and secure 23 you.

## THE DICTIONARY.

1 Jésus, n. m. 2 envoyer, v.

1. 3 disciple, n. m. 4 pour,

prep. 5 baptiser, v. 1. 6

enseigner, v. 1. 7 toutes les

nations.

(A.) 1 ressusciter, v. 1. 2 des

morts. 3 quelques uns des

gardes. 4 venir, v. 2. 5

ville, n. f. 6 rapporter, v.

1. 7 principal, plur. aux,

adj. 8 prêtre, n. m. 9 tout,

adj. 10 chose, n. f. 11 qui,

pron. 12 étoient arrivées.

(B.) 1 ceux-ci s'étant assemblés.

2 avec, prep. 3 ancien, n.

m. 4 après avoir délibéré

ensemble. 5 donner, v. 1. 6

une grosse somme d'argent. 7

soldat, n. m. 8 & leur

dirent. 9 dire, v. 4. 10 que,

conj. 11 sont venus. 12 pen-

dant la nuit. 13 & l'ont en-

levé. 14 pendant que. 15

dormir, v. 2. 16 si, conj.

17 cela, pron. nom. 18 vi-

nir, v. 2. 19 aux, art. 20

oreille, n. f. 21 gouverneur,

n. m. 22 gagner, v. 1. 23

mettre à couvert, v. 4. prep.

and n. m.

(C.)

(C.) They took 1 the money 2, and did 3 as 4 they were taught 4; and this saying 5 is 6 reported among the Jews 6 until 7 this day 8.

(D.) Then 1 the eleven 2 disciples 3 went 4 away 4 into 5 Galilee 5, into 6 a mountain 7, where 8 Jesus had 9 appointed them 9; and 10 when they saw him 10, they worshipped 11 him; but 13 some 12 doubted 14.

(E.) And 1 Jesus came, and spoke unto them, saying 1, all 2 power 3 is 4 given unto me 4 in 5 heaven 6 and in 7 earth 8. Go 9 ye therefore 10, and 11 teach 11 all nations 12, baptizing 13 them in 14 the name 14 of the father 15, of the son 16 and of the holy 17 ghost 18, teaching 19 them to 20 observe 21 all 22 things whatsoever 22 I have commanded 23 you; and 24 lo, I am with you always 24, even 25 unto 25 the end 26 of the world 27.

THE DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 prendre, v. 6. 2 argent, n. m. 3 faire, v. 5. 4 ce qu'on leur avoit ordonné. 5 fausseté, n. f. 6 a couru parmi les juifs. 7 jusqu'à. 8 jour, n. m.

(D.) 1 or. 2 onze. adj. und. 3 disciple, n. m. 4 s'en aller, v. 1. 5 en Galilée. 6 sur, prep. 7 montagne, n. f. 8 où, adv. 9 leur avoit ordonné de se rendre. 10 Et le voyant. 11 adorer, v. 1. 12 quelques uns. 13 néanmoins, conj. 14 douter, v. 1.

(E.) 1 mais Jésus s'approchant,

leur dit. 2 tout, adj. 3 pouvoir, n. m. 4 m'a été donné. 5 dans, prep. 6 ciel, n. m. 7 sur, prep. 8 terre, n. f. 9 aller, v. 1. 10 donc. 11 enseigner. 12 nation, n. f. 13 baptiser, v. 1. 14 au nom. 15 pere, n. m. 16 fils, n. m. 17 saint, adj. 18 esprit, n. m. 19 enseigner, v. 1. 20 à, prep. 21 observer, v. 1. 22 toutes les choses que. 23 commander, v. 1. 24 Et je serai toujours avec vous. 25 jusqu'à. 26 fin, n. f. 27 monde, n. m.

F I N I S.

(C.)

For the Use of SCHOOLS.

BOOKS printed by J. Nourse, at the  
*Lamb against Katherine Street in the Strand.*

- I. LES AVANTURES DE GIL BLAS DE SANTILLANE,  
par M. Le Sage, 4 Vol. 18mo. Nouv. Edition, avec  
des figures.
- II. LE DIABLE BOITEUX, par M. Le Sage 18mo avec  
des Figures.
- III. LES AVANTURES DE TELEMAQUE Fils d'Ulysse  
par Francois de Salignac de la Mothe Fenelon, 12mo.  
avec un petit Dictionnaire Mythologique, Nouv. Edi-  
tion revuë exactement sur les Precedentes & corrigée  
avec soin & enrichie de figures en taille douce, 12mo.  
1757.
- IV. LES VOYAGES DE CYRUS, avec un discours sur la  
Mythologie, par le Chevalier Ramsay, 12mo.  
Nouv. Edition.
- V. LE NOUVEAU TESTAMENT, Nouv. Edition revuë  
sur le Texte de M. Martin, 12mo. par M. D.  
Durand 12mo.
- VI. METHODE pour apprendre facilement l'Histoire Ro-  
maine, Sixième Edition, corrigée & augmentée,  
1757.
- VII. ESTHER, Tragédie tirée de l'Ecriture Sainte par M.  
Racine Nouv. Edition revuë avec soin, pousuëe à  
l'usage de la Jeunesse qu'on veut former à une Pro-  
nonciation correcte, par M. D. Durand, 8vo.
- VIII. NEW AND FAMILIAR DIALOGUES in French and  
English, by Claudius Arnoux, the Third Edition.
- IX. The Grounds of the French Tongue, and the Diffe-  
rence between the English and French Idioms. By  
C. Arnoux.
- X. NOUVELLE METHODE pour apprendre à bien lire & à  
bien orthographier en deux parties, par J. Palairet.
- XI. LA LITURGIE ou Formulaire des Prières publiques  
selon l'Usage de l'Eglise Anglicane, 12mo. Nouvelle  
Edition, 12mo.